



# RCS Universal Profile Service Definition Document

## Version 4.0

### 19 February 2026

---

#### **Security Classification: Non-Confidential**

Access to and distribution of this document is restricted to the persons permitted by the security classification. This document is subject to copyright protection. This document is to be used only for the purposes for which it has been supplied and information contained in it must not be disclosed or in any other way made available, in whole or in part, to persons other than those permitted under the security classification without the prior written approval of the Association.

#### **Copyright Notice**

Copyright © 2026 GSM Association

#### **Disclaimer**

The GSMA makes no representation, warranty or undertaking (express or implied) with respect to and does not accept any responsibility for, and hereby disclaims liability for the accuracy or completeness or timeliness of the information contained in this document. The information contained in this document may be subject to change without prior notice.

#### **Compliance Notice**

The information contain herein is in full compliance with the GSMA Antitrust Compliance Policy.

This Permanent Reference Document is classified by GSMA as an Industry Specification, as such it has been developed and is maintained by GSMA in accordance with the provisions set out GSMA AA.35 - Procedures for Industry Specifications.

## Table of Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>7</b>
1.1	Purpose of the Universal Profile	7
1.1.1	Structure of this document	7
1.1.2	Universal Profile 4.0 RCS client scope	7
1.2	Conventions	8
1.3	Requirement and Technical Realisation Classification	8
1.4	Terms and Abbreviations	8
1.5	Table of references	17
<b>2</b>	<b>Device Provisioning</b>	<b>19</b>
2.1	Description	19
2.2	User Stories and Feature Requirements	20
2.2.1	Activation of RCS services	20
2.2.2	Configuration of the user's primary device by requesting user identity	21
2.2.3	Multiple RCS clients	22
2.2.4	SIM swap	23
2.2.5	User consent	23
2.2.6	Secondary Devices	25
2.2.7	Error Management	26
2.2.8	Provisioning push	26
2.2.9	Dual SIM Devices	27
2.3	Technical Information	28
2.3.1	Overview	28
2.3.2	Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service requirements	29
<b>3</b>	<b>Capability Discovery and Service Availability</b>	<b>34</b>
3.1	Description	34
3.2	User Stories and Feature Requirements	34
3.3	Technical Information	37
3.3.1	Overview	37
3.3.2	Configuration Parameters	38
3.3.3	Handling of capability exchange triggers in messaging	39
3.3.4	Capability information for IP Video Call	40
3.3.5	Technical implementation of user stories and requirements	40
<b>4</b>	<b>Operator Messaging</b>	<b>42</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>1-to-1 Messaging</b>	<b>42</b>
5.1	Description	42
5.2	User Stories and Feature Requirements	42
5.3	Technical information	69
5.3.1	Overview	69
5.3.2	Network Fallback Support Capability	70
5.3.3	Chat Message revocation	70
5.3.4	Configuration Parameters	70
5.3.5	Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service Requirements	76

<b>6</b>	<b>Group Chat</b>	<b>84</b>
6.1	Description	84
6.2	User Stories and Feature Requirements	85
6.3	Technical Information	100
6.3.1	Overview	100
6.3.2	Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service requirements	101
<b>7</b>	<b>File Transfer</b>	<b>107</b>
7.1	Description	107
7.2	User Stories and Feature Requirements	108
7.3	Technical Information	124
7.3.1	Overview	124
7.3.2	Configuration Parameters	125
7.3.3	Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service requirements	125
<b>8</b>	<b>Audio Messaging</b>	<b>134</b>
8.1	Description	134
8.2	User Stories and Feature Requirements	134
8.3	Technical Information	138
8.3.1	Overview	138
8.3.2	Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service Requirements	138
<b>9</b>	<b>Messaging for Multi-Device</b>	<b>141</b>
9.1	Description	141
9.2	User Stories and Feature Requirements	142
9.3	Technical Information	147
9.3.1	Overview	147
9.3.2	Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service Requirements	148
<b>10</b>	<b>Green Button Promise for Voice</b>	<b>151</b>
10.1	Description	151
10.2	User Stories and Feature Requirements	152
10.3	Technical Information	154
10.3.1	Overview	154
10.3.2	Configuration parameters	155
10.3.3	Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service Requirements	158
<b>11</b>	<b>Green Button Promise for IP Video Call Services</b>	<b>159</b>
11.1	Description	159
11.2	User Stories and Feature Requirements	160
11.3	Technical Information	164
11.3.1	Overview	164
11.3.2	Configuration parameters	164
11.3.3	Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service Requirements	165
<b>12</b>	<b>Enriched Calling</b>	<b>167</b>
12.1	Description	167
12.2	General	167
12.3	Technical Information for the General Requirements	168

12.4	User Stories and Feature Requirements for the Enriched Pre-call experience	169
12.5	Technical Information for the Enriched Pre-call experience	172
12.5.1	Overview	172
12.5.2	Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service Requirements	172
12.6	User Stories and Feature Requirements for the Enriched In-call experience	173
12.6.1	General Requirements	173
12.6.2	“Live Video”	173
12.6.3	Share any file during call	176
12.6.4	Exchanging messages	177
12.6.5	Location Push	177
12.6.6	Enriched Calling In-call sharing with Non-Enriched Calling enabled contacts	178
12.7	Technical Information for the Enriched In-call experience	178
12.7.1	Overview	178
12.7.2	Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service Requirements	179
12.8	User Stories and Feature Requirements for Interactive In-call experience	181
12.8.1	Live Sketch Sharing	182
12.8.2	Specific Requirements for a live sketch on an image	185
12.8.3	Specific Requirements for a live sketch on a map	186
12.9	Technical Information for Interactive In-call services	187
12.9.1	Overview	187
12.9.2	Shared Sketch	187
12.9.3	Specific Shared Image Sketch Requirements	187
12.9.4	Specific Shared Map Sketch Requirements	187
12.10	User Stories and Feature Requirements for the Enriched Post-call experience	187
12.10.1	Enriched Calling Post-call experience with Non-Enriched Calling enabled contacts	189
12.11	Technical Information for the Enriched Post-call experience	189
12.11.1	Overview	189
12.11.2	User Stories and Feature Requirements for the Enriched Post-call experience	189
12.11.3	Enriched Calling Post-Call experience with Non-Enriched Calling enabled contacts	190
12.12	User Stories and Feature Requirements for Enriched Call content in Logs and media contact centric view	190
12.12.1	Technical Information for Enriched Call Logs experience	192
<b>13</b>	<b>Void</b>	<b>192</b>
<b>14</b>	<b>Void</b>	<b>192</b>
<b>15</b>	<b>Messaging as a Platform: Chatbots</b>	<b>193</b>
15.1	Introduction	193
15.2	Chatbots	193
15.2.1	Technical Information for the realisation of Chatbots	230
15.3	Void	247

<b>16 Security against Malware and Privacy Protection</b>	<b>247</b>
16.1 Description	247
16.2 User Stories and Feature Requirements	247
16.3 Technical Information	248
16.3.1 Client authenticity verification	248
16.3.2 User Authentication	249
16.3.3 Encryption	250
16.3.4 Storage of Authentication and Identification Data	250
16.3.5 SIM State Handling	250
16.3.6 Applicability of Authentication Methods	251
16.3.7 Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service requirements	252
<b>17 Data Off</b>	<b>256</b>
17.1 Description	256
17.2 User Stories and Feature Requirements	256
17.3 Technical Information	258
17.3.1 Overview	258
17.3.2 Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service requirements	258
<b>18 RCS Settings</b>	<b>260</b>
18.1 Description	260
18.2 User Stories and Feature Requirements	260
18.3 Technical Information	267
18.3.1 Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service Requirements	267
<b>19 Multi Device Voice and Video</b>	<b>273</b>
19.1 Description	273
19.2 User Stories and Feature Requirements	273
19.3 Technical Information	278
19.3.1 Overview	278
19.3.2 Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service requirements	278
<b>Annex A Supporting requirements</b>	<b>280</b>
A.1 Emoticon conversion table	280
A.2 Unicode Standard “Emoji” Emoticons	282
A.3 Panoramic photo view	282
<b>Annex B OS/Platform Specific Functionality</b>	<b>286</b>
B.1 Multiple Client handling on Android™ OS	286
B.1.1 Multiple Client handling on Android™ OS version superior or equal to 7.0	286
B.1.2 Multiple Client handling on Android™ OS version prior to 7.0	287
B.2 Android™ Client Authenticity Verification Procedure	290
<b>Annex C RCS Configuration</b>	<b>291</b>
C.1 Configuration Parameters (Normative)	291
C.2 Void	304
<b>Annex D Features supported per Chatbot application version</b>	<b>304</b>
<b>Annex E Document Management</b>	<b>306</b>
E.1 Document History	306
E.2 Other Information	306



# 1 Introduction

## 1.1 Purpose of the Universal Profile

The Rich Communication Services (RCS) Universal Profile 4.0 represents an update of globally shared RCS specifications. This Service Definition Document (SDD) lists all the User Stories and Feature Requirements. The Universal Profile describes a single, global RCS implementation that will be deployed worldwide. The aim of this profile is to reduce the variation that exists today across various RCS profiles to simplify large-scale deployment. The Universal Profile is targeted at Operating System (OS) developers and Original Equipment Manufacturers (OEM) for open market device implementations. The focus of requirements is on native device implementations implemented at the OS or device manufacturer level. It is acknowledged that downloadable applications may face limitations that prevent such implementations from fulfilling the complete feature set.

The SDD provides user stories and feature requirements and is complemented by the RCS Universal Profile 4.0 technical specification to describe a prioritized set of features which Mobile Network Operators (MNOs) can launch.

### 1.1.1 Structure of this document

The document details how features are to be implemented from a functional requirements point of view and details specifics that may influence how certain functions behave, creating an overall guide for OEMs and application developers.

### 1.1.2 Universal Profile 4.0 RCS client scope

The Universal Profile can be delivered in two ways for users:

1. Implemented natively within the device by the OS developer or OEM, tightly integrating the capabilities and services within the address book and many other native touch points across the device.
2. Implemented as a downloadable application that can be downloaded from Application stores and accessible as a separate application on the user's device, usually within the device's application folder or its desktop.

In most cases, implementation of features is identical for both native and downloadable RCS clients and this document for the most part will not differentiate between the two. In cases where implementation of a feature in a downloadable RCS client differs from the native experience, these are described separately within the relevant section.

The profile includes some sections that come without a technical realisation (14 and 19). As such, they are not in scope for implementations in this version of the universal profile. The requirements are indicative only since they may change following the technical feasibility assessment and are provided for information in case this information on future evolutions would be relevant for the design decisions of an implementation.

In addition to maintenance of the core features of RCS, this SDD starts support of 3<sup>rd</sup> party developer applications who use interfaces to deliver their services using RCS as an enabler (we call that "MaaP – Messaging as a Platform").

Any major changes in comparison to the Universal Profile 2.0 and its subversions are listed in the introduction section of each chapter.

## 1.2 Conventions

It is a shared understanding by the standardising RCS MNOs that any service described in the RCS standard may or may not be offered by any given MNO.

NOTE: For device manufacturers and RCS client developers requirements are classified based on the conventions defined in section 1.3 of this document.

For the purpose of this document, user stories are identified using the following numbering convention: “USN.N”, where US= User Story and N= the associated user story e.g. US2.2.

The associated requirements are identified using the following numbering convention: “RN-N-N, where “R” = requirement e.g. R2-2-1. Sub requirements will appear as a third level e.g. R-2-2US.

## 1.3 Requirement and Technical Realisation Classification

Term	Description
<i>Shall</i>	These terms dictate that a functionality and/or process is <b>Mandatory</b>
<i>Shall/Should Not</i>	These terms dictate that a functionality and/or process is <b>Mandatory</b>
<i>Required</i>	These terms dictate that a functionality and/or process is <b>Mandatory</b>
<i>Should/Should Not</i>	This term dictates that the functionality and or/process is <b>Highly Recommended</b>
<i>Recommended</i>	This term dictates that the functionality and or/process is <b>Highly Recommended</b>
<i>May</i>	This term dictates that the functionality and or/process is <b>Nice to Have</b>
<i>Optional</i>	This term dictates that the functionality and or/process is <b>Nice to Have</b>

**Table 1: Requirements Classification**

## 1.4 Terms and Abbreviations

Term	Description (contains technical and functional terms)
3GPP	3 <sup>rd</sup> Generation Partnership Project
A2P	Application to Person (communication)
Active device or interface	A device or interface will be active for a conversation’s “session” if the user has either started a conversation, or sent events outside of a session from that device or responded to an incoming event with an event listed in R9-3-4 on that device/interface. A session is established and associated with that conversation. Further events sent within the conversation will be sent only to that device in real-time and will be synchronised with other (inactive) devices as required. Any given user can only have one active device / interface at any given point in time for an active session.
AF	Anonymization Function
Aggregation of device capabilities	All of a user’s capabilities for their RCS services on all of their RCS-enabled devices will be combined into a single set of capabilities which is shared with other users. Other users will not be able to determine on exactly which device another user has a specific capability, nor will other users know whether the

Term	Description (contains technical and functional terms)
	user has multiple RCS devices available to him at all (using this capability information shared).
AKA	Authentication and Key Agreement
AMR	Adaptive Multi-Rate
Anonymous Mode	A user has agreed not to share their MSISDN with a Chatbot.
A-Party	The party that initiates a communication event e.g. creates and sends a Chat Message or File Transfer or initiates a call to the B-Party.
APN	Access Point Name
App	Smartphone application.
App ID	Unique identifier for an application.
API	Application Programming Interface
Auto-Accept	A function on the device that shortcuts the user manual acceptance of the incoming communication event (such as chat, files etc.).
B-Party	The party that receives or is intended to receive a communication event e.g. Chat Message, File Transfer or call from the A-Party.
Call Composer	A view on the device that allows the A-Party to enrich outgoing voice calls with pre-call content before placing the call.
Call Log	The view on the device displaying all the user's call events, e.g. incoming, outgoing, and missed calls. Call logs usually offer a view containing all call events (including call duration and end time) ordered chronologically, plus a detailed view of a single call event or call events with a specific Contact.
Capability / Availability	A contact has a device registered for RCS service that can initiate or respond to a requested RCS service.
CFB	Call Forward Busy
CFS	Client Fallback to SMS incl. Revocation – one of the two procedures of Delivery Assurance in Integrated Messaging.
Chatbot	<p>An RCS-based (fully or partly) automated service provided to users whose output is presented in a conversational form. Often a piece of software interfacing with one or more users aiming to simulate intelligent human conversation. Two types of Chatbots can be differentiated:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Generic Chatbots which are referenced as “Chatbot” in this document. (These Chatbots may or may not be verified by a Verification Authority.)</li> <li>• “Critical Chatbots” which have specific attributes assigned that provide them with special rights as defined in this document.</li> </ul>
Chatbot Directory	A catalogue of all available Chatbots.
Chatbot Gallery	Place where a user can explore Chatbots and start a conversation with them.
Chatbot Platform	A system that provides a mechanism for Chatbot developers to create and register Chatbots, which can then be exposed to the users connected to the platform through a messaging system.
Chatbot Profile Information	Additional information provided by the Chatbot to the user that allows the user to e.g. contact the Brand operating the Chatbot over other channels, or better

Term	Description (contains technical and functional terms)
	understand what the purpose of the Chatbot is or what the Brand operating the Chatbot does.
Chatbot Welcome Message	A message, defined by the Chatbot, and delivered by the Chatbot Platform to the user, providing context when starting a new interaction between the user and Chatbot.
Chat Message	A single text message that was exchanged between two or more RCS communication end points (e.g. users or Chatbots).
CLIP	Calling Line Identification Presentation
CLIR	Calling Line Identification Restriction
Common Message Store (CMS)	Network storage that enables Multi-Device and Backup and Restore use cases.
Contact	A contact is a communication partner either selected from the device contact list or typed into the dialler as a telephone number.
Contact Card	The details of a single contact that are displayed whenever a contact is selected from the contact list.
Contextual Icon	An icon that allows a Suggested Action to be differentiated from a Suggested Reply and visually represents the specific Suggested Action.
Conversation History	A list of all the content exchanged between parties of a conversation.
CPIM	Common Profile for Instant Messaging
CPM	Converged IP Messaging
CS	Circuit Switched
CSS	Cascading Style Sheets
CW	Call Waiting
Default Dialler	In the case of multiple diallers on a device, the client chosen by the user to act as the default dialler for setting up and receiving voice and video calls.
Default Messaging Client	In the case of multiple messaging clients on a device, the client chosen by the user to act as the default messaging client for messaging notification and composing purposes.
Delete Message Indication	A visible indication within the conversation for an RCS Message that was deleted by the sender
Delivery Assurance	A mechanism in Integrated Messaging that improves the timely delivery of messages and files. The procedures that Delivery Assurance uses are Client Fallback to SMS including Revocation (CFS) and Network Fallback to SMS (NFS).
Delivery Notification	Indication that a message was successfully received by the B-Party device.
Developer	Application owner.
Developer ID	ID assigned to application owner. It is not the same as the App ID.
Device Wiping	Removing user specific data from the device.
Display Notification	When the message has been displayed in the Chat view on the receiving device.

Term	Description (contains technical and functional terms)
Direct Delivery	In multi-device messaging, when an event (e.g. Chat Message, File Transfer, Audio Message, or Geolocation Push) is received, it is received on all of the recipient's registered and connected devices at the same time. When an event is sent from any of the registered and connected devices, it is sent to all of the sender's other registered and connected devices at the same time.
DNS	Domain Name System
DTMF	Dual Tone Multi-Frequency
Dual SIM device	A device where two different identities, provided by two different SIMs, are active at the same time.
E2EE	End to End Encryption
Edit Message	A mechanism that allows the user to edit a sent RCS Message.
Edit Message Indication	A visible indication that an RCS Message was edited by the sender.
Edit Time Interval	The period during which the Edit Message feature is available to the sender of an RCS Message.
Emoji	Emoji are "picture characters", that is, characters presented as pictographs, images of things such as faces, weather, vehicles and buildings, food and drink, animals and plants or icons that represent emotions, feelings, or activities.
Emoticon	A graphical 'mood' element that technically is corresponding with a text string. The text string is conveyed by the standard, and interpreted on UI level and replaced with the corresponding graphical element.
End to End Encryption	The process of encrypting content and related information on the sender's device and decrypting on the recipient's device; ensuring that no third party can access the content and related information, while it is being transferred.
Enriched Voice Calling	The ability to share content before, during and after a voice call.
EUCR	End User Confirmation Requests
E-UTRAN	Evolved UMTS (Universal Mobile Telecommunications System) Terrestrial Radio Access Network
Events	Events as used in this Service Description Document are messages, content and notifications in the context of Operator Messaging.
External Loudspeaker	Speaker on the device which amplifies the audio of the call when activated.
Feature Tag	An IARI Tag assigned to a RCS functionality allowing to identify and route the RCS traffic accordingly.
Federated Device	A common term used for all devices federated under the identity of a specific user (federated devices always comprise one primary and one or more secondary devices).
File Transfer Status Notification or File Transfer	A visible information for the sender of a File Transfer in 1-to-1Messaging or Group Chat about the progress of the delivery.

Term	Description (contains technical and functional terms)
States Notifications	
FQDN	Fully Qualified Domain Name
Front Camera	Camera placed on the display side of a communication device.
GBA	Generic Bootstrap Architecture
GIF	Graphics Interchange Format
Global Setting(s)	In a multi-device setup, Global Settings are settings which are changed on one device and change the corresponding setting on any federated devices or interfaces as well (as opposed to Local Settings).
GPRS	General Packet Radio Service
Group Chat	A conversation where the creator invites 2 or more participants to take part. All participants are aware of each other, and all content exchanged is shared with the entire participants list.
Group MIVC	An MIVC that can only include participants of the Group Chat from which the MIVC was initiated
HOS	Home Operator Services
HTML	Hyper Text Markup Language
HTTP	Hyper Text Transfer Protocol
IARI	IMS Application Reference Identifier
ICSI	IMS Communication Service Identifier
IMDN	Instant Message Disposition Notification
IMS	Internet Protocol (IP) Multimedia Subsystem
IMSI	International Mobile Subscriber Identification.
Inactive device or Interface	A device or interface not currently active in a multi-device scenario.
Interconnected RCS Service	An RCS Service that can be accessed between users of MNOs supporting the same RCS Service capabilities.
Interface	Any entity that provides RCS Service capabilities to a user, e.g. browser-based, app-based, natively implemented.
Integrated Messaging	An MNO messaging service whereby the different message types are proposed to the end user, threaded together in a conversation and can be changed by the user. In this experience the message type used to deliver a message is indicated to the user.
IP Video Call	Type of real time communication that uses live audio and video
Is Typing Notification	A visible information for participants in a 1-to-1 Messaging or Group Chat conversation that another participant in the conversation is in the process of creating a message. This message may or may not be sent by that user.
JPEG	Joint Photographic Experts Group
KB	KiloByte (i.e. 1024 bytes)
KDS	Key Distribution Server
LED	Light Emitting Diode

Term	Description (contains technical and functional terms)
Local Settings	In a multi-device setup, Local Settings are settings which are changed on one device without any impact on corresponding settings on any federated devices or interfaces (as opposed to Global Settings).
LTE	Long Term Evolution
MaaP Application	A remote service that the user is able to communicate with from the Messaging Application on the device, e.g. a Chatbot.
MDV <sup>2</sup>	Multi device Voice and Video
Media Share	File Transfer of multi-media content that can be displayed or played back in an RCS client.
Messaging event	Associated with any of the services listed in R9-3-4 and includes all types of messages, files, content, new message notifications, previews, icons and message status notifications (sent and received).
Message Status Notification or Message States Notifications	A visible information for the sender of a message in 1-to-1 Messaging or Group Chat about the progress of the delivery.
Messaging-Initiated Video Call (MIVC)	An IP Video Call initiated from a Messaging conversation that can only include participants of that Messaging conversation.
MIME	Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions
MIVC Call Log	A Call Log associated with an MIVC
MMS	Multimedia Messaging service
MNO	Mobile network operator.
MSISDN	Mobile Subscriber Integrated Services Digital Number, i.e. mobile telephone number.
Multi-Device Support	RCS Service that enables a user to register more than one device under a single identity.
Multi Device Voice and Video	An MNO service that allows to use SIM based and SIM less devices to make voice and / or video calls (and supporting services around these) under one identity.
Multi-SIM	Multi-SIM is an MNO-individual solution to federate SIM-based devices for offering a multi device solution to customers. Multi-SIM solutions may or may not be based on SIMs with identical identities.
Multimedia Telephony	Voice and/or Video telephony services over 4G and 5G radio and Wi-Fi bearers as defined in 3GPP and profiled in e.g. GSMA PRDs IR.92, IR.94, IR.51 and NG.114.
Multiple Reactions	More than one Reaction sent by the user in response to a specific selected RCS Message. selected RCS Message.
Native RCS Device	A device with an RCS client deeply integrated by the OEM or OS developer (as opposed to a downloaded RCS client).

Term	Description (contains technical and functional terms)
New Incoming Event Notification	An audible and/ or visible information for the receiving user (B-Party) that a new message or file has been received.
NFS	Network Fallback to SMS – one of the two procedures of Delivery Assurance in Integrated Messaging.
NR	New Radio
ODSA	On-Device Service Activation
OEM	Original Equipment Manufacturer.
“offline” user	A user who is known to be RCS enabled and not currently registered to the RCS service.
OIDC	Open ID Connect
OMA	Open Mobile Alliance
On-Net	Communication or signalling that does not go across the interworking interface (NNI) between networks or MNOs.
“online” user	A user who is known to be RCS enabled and is currently registered to the RCS service.
OS	Operating System
Operator Messaging	Integration of all Operator Messaging Services into one single application. There are two options for Operator Messaging: “Integrated Messaging” and “Seamless Messaging”.
Operator Messaging Services	One or more services from traditional messaging services (SMS, MMS) or RCS services (Chat, File Transfer, Audio Messaging, vCard Push, Geolocation Push).
OTP	One Time Password
P2A	Person to Application (communication)
P2P	Person to Person (communication)
P-CSCF	Proxy Call Session Control Function
Plug-in	A mini application that appears within messaging or voice / video calling applications to aesthetically and functionally enrich the content of the conversation.
Plug-in Consumer	RCS client that is able to use Plug-ins
Plug-in Provider	Any app that contains and exposes a Plug-in
Primary Device or Primary Interface	Device which contains the SIM that matches the identity which the RCS client uses to register in IP Multimedia Subsystem (IMS).
Primary SIM	In the context of a Multi Device solution, the Primary SIM shall be the SIM that provides the identity of the Primary Device or Interface and all federated Secondary Devices or Interfaces.
PS	Packet Switched
Public Mode	A user has agreed to share their MSISDN with a Chatbot.

Term	Description (contains technical and functional terms)
Push Notification	A notification to the RCS client, when not connected to the RCS Service Provider, that a new incoming communication event (e.g. new Chat Message, File Transfer, Audio Message, Message or File Transfer Status / State notifications) is available for the user. The Push Notification is sent by the RCS Service Provider to wake up the RCS client for establishing a connection to the RCS Service Provider for the new incoming communication event.
Push Notification Mechanism	A mechanism that enables the RCS Service Provider to enable non-persistent connections between the RCS Service Provider and the RCS client (in contrast to the mechanism that uses persistent connections) for communication event delivery. The mechanism is not visible to the user.
RCS	Rich Communication Services
RCS 1-to-1 Messaging	Can either be standalone messaging or 1-to-1 chat as defined in RCC.07
RCS Alias name	A name that is defined by the user that represents the user as a Chat participant on B-Party devices, if no Contact exists in the contact list.
RCS-enabled	Capable of the RCS service, activated and ready to operate when the network conditions allow.
RCS Service Provider	A company providing Rich Communications Services (RCS) to end customers. RCS Service Providers are Mobile Network Operators
Reachable	The UE can receive service notifications irrespective of RCS service registration or connection to the cellular network.
Reaction	An Emoji/Emoticon/image sent by the user in response to a specific selected RCS Message.
Rear Camera	Opposite to the Front Camera positioned on the back of the device.
Recall Message	A best effort mechanism that allows a user to recall a sent RCS Message without leaving history.
Recall Message Indication	A visible indication within the conversation for an RCS Message that was recalled by the sender.
Recall Time Interval	The period during which the Recall Message feature is available to the sender of an RCS Message.
Recurring Payment	A predictable payment of a fixed amount which the user has agreed to pay on a regular schedule.
Reply Message	An RCS Message sent by the user in response to a specific selected RCS Message
Rich Text Formatting	Applying and using various text styling elements within RCS messages.
Rich Text Message	An RCS message that includes Rich Text Formatting applied by the sender and intended to be rendered with visual styling on the sender's and the recipient's device.
Seamless Messaging	An MNO messaging service whereby the user does not have to choose the messaging technology used but the device / network determines which messaging technology is used.
Secondary Device or	Terms used to describe any access to a user's RCS account and service features from a device or interface not containing the SIM associated with the primary identity. A user may have several secondary devices and/or interfaces

<b>Term</b>	<b>Description (contains technical and functional terms)</b>
Secondary Interface	available to access their RCS service, including devices containing SIMs not associated with the user's primary identity.
Service availability	Service availability is a state of a specific user that is determined using Capability Discovery processes.
SG	Signalling Gateway
SIM	Subscriber Identity Module
SIP	Session Initiation Protocol
SMS	Short Message Service
Spam Folder	A separated area from the regular conversation and chatbot threads where a user would be able to access messages that have been considered as suspicious by the RCS client
SRVCC	Single Radio Voice Call Continuity
SSL	Secure Socket Layer
SSO	Single Sign-On
Standalone Message	A single text message that was conveyed from one user to another using the RCS Standalone Messaging service.
Suggested Action	A suggestion that a Chatbot can provide to an RCS client enabling a user to perform an external action on their device (e.g. opening a web page, adding a calendar entry, etc.)
Suggested Chip List	A number of Suggested Replies and/or Suggested Actions that a Chatbot can send to a user along with a message
Suggested Reply	A suggestion that a Chatbot can provide to an RCS client for the user to easily send a pre-defined reply message to the Chatbot
Suspicion Indicator	An indication from the RCS Service Provider for suspicious messages
T&C	Terms & Conditions
TE	Technical Enabler
Thread (or messaging thread)	A thread (or "messaging thread") is the history of all messages or files exchanged in past between two users, including message exchanged in past which are not part of the current conversation. This notion can be extended to Group, and then represents exchanges between all participants of the group.
TLS	Transport Layer Security
Trusted Wi-Fi	Trusted Wi-Fi" refers to a Wi-Fi connection offered by the RCS Service Provider or via a third party trusted by the RCS Service Provider.
UE	User Equipment
UI	User Interface
Universal Profile	Specification that describes a profile of the RCS Standard that has the ambition to work globally on any RCS enabled network.
URI	Uniform Resource Identifier
User Encryption Identifier	A unique identifier associated with a given user that can be used to verify their identity, when sending or receiving end to end encrypted content.

Term	Description (contains technical and functional terms)
User Initiated Content	Content or related information that is initiated by the user, examples include Chat Message, Contact Card, Emoji, Emoticon, File and associated metadata, and Is Typing Notification.
UX	User Experience
Verification Authority	A provider of verification for Chatbots. A Verification Authority could be, but not limited to, a commercial trusted business (e.g. verification companies from the internet world), an MNO or a governmental function.
Verified Chatbot	A Chatbot that was verified to represent the identity (e.g. name, brand or institution) that their name, brand icon and Chatbot Profile Information suggest.
Video Message	A UI implementation that allows the user to record a video and send it to a 1-to-1 Messaging conversation, in a similar manner to sending and recording an Audio Message. For maximum duration, Video Message follows Audio Message and/or file transfer maximum size limits (whichever is reached first).
VoLTE	Voice over Long Term Evolution
VVM	Visual Voice Mail.
Voice Mail System (VMS)	The network system that allows users to listen to voice messages, delete voice messages, and compose voice messages.
Wi-Fi	Trademark of Industry Consortium "Wi-Fi Alliance" used as synonym for WLAN (Wireless Local Area Network)
XML	Extensible Markup Language
xMS	The traditional MNO messaging services known as Short Message Service (SMS) and Multimedia Messaging Service (MMS).

## 1.5 Table of references

Ref	Doc Number	Title
[1]	[3GPP TS 23.040]	3GPP TS 23.040, release 10, Technical realization of the Short Message Service (SMS) <a href="http://www.3gpp.org/DynaReport/23040.htm">http://www.3gpp.org/DynaReport/23040.htm</a>
[2]	[3GPP TS 24.008]	3GPP TS 24.008, release 10, Mobile radio interface Layer 3 specification; Core network protocols; Stage 3 <a href="http://www.3gpp.org/DynaReport/24008.htm">http://www.3gpp.org/DynaReport/24008.htm</a>
[3]	[3GPP TS 24.167]	3GPP TS 24.167, release 12, 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Core Network and Terminals; 3GPP IMS Management Object (MO) <a href="http://www.3gpp.org/DynaReport/24167.htm">http://www.3gpp.org/DynaReport/24167.htm</a>
[4]	[3GPP TS 24.175]	3GPP TS 24.175, release 16 Management Object (MO) for Multi-Device and Multi-Identity in IMS <a href="http://www.3gpp.org/DynaReport/24175.htm">http://www.3gpp.org/DynaReport/24175.htm</a>
[5]	[3GPP TS 24.368]	3GPP TS 24.368, 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Non-Access Stratum (NAS) configuration Management Object (MO) <a href="http://www.3gpp.org/DynaReport/24368.htm">http://www.3gpp.org/DynaReport/24368.htm</a>
[6]	[GSMA PRD-NG.102]	IMS Profile for Converged IP Communications Version 5.0 29 June 2018 <a href="http://www.gsma.com/">http://www.gsma.com/</a>

Ref	Doc Number	Title
[7]	[GSMA PRD-NG.110]	Multi Device Version 3.0 13 May 2020 <a href="http://www.gsma.com/">http://www.gsma.com/</a>
[8]	[GSMA PRD-NG.114]	IMS Profile for Voice, Video and Messaging over 5GS Version 1.0 <a href="http://www.gsma.com/">http://www.gsma.com/</a>
[9]	[GSMA PRD-IR.51]	IMS Profile for Voice, Video and SMS over untrusted Wi-Fi access Version 6.0 01 May 2018 <a href="http://www.gsma.com/">http://www.gsma.com/</a>
[10]	[GSMA PRD-IR.67]	GSMA PRD IR.67 - "DNS/ENUM Guidelines for Service Providers & GRX and IPX Providers" Version 14.0 21 November 2016 <a href="http://www.gsma.com/">http://www.gsma.com/</a>
[11]	[GSMA PRD-IR.90]	GSMA PRD IR.90 - "RCS Interworking Guidelines" Version 14.0 13 October 2017 <a href="http://www.gsma.com/">http://www.gsma.com/</a>
[12]	[GSMA PRD-IR.92]	GSMA PRD IR.92 - "IMS Profile for Voice and SMS" Version 12.0 02 May 2018 <a href="http://www.gsma.com/">http://www.gsma.com/</a>
[13]	[GSMA PRD-IR.94]	GSMA PRD IR.94 - "IMS Profile for Conversational Video Service" Version 13 21 June 2018 <a href="http://www.gsma.com/">http://www.gsma.com/</a>
[14]	[GSMA PRD-FS.41]	GSMA PRD FS.41 - "RCS Fraud and Security Assessment" Version 2.0 02 July 2021 NOTE: available only to GSMA members
[15]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	GSMA PRD RCC.07 version 17.0 - "Rich Communication Suite - Advanced Communications Services and Client Specification" 19 February 2026 <a href="http://www.gsma.com/">http://www.gsma.com/</a>
[16]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.08]	GSMA PRD RCC.08 RCS Endorsement of 3GPP TS 29.311 Service level Interworking for Messaging Services Version 9.0 16 October 2019 <a href="http://www.gsma.com/">http://www.gsma.com/</a>
[17]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.10]	GSMA PRD RCC.10 Rich Communication Suite Endorsement of OMA CPM 2.2 Interworking Version 9.0 16 October 2019 <a href="http://www.gsma.com/">http://www.gsma.com/</a>
[18]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.11]	GSMA PRD RCC.11 Rich Communication Suite Endorsement of OMA CPM 2.2 Conversation Functions Version 13.0 28 February 2025 <a href="http://www.gsma.com/">http://www.gsma.com/</a>
[19]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	GSMA PRD RCC.14 Service Provider Device Configuration Version 13.0 19 February 2026 <a href="http://www.gsma.com/">http://www.gsma.com/</a>
[20]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	GSMA PRD RCC.15 IMS Device Configuration and Supporting Services Version 8.0 04 June 2024

Ref	Doc Number	Title
		<a href="http://www.gsma.com/">http://www.gsma.com/</a>
[21]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.16]	GSMA PRD RCC.16 Rich Communication Suite – End-to-End Encryption Specification Version 3.0 19 February 2026 <a href="http://www.gsma.com/">http://www.gsma.com/</a>
[22]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.20]	GSMA PRD RCC.20 Enriched Calling Technical Specification Version 8.0 19 December 2022 <a href="http://www.gsma.com/">http://www.gsma.com/</a>
[23]	[GSMA PRD TS.43]	GSMA PRD TS.43 VoWiFi and VoLTE Entitlement Configuration <a href="http://www.gsma.com/">http://www.gsma.com/</a>
[24]	[GSMA PRD-NG.131]	GSMA PRD NG.131 RCS Verification API Version 1.0 25 November 2021 <a href="http://www.gsma.com/">http://www.gsma.com/</a>
[25]	[PRESENCE2MO]	OMA Management Object for Presence SIMPLE 2.0, Approved Version 2.0, 10 July 2012 <a href="http://www.openmobilealliance.org">http://www.openmobilealliance.org</a>
[26]	[OMA-MMS-CONF]	OMA MMS Conformance Document, Version 1.3 – 28 Jan 2008 <a href="http://www.openmobilealliance.org">http://www.openmobilealliance.org</a>
[27]	[RFC3966]	IETF RFC The tel URI for Telephone Numbers <a href="http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3966">http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3966</a>
[28]	[CPM-MSGSTOR-REST]	CPM Message Store using RESTful API, Draft Version 1.0, 25 Oct 2018, OMA-TS-CPM_Message_Storage_Using_RESTful_API-V1_0-20181025-D <a href="http://www.openmobilealliance.org">http://www.openmobilealliance.org</a>

## 2 Device Provisioning

### 2.1 Description

An RCS Service Provider may provision different services for different users and/or devices based on internal policies (e.g. having an active subscription to one service). In the device provisioning phase, the services that are allowed for that user are configured on the device.

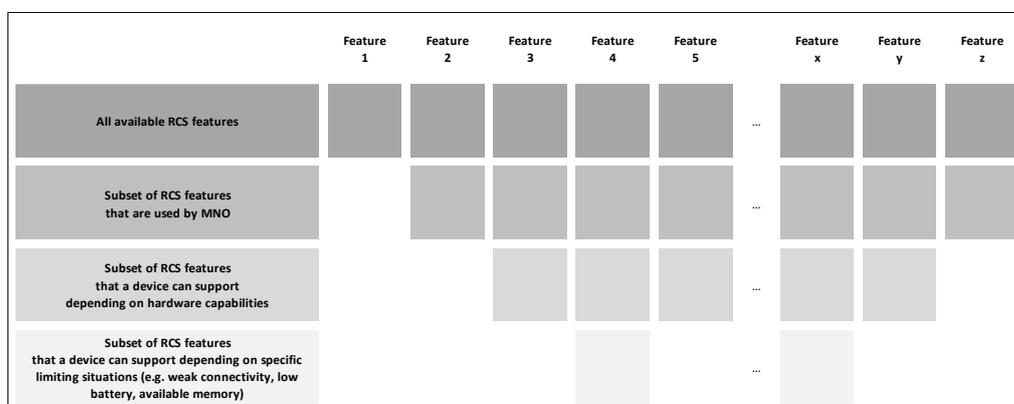


Figure 1: RCS features and their availability depending on MNO choice, device capability, and specific limiting situations.

## 2.2 User Stories and Feature Requirements

### 2.2.1 Activation of RCS services

**US2-1 As a user, I want RCS services to be on by default in my device without having to do anything. As a RCS Service Provider, I want my RCS services to be enabled for my users by default without user interaction.**

R2-1-1 By default, the RCS master switch shall be enabled if the device was provisioned by the RCS Service Provider.

R2-1-2 The user shall be able to turn the master switch off at any time.

R2-1-3 It shall be made clear to the user what the effect of enabling / disabling RCS service is, e.g. enhanced messaging and enriched calling services will be disabled, but other services such as Multimedia Telephony are not affected by the Master switch.

**US2-2 As a user, I want my device to activate RCS services as required in an unobtrusive way.**

R2-2-1 Any available RCS services shall be activated on a device:

R2-2-1-1 When the RCS Master switch is switched on and

R2-2-1-2 the messaging app or dialler app associated with the RCS service is set as the default messaging client or dialler respectively.

R2-2-2 RCS service activation shall happen either over cellular or non-cellular networks.

R2-2-3 RCS messaging features shall only be available when the default messaging app is RCS capable.

R2-2-4 RCS enriched calling features shall only be available when the default dialler app is RCS capable.

R2-2-5 When an RCS client is permanently removed from a device or otherwise permanently deactivated, it shall attempt to inform the RCS Service Provider.

**US2-3 As an RCS Service Provider, I want to use Push Notification to indicate the availability of new incoming communication events to the RCS client.**

R2-3-1 The RCS client shall connect to the RCS Service Provider to retrieve new incoming communication events upon receiving a Push Notification.

R2-3-2 The RCS client should not inform the user about receiving the Push Notification itself.

NOTE: The RCS client only displays some visible indication to the user when required by OS/platform specific functionality, e.g. for connection reliability. This is RCS client and OS/platform implementation specific.

- R2-3-3 The Push Notification shall not contain any user private information (e.g. MSISDN, Chat Messages, File Transfer, Audio Messages, Message or File Transfer Status / State notification).
- R2-3-4 If there is any non-private user information in the Push Notification, the Push Notification shall be encrypted (between the RCS Service Provider and RCS client).

## 2.2.2 Configuration of the user's primary device by requesting user identity

**US2-4 As a RCS Service Provider, I want my RCS users to verify their identity before they use the RCS service.**

- R2-4-1 The device shall attempt to be provisioned with the necessary RCS configuration without user interaction.
- R2-4-2 If it should not be possible to provision the device within 7 days after the initial attempt to receive RCS configuration without user interaction (e.g. manual introduction of MSISDN), the device shall request the user's support for configuration by asking for the device's MSISDN
- R2-4-3 This manual MSISDN identification shall be prompted in a context relevant to the services being activated: for example, only when the user enters the RCS app relating to the services activated (e.g. messaging app or dialler app).
- R2-4-3-1 The user shall be informed why the device is asking him to provide his MSISDN.
- R2-4-4 The user shall be able to skip the manual identification process. In such case, the user cannot use RCS services until the RCS client is configured either through the automatic configuration process or through a successful manual identification process.
- R2-4-4-1 When a user has skipped the process, manual identification shall not be prompted again until the device's next reboot.
- NOTE: If the device has received a valid RCS configuration in the meanwhile, any user interaction is obviously obsolete.
- R2-4-4-2 User prompts for manual identification shall be placed in context, i.e. when the user accesses the (native) messaging application on the device.
- R2-4-4-3 The maximum number of retries for manual identification shall be 3.
- R2-4-5 For entering the MSISDN, the user shall be presented with a numeric keypad. When a user enters his MSISDN into the manual identification process, the device shall ensure that the information entered is likely to be of a valid MSISDN format.
- R2-4-6 To ensure validity of the provided MSISDN, a verification process shall take place:
- R2-4-6-1 A SMS with a one-time password is sent to the device. A silent SMS is preferred if supported by MNO's network.

- R2-4-6-2 The one time password included in the SMS may be intercepted by the RCS provisioning process or be manually entered by the user and verified.
- R2-4-7 When the verification process has been completed successfully, the provisioning process shall be completed without any further user interaction.
- R2-4-8 If the SMS takes too long or is never received (e.g. because the network does not deliver the SMS properly or the user provided an incorrect MSISDN), the user shall be informed that the process is taking longer than expected and cannot be completed at this stage.
- R2-4-9 In this case, the user shall be prompted with the previously given MSISDN (so that the user can amend it if necessary) and shall be provided with an opportunity to retry.

### 2.2.3 Multiple RCS clients

**US2-5 As a user, I want to download as many RCS applications (messaging clients and diallers) as I choose, and use them without any additional manual configuration**

NOTE: It is up to the MNO to determine how to provision additional RCS applications/instances.

R2-5-1 It should be possible for multiple RCS applications (e.g. multiple messaging applications and multiple diallers) to be active and working at the same time on a device.

NOTE: This requirement cannot be satisfied before device Application Programming Interfaces (APIs) are available from the native RCS implementation.

R2-5-2 Only one messaging client shall manage the user notifications of incoming xMS and RCS messages at a time and act as the default client for composing messages. This shall be known as the Default Messaging Client.

R2-5-3 Only one dialler shall manage the user notifications of incoming calls and call-related information (e.g. enriched calling) at a time and act as the default dialler for making outgoing calls. This shall be known as the Default Dialler.

R2-5-4 If more than one messaging client is active and working at the same time, the user shall be able to choose which one of these clients will act as the Default Messaging Client.

R2-5-5 If more than one dialler is active and working at the same time, the user shall be able to choose which one of these clients will act as the Default Dialler.

R2-5-6 Legacy messaging clients not supporting RCS should not be able to operate as the Default Messaging Client.

R2-5-6-1 On devices where non-RCS clients are able to operate as the Default Messaging Client, RCS messaging services shall only be available when the Default Messaging Client supports RCS.

R2-5-7 Legacy diallers not supporting RCS Enriched Calling should not be able to operate as the Default Dialler.

- R2-5-7-1 On devices where non-RCS clients are able to operate as the Default Dialler, RCS Enriched Calling shall only be available when the Default Dialler supports RCS

## 2.2.4 SIM swap

### *US2-6* As a user, I want to use different SIM cards without losing any of my data

- R2-6-1 In the event of a Subscriber Identity Module (SIM) swap (using a SIM with different identity), if a configuration associated with the SIM (either because the device is able to resolve the MSISDN or via the International Mobile Subscriber Identification (IMSI)) is available in the device then it shall be used; otherwise the use case is equivalent to first time use of the service (activation of RCS services as defined in 2.2.1). Independent of the outcome, user data (e.g. configuration, contacts, messaging history, call logs, etc...) shall not be deleted from the device in the event of a SIM swap

## 2.2.5 User consent

This section does not apply to markets that do not require users to accept Terms & Conditions (T&C).

For markets which require users to accept T&C before using RCS, two scenarios can be applied, display of "User Message" or display of "End User Confirmation Request".

### User Message

### *US2-7* As an RCS Service Provider, I want to be able to provide information and require consent **BEFORE** my users use the RCS service.

- R2-7-1 Upon RCS Service Provider discretion a popup showing EITHER Terms & Conditions OR a Welcome Message (OR no popup is shown) shall be displayed to the user during first-time configuration.

NOTE: Display of Terms & Conditions requires two buttons (e.g. "accept" & "decline") for user action while display of Welcome Message requires only one button (e.g. "Ok").

- R2-7-2 The presentation of the messages must be clear to the user and not hidden within the notification tray for action, but be presented 'on top' of the screen (see figure below).



**Figure 2: Example Terms & Conditions pop-up**

- R2-7-3 As soon as the user is presented with the popup, the RCS service shall be active on the device.
- NOTE: This means that if the user leaves the screen without any action it is equivalent to an acceptance of the User Message.
- R2-7-4 If the user declines the User Message, RCS services shall not be available on the device, (for details see R2-7-2 and Figure 2).
- R2-7-5 In case of decline, a retry algorithm shall be able to retrigger the service activation and T&C acceptance process (on RCS capable networks). The retry algorithm shall be a retry after one day, then after one week, then after one month, then END.
- R2-7-5-1 Any retry to ask the user for confirmation of the User Message shall be placed in context, i.e. when the user accesses the native messaging application on the device.

### End User Confirmation Request

- US2-8 As an RCS Service Provider, I want to be able to provide information and require consent from my users AFTER the RCS service has been activated**
- R2-8-1 Upon MNO discretion, a popup showing a message (e.g. Terms & Conditions OR a Welcome message) shall be displayed to the user at any time after successful first-time registration.
- R2-8-2 The display of that message shall be able to come with EITHER one OR two buttons to respond by the user.
- R2-8-3 The RCS Service Provider shall be able to determine the button texts (e.g. 'accept') of that popup.
- R2-8-4 The responses to the message shall be relayed back to the network.

- R2-8-5 The presentation of the message shall be clear to the user and not hidden within the notification tray for action, but be presented 'on top' of the screen.
- R2-8-6 Depending on the response by the user, the network can send a trigger to deactivate the RCS services on the device, i.e. RCS services shall not be available on the device,. In this case, the user shall still use the legacy services such as: SMS/MMS/Circuit Switched (CS) Call provided by the MNO on the device.
- R2-8-7 In case the RCS services are deactivated, an RCS set-up entry point shall become visible in the device (e.g. settings).
- R2-8-8 Upon RCS Service Provider policies, additional messages may be displayed to the user.
- US2-9 As a RCS Service Provider, I want to request additional information from my users during first-time registration in order to fulfil specific security purposes.**
- R2-9-1 Upon RCS Service Provider discretion, users may be requested to enter additional information during first-time registration in order to fulfil specific security requirements set by the RCS Service Provider.
- NOTE: Details are covered in Security against Malware and Privacy Protection, see section 16.
- US2-10 As a user, I want to have access to the text displayed as User Message and / or End User Confirmation Request at any time after being provisioned to the service.**
- R2-10-1 The text displayed as User Message and / or End User Confirmation Request shall be accessible for the user after the user has started using the service (e.g. in "about" page").

## 2.2.6 Secondary Devices

- US2-11 As a user, I want to use RCS services on other RCS enabled devices other than my primary device.**
- R2-11-1 A secondary device is linked to the identity of the primary device using the federation process.
- NOTE: Any devices that are not the primary device are called secondary device(s).
- R2-11-2 All devices I use shall use one identity for any incoming / outgoing calls or messages.
- R2-11-2-1 The used identity shall be the MSISDN of the primary device.
- NOTE: Any single connected device can be used as a secondary device for a number of different identities.
- R2-11-3 If an MNO has deployed RCS Multi Device Messaging (MDM) and Multi Device Voice and Video (MDV<sup>2</sup>) services, the federation process shall span both MDM and MDV<sup>2</sup> processes (from the user perspective).

- R2-11-4 Secondary devices may use a SIM to authenticate to the data network or use a SIM-less data connection.
- R2-11-5 SIM based secondary devices may or may not be linked to the primary identity as part of a Multi-SIM implementation of the MNO.
- NOTE 1: If the SIM based device could make and / or receive telephone calls under its own identity, this capability shall not be affected by the federation with a primary device.
- NOTE 2: Inclusion of individual Multi-SIM solutions is at the discretion of the individual MNO.
- R2-11-6 When the secondary device authentication has successfully completed, a completion or welcome message may be displayed.

## 2.2.7 Error Management

### **US2-12 As an RCS Service Provider, I want technical errors to be handled with minimal user interaction**

The user may get any of the following errors:

- R2-12-1 Reception of SMS (see R2-4-6-1) takes too long or is never received.
- NOTE: There are two possible causes:
1. The network does not deliver the SMS.
  2. The user made a mistake when typing the MSISDN and the SMS is sent to a different device.
- In either case, the user shall be presented a screen informing them that the process is taking longer than expected. This screen shall contain a text box with the previously given MSISDN (so that the user can amend it if necessary) and a 'retry' button (final UI and text label up to MNO's discretion).
- R2-12-2 Temporary unavailable: Applies to internal errors during configuration/provisioning or configuration server unreachable. The device shall reattempt provisioning at a later stage (i.e. at the next device start-up).
- R2-12-3 Permanently unavailable: In case the RCS Service Provider does not want to provide RCS services to a particular subscription an RCS Service Provider defined error message shall be displayed if it is required by the MNO and the provisioning process is stopped.
- R2-12-4 If the user terminates the configuration process before the process is completed, further configuration attempts shall automatically start once the user connects to a cellular network.

## 2.2.8 Provisioning push

### **US2-13 As an RCS Service Provider, I want to be able to push configuration settings in special cases.**

Network initiated configuration request: Provisioning push will allow an RCS Service Provider to force the reconfiguration of each user's device if needed:

- R2-13-1 The RCS Service Provider shall be able to push configuration settings to new or existing RCS users (e.g. in the case of changing parameters).
- R2-13-2 The RCS Service Provider shall be able to push configuration settings in case the network is upgraded to a new RCS release.
- R2-13-3 The RCS Service Provider shall be able to push configuration settings when the device is permanently disabled from using RCS but the user would like to start using RCS.

## 2.2.9 Dual SIM Devices

**US2-14 As a user of a device that has more than one SIM (module or eSIM) installed in the device, I want to have both SIMs active for RCS.**

- R2-14-1 The device should try to activate RCS for both SIM cards when possible (i.e. when the associated MNOs both offer RCS services)..
  - R2-14-1-1 When both SIM cards' MNOs offer RCS services, both SIM cards should be active at the same time for RCS and shall be able to offer all supported RCS features (e.g. send / receive RCS Messages and File Transfers, reply to capability checks, provide Enriched Calling features etc.)
  - R2-14-1-2 When only one SIM card can offer RCS services then that identity should be activated for RCS no matter which SIM slot it is inserted into (slot 1 or 2).
    - R2-14-1-2-1 When only one SIM card can offer Enriched Calling features, Pre-Call features shall only be offered when the active RCS SIM card has been chosen to perform the call.
  - R2-14-1-3 When the user is requested to provide their MSISDN to provision the service, in addition to the single SIM scenario requirements, the device should clearly show the user for which SIM card the activation is required.
  - R2-14-1-4 The Master Switch and Settings implementations should follow the rules defined for a single SIM card device as far as possible. Additionally, an OEM can decide to apply a single configurable Master Switch and Settings that apply to both SIM cards or support separate Master Switch and Settings for each SIM card.

**US2-15 As a user, I want to enjoy the benefits of enriched calling whenever I make/ receive the call over an active RCS SIM.**

- R2-15-1 The user shall have all the entry points enabled to trigger Enriched Calling when an active RCS SIM is chosen for outgoing calls.
  - R2-15-1-1 The user shall not be able to perform Enriched Calling when a SIM other than an active RCS SIM is chosen for outgoing calls.
  - R2-15-1-2 When user makes a voice call to another RCS user with the identity from an active RCS SIM, Enriched Calling (pre-call, in-call and post-call) shall be possible.

- R2-15-1-3 Incoming Enriched Calling should be possible only for calls made to an active RCS SIM identity, since the other SIM identity is not RCS capable.

## 2.3 Technical Information

### 2.3.1 Overview

#### 2.3.1.1 Provisioning

Provisioning shall be done as described in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

The RCS Service Provider may apply automatic authentication of a primary device based on the access described in, section 2.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] or automatic identification based on the SIM or based on the IMSI as specified in section 2.6 and 2.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14].

If the RCS Service Provider is not able to identify the user automatically, they shall request the user for the MSISDN via the user interface, either based on OpenID Connect as defined in section mechanism defined in section 2.8.3.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] or via the client procedure defined in section 2.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]. Provisioning of secondary devices shall follow section 2.8 or 2.9 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14].

Alternatively a generic approach for user authentication, authorisation and user consent is the application of OpenID Connect as defined in section 2.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]. Depending on the device capabilities, the provisioning client shall indicate support of authentication mechanisms for OpenID Connect as defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] and [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

The device shall assume that RCS is available on the user's network if the procedures for configuration server discovery as defined in section 2.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] and the supported service discovery defined in section 2.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] results in indications of the network to support RCS services.

The RCS client shall indicate support of RCS services and related enablers via the "app" configuration request parameter defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]. Depending on the support of RCS services and enablers, the client shall indicate the support of services for client configuration based on the definitions of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07], [GSMA PRD-RCC.15], [GSMA PRD-IR.51], [GSMA PRD-IR.92], [GSMA PRD-IR.94] and [GSMA PRD-NG.114].

The RCS client shall indicate the support of the profile defined in this document via the "rcs\_profile" configuration request parameter defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] with a value set to "UP\_4.0".

If an active RCS client is disabled (e.g. due to toggling the master switch referred to in US2-1 or following the activation of another client as a result from the requirements in section 2.2.6), a HTTP configuration request with the rcs\_state parameter set to -4 (as described in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]) shall be sent to the network at the first possible occasion. When the user re-enables a disabled RCS client that had been active before, a HTTP configuration request will be sent to verify whether the available version of the RCS configuration parameters is still valid.

### 2.3.1.2 User Consent

User consent and welcome messages shall be realised using the MSG characteristic defined in sections 2.4 and 4.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] or using End User Confirmation Requests (EUCR) as specified in section 3.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.15] or via OpenID Connect as specified in section 2.8.3.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14].

### 2.3.1.3 Multi-Client

Handling of multiple instances relies on a fundamental principle: only one RCS stack shall be active (i.e. registered to the IMS) at any given time on a device.

To ensure that, a device-local solution is required which will therefore be OS specific.

For Android™ devices, procedures described in section B.1 apply.

## 2.3.2 Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service requirements

- R2-16-1 The requirements in US2-1 and R2-2-1 and its sub requirements shall be realised locally on the device.
- R2-16-2 R2-2-2 shall be realised as described in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] section 2.3.2.
- R2-16-3 R2-2-3 and R2-2-4 shall be realised locally on the device.
- R2-16-4 For R2-2-5, shall set the rcs\_state to -4 in the configuration request and follow client codes and procedures defined in section 2.3.2.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R2-16-5 For requirement R2-3-1, the RCS client shall use the procedures defined in section 2.15 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R2-16-6 Requirement R2-3-2 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R2-16-7 For requirement R2-3-3, as the RCS Service Provider shall send the Push Notification the RCS Service Provider shall not send any user private information.
- R2-16-8 For requirement R2-3-4, the RCS Service Provider shall use the procedures defined in section 2.15.2.2.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R2-16-9 Provisioning on networks with automatic identification (see requirement R2-4-1) shall be done as described in section 2.3.1.1. If the network cannot authorize the user based on the access as described in requirement R2-4-2 then depending on supported mechanisms, the RCS Service Provider may fall back to the SMS via the procedures defined in section 2.5 or 2.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14].
- R2-16-10 R2-4-2 shall be realised locally on the device if configuration without user interaction could not be concluded successfully.
- R2-16-11 Configuration over networks where automatic authentication is not possible (e.g. non-cellular networks) shall be realised using the HTTP mechanism as described in section 2.3.1.1 referring to section 2.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] and its subsections or section 2.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14].

- R2-16-12 R2-4-3 and its sub requirements shall be realised locally on the device
- R2-16-13 R2-4-4 and its sub requirements shall be realised locally on the device
- R2-16-14 R2-4-5 shall be realised locally on the device
- R2-16-15 R2-4-6 and its sub requirements shall be realised as described in section 2.6 or 2.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] using the SMS format being described in section 2.6.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] if the SMS should be handled silently.
- R2-16-16 R2-4-7 shall be realised locally on the device
- R2-16-17 R2-4-8 and R2-4-9 shall be realised locally on the device
- R2-16-18 On Android™ devices, Requirements R2-5-1, R2-5-2 and R2-5-3 are linked to the ability of the embedded RCS stack to be used by other messaging applications than the native RCS client.
- NOTE: Multi-client solutions for other OSs are for further study. Where relevant solutions on such OSs will align with the concepts used on Android™.
- R2-16-19 When the embedded RCS stack is not opened to other applications than the native RCS client, technical solutions described for requirements R2-5-6-1 and R2-5-7-1 apply.
- R2-16-20 On Android™ devices requirement R2-5-4 is implemented locally on the device with the Android setting related to the Default SMS app.
- R2-16-21 On Android™ devices, R2-5-5 is implemented locally on the device with the Android™ setting related to the Default Dialler (or phone) application.
- R2-16-22 The technical feasibility of requirements R2-5-6 and R2-5-7 depend on either evolutions of the Android™ Operating System or device specific implementation to ensure that restriction.
- R2-16-23 On Android™ devices whose OS version is superior or equal to 7.0, requirement R2-5-6-1 depends on the availability of an embedded RCS stack opened to other application than the native RCS client:
- On a non RCS device or an embedded RCS device where the stack cannot be used by other applications than the native RCS client: if the messaging application set as Default Messaging Client supports RCS messaging services (using its own stack), the associated stack shall register RCS messaging services to the IMS and announce RCS messaging services in capability exchanges. Any other RCS client previously set as Default SMS app should unregister RCS messaging and Enriched Calling services from the IMS.
  - On an embedded RCS device where the stack can be accessed by other applications than the native RCS clients, the required behaviour is:
    - if the messaging application set as the Default SMS app supports RCS messaging services using the embedded RCS stack, then this stack shall:
      - announce RCS messaging services in IMS registrations

- announce support of RCS messaging services in capability exchanges
- if the messaging application set as the Default SMS app does not support RCS messaging services using the embedded RCS stack, then this stack shall:
  - not announce RCS messaging services in IMS registrations
  - not announce support of RCS messaging services in capability exchanges

R2-16-24 On Android™ devices whose version is superior or equal to 7.0, requirement R2-5-7-1 is handled differently according to:

- On a non RCS device or an embedded RCS device where the RCS stack cannot be used by other applications than the native RCS client:
  - if the dialler set as Default Dialler supports the Enriched Calling features, these services will only be provided when this dialler can use the RCS stack of the messaging application set as the default SMS app to implement Enriched Calling services. In that case, this RCS stack shall register Enriched Calling services to the IMS and announce them in capability exchange.
  - if the dialler set as the Default Dialler does not support Enriched Calling features, the RCS client if set as default SMS app shall:
    - not register the Pre-Call, Shared Sketch, Shared Maps and Post-Call feature tags on the IMS network.
    - not announce support of Pre-Call, Shared Sketch, Shared Maps and Post-Call services in capability exchanges.
- On an embedded RCS device where the RCS stack can be accessed by other applications than the native RCS client, the required behaviour is:
  - if the dialler set as the Default Dialler supports the Enriched Calling features using the embedded RCS stack, then this stack shall:
    - register the Pre-Call, Shared Sketch, Shared Maps and Post-Call feature tags on the IMS network.
    - announce support of Pre-Call, Shared Sketch, Shared Maps and Post-Call services during capability exchanges.
  - if the dialler set as the Default Dialler does not support Enriched Calling, then the embedded RCS stack shall:
    - not register the Pre-Call, Shared Sketch, Shared Maps and Post-call feature tags.
    - not announce support of Pre-Call, Shared Sketch, Shared Maps and Post-Call services during capability exchanges.

R2-16-25 R2-6-1 shall be realised locally on the device as described in section 4.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14].

- R2-16-26 As mention in section 2.3.1.1, configuration of additional devices shall be done as described in section 2.9 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] realising the requirements R2-11-1 to R2-11-6.
- R2-16-27 The user consent before use of the service described in user story US2-7 shall be realised through the mechanism for providing User Messages in the HTTP configuration described in section 2.4.2 and 4.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]. This mechanism shall be supported by the RCS clients and may be used upon the RCS Service Provider's discretion.
- R2-16-28 As described in section 2.4.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] the User Message mechanism supports requirements R2-7-1 and R2-7-4.
- R2-16-29 Requirements R2-7-2, R2-7-5 and R2-7-5-1 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- NOTE: The retry algorithm described is to be realised in the device. An MNO can opt for more retries through the Provisioning Push mechanism described in US2-13.
- R2-16-30 For requirement R2-7-3 as defined, the configuration shall be applied and the service shall be activated when the user presses the "Accept" button, moving to another screen shall be considered equivalent with this "accept" button action.
- R2-16-31 The RCS Service Provider is also able to implement the requirements of the user consent in user story US2-7 via the procedures for authorisation and consent via the procedure defined in section 2.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14].
- R2-16-32 The user consent after activation of the service described in user story US2-8 shall be realised through the mechanism End User Confirmation Request mechanism described in section 3.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.15]. This mechanism shall be supported by the RCS clients and may be used upon RCS Service Provider discretion. No specific handling apart from the normal processing of End User Confirmation Requests is thus assumed to be provided on the device.
- R2-16-33 As described in section 3.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.15] the End User Confirmation Request mechanism supports requirements R2-8-1, R2-8-2, R2-8-3 and R2-8-4. For requirement R2-8-2, in the case when one button is required, the End User Notification Request described in section 3.1.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.15] shall be used. For a message requiring two buttons, the End User Confirmation Request and Response described in section 3.1.1 and 3.1.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.15] respectively shall be used.
- R2-16-34 Requirement R2-8-5 shall be implemented locally on the device
- R2-16-35 For requirements R2-8-6 and R2-8-7 the network shall disable the RCS client by triggering a client reconfiguration using the procedure defined in R2-16-41 and R2-16-42 returning a HTTP configuration response with the RCS DISABLED STATE configuration parameter set to '-2' ensuring that the RCS touch points remain available as described in section 2.3.2.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R2-16-36 For requirement R2-8-8, [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] does not impose restrictions on the use of the End User Confirmation request mechanism. Further messages

can thus be sent at any point in time, including immediately after a previous one.

- R2-16-37 As described in section 2.5.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] an MNO can choose to fall back to the SMS-based authentication mechanism used on networks where automatic identification is not possible. This allows in combination with the mechanism described in section 2.6.3 and 2.6.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] to handle that SMS in a manner that is not transparent to the user thereby supporting the requirement R2-9-1. This same non-transparent handling of the SMS can be used to realise this requirement on networks where automatic identification is not possible. Alternatively, the RCS Service Provider can use the mechanism for authorisation and user consent defined in section 2.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] to provide the functionality.
- R2-16-38 Requirement R2-10-1 shall be implemented locally on the device by making the contents of any received User Message and non-volatile End User Confirmation Request available for consultation by the user at a later time. This consultation shall not require the user to provide a response to the request.
- R2-16-39 If the subscriber cannot be provisioned due to MNO policy (i.e. a permanent unavailability as described in requirement R2-12-3), the RCS Service Provider can include a message as described in sections 2.4.2 and 4.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] in a response disabling the RCS client (i.e. RCS DISABLED STATE set to -1).
- R2-16-40 As described in section 2.4.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14], a number of consecutive internal errors (each resulting in a temporary unavailability as described in requirement R2-12-1) shall lead to a permanent unavailability. As described in section 2.6.3 [GSMA PRD-RCC.14], for non-cellular networks, this situation shall be applicable only to that particular network however.
- R2-16-41 A SMS shall be sent to the device with a specific format defined in section 3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] for the push request for initial configuration of a device on which RCS was permanently disabled (i.e. as a consequence of R2-16-40 and R2-16-41 required in R2-13-1 and R2-13-3), and a reconfiguration of an active RCS device (required in R2-13-1 and R2-13-2), shall be enough to trigger a new configuration of a primary device.
- R2-16-42 For the reconfiguration of primary and additional devices on which RCS is active already (required in R2-13-1 and R2-13-2), it shall be possible to trigger a reconfiguration by sending an End User Confirmation Request to the device as specified in section 2.1.3.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.15].
- R2-16-43 For User Story US2-14, an RCS enabled SIM shall be discovered by the RCS client via the procedures for configuration server discovery and supported service discovery as defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]. This should happen regardless of the type of network (Packet Switched (PS) network or Wi-Fi).
- R2-16-44 After discovering a SIM to be supporting RCS as per the procedures in R2-16-43, the RCS client shall fetch the configuration data from Auto-configuration server. When provisioning the user with RCS for the first time, MNO might render a welcome message with list of services/ features to educate the user as described in R2-7-1. This welcome message serves as a medium for MNO to educate/ promote the RCS services and it does not necessarily be correlated with the use of Terms & Conditions

- R2-16-45 The client should store the welcome message received from network against the corresponding SIM as additional information so that user could revisit the details at later point.
- R2-16-46 For requirement R2-14-1-1, the RCS client shall follow the discovery procedure as described in R2-16-43 and the activation procedure described in R2-16-44.
- R2-16-47 Requirements R2-14-1-2 to R2-14-1-4 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R2-16-48 Requirements R2-15-1, R2-15-1-1 and R2-15-1-2, shall be realised locally on the device and when applicable enriched calling shall be provided as described in section 12.
- R2-16-49 For requirement R2-15-1-3, a service discovery request targeted at the identity associated to a non-RCS enabled SIM will fail and as such, the caller will not be aware that enriched calling is possible and treat the call as a non-enriched call.

### 3 Capability Discovery and Service Availability

#### 3.1 Description

Capability discovery is a process which enables RCS users to know the availability of the set or subset of RCS services that their contacts use, at certain points in time. Capability discovery can also be used by RCS entities to detect service awareness of other RCS users on behalf of an RCS service or user.

The availability of a RCS service is influenced by three categories of conditions:

1. Provisioning status
2. Device capability and status
3. Network conditions

#### 3.2 User Stories and Feature Requirements

**US3-1 As an RCS Service Provider, I can configure the device capability discovery or service availability behaviour.**

- R3-1-1 It is at the discretion of the individual MNO to enable or disable RCS capability discovery and service availability in their network and on their devices.
- R3-1-2 When RCS capability discovery and service availability is disabled on a given network and their devices, all RCS services requiring RCS capability discovery and service availability requests are expected to be always available and selectable by the user.
- R3-1-3 All RCS MNOs shall respond to each and every RCS capability discovery or service availability request that originates from another MNO or device indicating the agreed interworking capabilities of a given user.

**US3-2 As a user, I want to be aware of the ways I can communicate with contacts stored in my contact list, regardless of their RCS Service Provider or country where they reside.**

- R3-2-1 The device shall make visible to the user whether a contact is RCS-enabled and if so, for which RCS services or categories they are capable and available for at a given point in time.
- R3-2-2 The device shall make visible to the user the detected RCS capabilities for contacts following a contact list scan or an individual contact capability check.
- R3-2-3 When displaying capabilities of a non-RCS contact, the device shall only make visible services that are known to be compatible with defined RCS services.
- R3-2-4 For 1-to-1 Messaging in its Integrated Messaging variant (as defined in 'US5-2: Variant 1 – Integrated Messaging'), there shall not be any RCS service entry points when the recipient is known to be a non- RCS user.
- R3-2-5 For Enriched Calling (as defined in section 12 'Enriched Voice Calling'), there shall only be a single service entry point (Post-call Note, as in R12-51-1) when the recipient is known to be a non- RCS user.
- R3-2-6 When more than one RCS feature can deliver a similar service, the RCS capability and service availability information should be made visible to the user under a general RCS service category via an icon/label/button. This is done to avoid user confusion when similar RCS capabilities use different underlying services for service delivery.

**US3-3 As a user, I want to be sure that the information I have about my contacts RCS service capabilities is up to date and if they are available to communicate using those capabilities.**

- R3-3-1 MNOs can configure the appearance of RCS Enriched Calling and Video Call service entry points on the device (on a per-device basis) in one of the following ways:
- R3-3-1-1 **Variant A:** The service entry point shall be visible and selectable by the user if there is a high likelihood that the service can be established successfully at that time. If the service is unlikely to be established successfully, the service entry point shall be greyed out and not selectable. This variant applies for any telephone number including RCS and non-RCS contacts.
- R3-3-1-2 **Variant B:** The service entry point shall be visible and selectable by the user if there is a high likelihood that the service can be established successfully at that time. If the service is unlikely to be available, the appearance of the service entry point shall change but remain visible and selectable for any telephone number including RCS and non-RCS contacts.
- R3-3-1-3 **Variant C:** The service entry point shall be visible and selectable by the user for any telephone number including RCS and non-RCS contacts.

NOTE 1: In the case user B is a non-RCS user supporting the video telephony service based on Multimedia Telephony, during call setup confirmation of the video capability is to be considered to mean there is a high likelihood for a successful video call upgrade.

NOTE 2: "Likely to succeed" means capability or service availability exchange indicates end-to-end support. "Likely to fail" means capability or service availability exchange indicates "not available at this time".

R3-3-2 If the MNO has decided to enable RCS contact list scan, then the device shall scan the contact list to find out which of the contacts are enabled for which RCS services, in the following ways:

R3-3-2-1 On the first time a different SIM is connected to a RCS device, the device shall perform an initial scan of the full contact list.

R3-3-2-2 The initial contact list scan shall happen in the background without user impact. The timing of the contact list scan may be delayed or chunked to parts if negative user impact is likely to be expected (e.g., but not limited to, cases of low battery or slowing down the handset if the user replays a video).

R3-3-2-3 After installation and/or set up of the RCS application, and after each re-configuration of the RCS service which impacts capability discovery, the device shall perform a scan of the contact list for all contacts which are not associated with valid RCS capability (or RCS non-capability) information.

R3-3-3 The device shall request a RCS capability discovery and/or service availability update of an individual contact when the capability information is invalid or expired AND one of the following applies:

R3-3-3-1 When a new contact is added to the address book. That shall include cases of adding an MSISDN to an existing contact or changing the MSISDN of an existing contact.

*R3-3-3-1-1* If the device is configured by the RCS Service Provider for Integrated Messaging, the adding or modifying a contact as described in R3-3-3-1 in offline status shall result in a capability update once the device is online again.

NOTE: If this contact is RCS enabled, their current RCS capabilities shall be displayed.

R3-3-3-2 When opening that contact from the contact list.

R3-3-3-3 When starting a conversation with that contact (e.g. when adding a contact to the "To:" field of a new message.)

R3-3-3-4 When opening a conversation or thread with that contact.

R3-3-3-5 When entering a potentially valid number into the dialler.

R3-3-4 The information whether a given contact is RCS enabled or not shall be updated every time a Chat Message or File Transfer event is received and when a delivery or display notification for a sent message or file is received.

R3-3-5 The MNO shall have the ability to limit the impact of capability and availability checks based on the following:

- R3-3-5-1 An MNO defined minimum interval duration shall exist between two queries sent to the same RCS contact.
- R3-3-5-2 An MNO defined minimum interval duration shall exist between two queries sent to the same non-RCS contact.
- R3-3-5-3 An MNO defined telephone number prefix setting.
- R3-3-5-4 RCS applications shall use known and valid contact capability or service availability information which is stored locally on the device (i.e. cached) when attempting to establish a connection with a contact.
- R3-3-5-5 For In-Call services, a capability check shall always be made when the call has been set up and irrespective of whether the interval of capability checks has expired or not.
- R3-3-6 Each response to a capability/service availability request/update shall include the current or most recently available capability/availability information.
- R3-3-7 The MNO may respond to capability requests with current user capabilities or service availabilities which are stored on the capability or service availability server.

### 3.3 Technical Information

#### 3.3.1 Overview

When enabled, Capability Discovery and Service Availability shall be realised based on three main Technical Enablers (TE):

- TE1: Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) Options Exchange as specified in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] Sections 2.6.1.1
- TE2: Presence Based Exchange as specified in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] Sections 2.6.1.2
- TE3: Chatbot Information as specified in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] Section 3.6.4

TE1 and TE2 are compatible through the co-existence solutions [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] Section 2.6.1.4, and TE3 through the procedures defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] Section 3.6.4.

In the profile defined in this document, Service Availability as defined in section 2.6.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] shall be the basis to indicate to the user that a service can likely be established successfully for the following services and for determining whether the following services can be used with a contact:

- IP Video Call (see section 11 and 12)
- Pre-Call services (see section 12)
- Post-Call services (see section 12)
- Chat and File Transfer when latched to SMS (see section 5 and 7 respectively)

In-call services can only be available within a call. Therefore, their Service Availability shall be verified at the start of every call once the call has been established successfully. This applies to the following services:

- Interactive in-call services (Shared Map/Shared Sketch, see section 12)

Capability information as defined in section 2.6.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] shall be used for determining whether the following services can be used with a contact:

- Chat when not “latched” (see section 5)
- Group Chat (see section 6)
- File Transfer when not “latched” (see section 7) or when a contact is identified as a Chatbot (see section 15.2)
- File Transfer fall-back to SMS (see section 7)
- Geolocation Push (see section 5)
- Geolocation Push fall-back to SMS (see section 5)

To fulfil the requirements in section 3.2, Capability information and Service Availability information obtained through the capability exchange enablers will be cached on the device as specified in section 2.6.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

Capability information, TE3, as defined by section 3.6.4 [GSMA PRD-RCC.07], shall be used for determining whether a contact is identified as a Chatbot (see section 15.2).

### 3.3.2 Configuration Parameters

#### 3.3.2.1 New Configuration Parameters

The following configuration parameters are introduced to manage the user experience based on retrieved capability and service availability information of a contact:

Configuration parameter	Description	Parameter usage
VIDEO AND ENCALL UX	<p>This parameter controls the visibility and selectability of the User Experience (UX) service entry point for Video Call and Enriched Calling:</p> <p>0, (default): The Video Call and Enriched Calling service entry point will be conditionally visible and conditionally selectable.</p> <p>In the case where based on the capability exchange the service is considered available (see section 3.3.1), the corresponding service entry point is visible and selectable.</p> <p>In the case when the capability exchange fails or indicates that the service is not available, the corresponding service entry point colour will change and the service entry point will become unselectable.</p> <p>1: The Video Call and Enriched Calling service entry point will be conditionally visible and always selectable.</p> <p>In the case where based on the capability exchange the service is considered available (see section 3.3.1), the</p>	Optional Parameter

Configuration parameter	Description	Parameter usage
	<p>corresponding service entry point is visible and selectable.</p> <p>In the case when the capability exchange fails or indicates that the service is not available, the corresponding service entry point colour will change and remain selectable.</p> <p>The service availability will have no impact on the selectability of the entry point.</p> <p>NOTE: The VIDEO AND ENCALL UX behaviour is valid for any telephone number.</p> <p>NOTE: if either video call or enriched calling is not enabled (see section 11 and 12), the corresponding service entry points shall not be shown regardless of the setting of the VIDEO AND ENCALL UX parameter</p>	

**Table 2: Video Call and Enriched Calling Service Entry Point UX Configuration Parameter**

These parameters are included in the UX tree defined in section 5.3.4.

Node: /<x>/UX/videoAndEncallUX

Leaf node that describes the visibility and selectability of the video Call and Enriched Calling UX service entry point.

If not instantiated, the same UX service entry point shall be used.

Status	Occurrence	Format	Min. Access Types
Required	ZeroOrOne	Bool	Get, Replace

**Table 3: UX MO sub tree addition parameters (videoAndEncallUX)**

- Values:
  - 0, the Video Call and Enriched Calling service entry point will be conditionally visible and conditionally selectable
  - 1, the Video Call and Enriched Calling service entry point will be conditionally visible and always selectable
- Post-reconfiguration actions: When the value is changed, the RCS client shall reflect this change in the UI whenever a UI screen is opened that includes the relevant service entry points in a UI screen.
- Associated HTTP XML characteristic type: "videoAndEncallUX"

### 3.3.3 Handling of capability exchange triggers in messaging

For messaging following its realisation as defined in sections 5, 6, 7 and 8, capability information is not necessarily required at all times when coming across the Capability

Exchange trigger points defined as part of requirement R3-3-3. In messaging, only the following trigger points would be relevant:

- R3-3-3-3 for its use in the messaging context and
- the trigger points referred to in R3-3-3-4.

For those entry points, an actual capability exchange shall be done only when all of the following conditions are fulfilled:

- Capability Exchange is enabled (i.e. CAPABILITY DISCOVERY MECHANISM as defined in section A.1.9 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] is set to 0 or 1) and
- the capability exchange is allowed based on the conditions configured by the operator (i.e. according to the CAPABILITY DISCOVERY ALLOWED PREFIXES, NON RCS CAPABILITY INFO EXPIRY client configuration parameters defined in section A.1.9 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]) and
- Chat is enabled (i.e. CHAT AUTH as defined in section 5.3.4 is set to 1) and
- at least one of the following conditions is fulfilled:
  - the Chat Capability Information for the contact is unknown or
  - The contact is known to be Chat capable, but for last message a client fall-back to SMS was done (i.e. Latching as required in section 5.2) and no valid Service Availability information is available for Chat with that Contact (based on the configured value for SERVICE AVAILABILITY INFO EXPIRY defined in section A.1.9 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]).

If those conditions are not applicable, the trigger point should not result in a capability exchange request.

### 3.3.4 Capability information for IP Video Call

Table 4 lists the feature tag and Service ID that are used for indicating that IP Video Call is available for methods TE1 and TE2 respectively.

RCS service		Tag
IP video call	Tag	+g.3gpp.icsi-ref="urn%3Aurn-7%3A3gpp-service.ims.icsi.mmtel";video
	Service ID	Service-id: org.3gpp.urn:urn-7:3gpp-service.ims.icsi.mmtel Version: 1.0 Media capabilities: audio, video, duplex Contact address type: tel/ SIP URI

**Table 4: SIP OPTIONS tag and Presence Service ID usage for IP Video Call**

### 3.3.5 Technical implementation of user stories and requirements

- R3-4-1 For Requirement R3-1-1 the MNO shall be able to configure the device through the CAPABILITY DISCOVERY MECHANISM client configuration parameter as described in Section A.1.9 [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]
- R3-4-2 Requirement R3-1-2 shall be implemented locally on the device.

- R3-4-3 It is recommended the network return response code 404 (not a RCS customer) or 480, 408 when the RCS customer is not registered or a 200 response with agreed interworking service tags when receiving capability polling requests from other networks or devices to satisfy requirement R3-1-3 as described in section 2.6.1.4.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R3-4-4 Requirements R3-2-1 and R3-2-2 shall follow TE1 or TE2. The rest of the requirements under R3-2-3, R3-2-4, R3-2-5 and R3-2-6 shall be implemented locally on the device. The available services for requirement R3-2-3 are voice calling, Operator Messaging with RCS messaging being available if configured through the corresponding configuration parameters.
- R3-4-5 RCS Service Providers need to configure how RCS service entry points are displayed and made selectable as described in requirement R3-3-1 using the VIDEO AND ENCALL UX configuration parameter described in section 3.3.2 if they wish to select variant A (R3-3-1-1) or Variant B (R3-3-1-2). If they wish to use Variant C (R3-3-1-3), they should disable Capability Exchange by setting the CAPABILITY DISCOVERY MECHANISM client configuration parameter defined in Section A.1.9 [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] to 2 or by not providing that parameter. As defined in R3-1-2, this shall then result in the desired behaviour.
- R3-4-6 Requirements under R3-3-2 shall be implemented locally on the device triggering the capability exchange using the capability discovery mechanism that was configured and taking into account the RCS Service Provider configuration described in section 2.6.2.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The MNO can control whether the RCS contact list scan is enabled through the DISABLE INITIAL ADDRESS BOOK SCAN client configuration parameter.
- R3-4-7 Requirements under R3-3-3 shall be implemented locally on the device taking into account section 3.3.3 of this document and section 2.6.2.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] where applicable.
- R3-4-8 Requirement R3-3-4 shall be implemented locally on the device, updating the expiry for the cached Capability information of that contact according to the value set in the CAPABILITY INFO EXPIRY client configuration parameter when this value is not set to 0.
- R3-4-9 Requirements R3-3-5 shall follow TE1 or TE2 capability discovery optimizations defined in sections 2.6.2 and A.1.9 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and section 3.3.1 of this document.
- R3-4-9-1 The operator defined minimum interval duration referred to in R3-3-5-1 shall be based on the configuration of the SERVICE AVAILABILITY INFO EXPIRY and CAPABILITY INFO EXPIRY client configuration parameters defined in section A.1.9 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]
- R3-4-9-2 The interval referred to in R3-3-5-2 shall be configured through the NON RCS CAPABILITY INFO EXPIRY client configuration parameter defined in section A.1.9 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R3-4-9-3 Requirement R3-3-5-3 shall follow 2.6.4.1 [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] with the prefixes being configured through the CAPABILITY DISCOVERY ALLOWED PREFIXES client configuration parameter defined in section A.1.9 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

- R3-4-9-4 For R3-3-5-4, the cache shall be managed as described in section 2.6.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]
- R3-4-9-5 Requirement R3-3-5-5 applies only to TE1.
- R3-4-10 Requirement R3-3-6 shall be implemented locally on the device for TE1 and as described in section 2.6.1.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] for TE2.
- R3-4-11 Requirement R3-3-7 shall be provided by the Presence Application Server for TE2 and may be provided by an OPTIONS Application Server (as defined in section 2.6.1.1.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]) for TE1.

## 4 Operator Messaging

void

## 5 1-to-1 Messaging

### 5.1 Description

1-to-1 Messaging enables users to exchange conversational messages and locations with another party. This section describes the User Stories and Service Requirements for the core chat service, the Geolocation Push service and all features around the core.

Compared to Universal Profile 2.0 and its subversions, Universal Profile 3.0 introduces the following:

- Support for End-to-End Encryption (E2EE)

### 5.2 User Stories and Feature Requirements

**US5-1 As a user, I want a single environment for creating and viewing my messages, covering a multitude of different services. By having this convenience, I do not have to change apps to carry out similar messaging tasks.**

R5-1-1 The Operator Messaging application shall combine the composing of:

- 1-to-1 Messages
- File Transfer

R5-1-2 with SMS (and MMS, if configured by the MNO) messages.

R5-1-3 All messaging entry points on a device shall ensure access to the full Operator Messaging experience.

NOTE: For native implementations.

**US5-2 Variant 1 - Integrated Messaging: As a user, I want full visibility about the Messaging Service that is used for sending a message or a file.**

R5-2-1 The device shall determine and propose the best Operator Messaging Service available at any point in time to the user.

R5-2-1-1 The user shall be able to configure the device so that either the automatically determined 1-to-1 Messaging service is selected, or a user preference applies (see US18-12 and subsequent requirements).

R5-2-2 Delivery Assurance shall be supported and can be implemented using either Network Fallback to SMS (NFS) or Client Fallback to SMS incl. Revocation (CFS).

R5-2-2-1 'Chat' shall be proposed as the selected Messaging Service only for recipients known to be RCS users for which the messaging technology is not currently latched to SMS (only applies to CFS, see section R5-2-4-6) in each of the following cases:

*R5-2-2-1-1* The A-party device is registered to the RCS platform.

NOTE: This includes connectivity via cellular coverage or Wi-Fi.

*R5-2-2-1-2* The A-party device is in "Flight Mode", i.e. the user set the cellular data switch to off and the CS connectivity is set to off.

*R5-2-2-1-3* The A-party device is not connected to cellular coverage and the user has set the cellular data switch for home network on the device to "on".

NOTE: When not registered in the cases above, messages shall be queued for delivery when the device is reconnected. The user shall be notified that these messages are queued for delivery.

R5-2-2-2 'SMS' shall be proposed as the Messaging Service in each of the following cases:

*R5-2-2-2-1* The recipient is not known to be an RCS user.

*R5-2-2-2-2* The recipient is an RCS user for whom the technology was latched to SMS (see section R5-2-4-6).

*R5-2-2-2-3* The A-Party device is neither connected to cellular coverage nor registered to RCS and the user has set the cellular data switch for home network on the device to "off".

NOTE: Messages shall be queued for delivery when the device is reconnected. The user shall be notified that these messages are queued for delivery.

*R5-2-2-2-4* The A-Party device is not online but is connected to cellular coverage.

R5-2-2-3 The full content of the Chat Messages shall be delivered to the recipient irrespective of the messaging service that has been used (1-to-1 Chat or SMS).

R5-2-2-4 The A-Party user shall be able to differentiate Chat Messages from SMS messages the user has created.

R5-2-2-5 The B-Party user shall be able to differentiate incoming Chat Messages from incoming SMS messages.

NOTE: SMS messages are not subject to End-to-End Encryption (E2EE).

R5-2-3 If 1-to-1 Chat Messages cannot be instantly delivered by RCS, the terminating leg should invoke 'Network Fallback to SMS'.

NOTE: NFS does not influence the behaviour of legacy (joyn Blackbird or joyn Crane Priority Release) RCS clients but optimizes the Chat Message delivery whatever the originating client version.

R5-2-3-1 If the terminating leg indicates support of Network Fallback to SMS to the Universal Profile A-Party RCS client (or a later version), the A-Party user shall not be prompted to send a Chat Message as SMS (i.e. no CFS).

R5-2-3-2 If the sender's and recipient's RCS clients have enabled E2EE and the message could not be delivered as a Chat Message, the RCS Service Provider shall not apply NFS (see R5-3-3).

R5-2-3-3 NFS shall not be performed for Rich Text Messages.

R5-2-4 If 1-to-1 Chat Messages cannot be delivered by RCS within an MNO configurable period of time and the terminating network does not support NFS, the RCS client shall use the procedures of CFS to ensure Delivery Assurance.

R5-2-4-1 The procedures of CFS shall be used on any universal (or later version) RCS client only if the terminating leg has indicated the support for CFS.

R5-2-4-1-1 If the sender's and recipient's RCS clients have enabled E2EE, the RCS Service Provider shall indicate support for CFS.

R5-2-4-2 While typing, Capability Discovery may change the messaging service to be used from SMS to Chat.

R5-2-4-3 If delivery of a 1-to-1 Chat Message could not be confirmed after an MNO configurable period of time, the RCS client shall offer the option to send the message as SMS.

R5-2-4-4 The user shall have the option to automate the user interaction for CFS. The following options shall be selectable:

- Always ask
- Never ask and always send as SMS
- Never ask and never send as SMS

R5-2-4-4-1 The user shall have the option to see this selection or change this decision at any point in the RCS settings section.

R5-2-4-4-2 For Rich Text Messages, the RCS client shall prompt the sender with an option to review and edit the plain text version prior to sending the fallback SMS, even when the automated setting is configured to 'Never ask and always send as SMS'.

NOTE 1: Steps 3 (R5-2-4-5-3 below) to Step 4b (R5-2-4-5-5 below) are only presented to the user if the device is configured to "Always Ask" and would be automatically processed accordingly if the device is configured to "Never Ask and always send as SMS".

NOTE 2: The user selection to automatically send as SMS shall have no impact on MMS being used as a fallback for File Transfer.

R5-2-4-5 The following steps describe how and when the revocation and send as SMS procedure shall be applied:

NOTE: The following requirements apply for encrypted and unencrypted Chat Messages.

*R5-2-4-5-1* Step 1: User A has created a Chat Message and this message has been sent.

*R5-2-4-5-2* Step 2: Delivery for that Chat Message has not yet been confirmed within an MNO configurable period of time. If the A-Party device lost connectivity during this period, then Step 3 shall not occur until the A-Party device is connected again for an MNO configurable time, to allow update of message status notifications.

*R5-2-4-5-3* Step 3: The user shall be presented with a message “Your Chat message could not be delivered instantly, do you want to change to an SMS message?” and a confirmation request for the user to select (yes / no) shall be shown.

- If a delivery notification for the Chat Message is received before the user has selected their response (yes/no), the confirmation request shall be removed, and the original Chat Message shall be indicated as ‘delivered’ (or ‘displayed’, if applicable).

*R5-2-4-5-4* Step 4a: If the user selects “Yes”, then

- a revocation for the original Chat Message shall be triggered,
- the original Chat Message shall be removed from the conversation history once the revocation has been confirmed as successful, and
- an SMS message shall be sent and appear in the conversation history. This SMS will display content similar to the original Chat Message, the timestamp of the moment the user confirmed the sending by SMS and an indication of the sending service “SMS”

- Subsequent sent messages that are in ‘pending’ or ‘sent’ status shall be covered by the same user selection (same procedure applies), and latching as described in section R5-2-4-6 shall be applied.

Failure of one of these steps shall not mean that the other steps are not executed. This may lead to duplicated messages.

*R5-2-4-5-5* Step 4b: If the user selects “No”, a revocation of the original Chat Message shall not be triggered and an SMS shall not be sent. The Chat Message status shall be updated according to the delivery status. The suggested messaging service shall remain Chat. As long as the user stays within the conversation thread, they shall not be asked again.

*R5-2-4-6* SMS Latching: When sending a message to a known CFS contact, an RCS client shall by default propose to use 1-to-1 Chat. If during the last message exchange the RCS client had to fall back to SMS and there has been no indication since that the contact is RCS online again (e.g. capability exchange or use of another RCS service), SMS shall be used as the default messaging service. This means that once there has been a fallback to

SMS, subsequent messages shall continue to be sent as SMS until RCS availability is confirmed.

*R5-2-4-6-1* SMS shall also be used whenever the RCS client has already fallen back to 'SMS link' for File Transfer: subsequent messages shall continue to be sent as SMS until RCS availability is confirmed (e.g. capability exchange or use of another RCS service).

NOTE: The use of CFS for Chat and File Transfer is subject to users allowing it in user settings (see section 18).

*R5-2-5* Before sending a message, the A-Party messaging interface shall clearly display whether a message will be sent as SMS or Chat.

*R5-2-5-1* When opening the conversation or before entering the first character of a message, the RCS client logic shall propose the Messaging Service (either SMS or Chat) to be used for that message.

*R5-2-5-2* Before sending a message, the RCS client shall indicate to the user whether a message will be sent as SMS or 1-to-1 Chat.

*R5-2-5-3* The user shall be able to change the proposed messaging service on a per message and on a general basis.

NOTE 1: Details of changing the proposed messaging service on a general basis are specified in section US18-12.

NOTE 2: Changing the proposed messaging service on a per message basis shall be a "one click experience" on UI level.

*R5-2-5-4* A manual user selection of a Messaging Service during an active conversation shall be persistent until manually changed again either by the user or until the user navigates out of the conversation thread.

*R5-2-5-5* The creation of a new conversation shall trigger the automatic selection of the proposed Messaging Service.

*US5-3* **Variant 2 - Seamless Messaging: As a user, I want to send a message without having to select the underlying technology / service that is being used to convey my messages / file shares. I want the MNO to deliver the message the best possible way to the intended recipient(s).**

**As a user, I do not want my Messaging Application to show the Messaging Service being used when messages are displayed in my inbox unless the device is explicitly configured to do so during the device provisioning procedure.**

**As a user, I want to fully rely on my MNO to convey the Messaging Service to ensure quickest and most reliable message delivery.**

*R5-3-1* The RCS client can be configured to automatically send RCS messages when connected and registered for the RCS service.

*R5-3-2* By default, the RCS client will not show or visually indicate to the user the technology / service used to convey the message from / to the device. However, if explicitly configured during the device provisioning procedure, the RCS client

will show or indicate to the user the technology / service. For example, the user may find the messaging technology / service by recognizing annotation of each message or different colours of message bubbles in the conversation history, or by clicking every message to check the message's detailed information, etc.

R5-3-3 The MNO should interwork any RCS message sent from the RCS device (regardless of technology / service) to ensure the best possible message delivery to an intended recipient only if E2EE is disabled.

R5-3-3-1 If E2EE is enabled for the recipient, the MNO shall not interwork RCS messages.

R5-3-4 The Seamless Messaging composer shall select RCS as the Messaging and File Transfer Service when no network connection is available and not registered for RCS services. These messages shall be queued for delivery when the device is reconnected. The user shall be notified that these messages are queued for delivery.

R5-3-5 When the device is connected to cellular coverage but not registered to the RCS platform, the delivery mechanism from the Seamless Messaging App shall be SMS.

NOTE: All other RCS services will not be available.

R5-3-5-1 If the user selects other RCS services (non-text messaging) when in this mode, these messages will be queued for delivery until the device is reconnected. The user shall be notified that these messages are queued for delivery.

R5-3-6 When the device is connected to cellular coverage with data but not registered to the RCS platform, the sending mechanism from the Seamless Messaging App shall be xMS.

NOTE: Restrictions in file size and -type for MMS apply.

R5-3-7 When the device is registered for RCS services, the sending mechanism from the Seamless Messaging App shall be RCS.

NOTE: This shall also be valid for RCS messages/service to non-RCS enabled contacts.

R5-3-8 When the device is registered for RCS services and the sent RCS message times out due to a loss of IP connectivity, the RCS client/application may attempt to resend the RCS message in SMS mode without notifying the user or the RCS client/application may visually display a message sent error to the user.

Seamless Messaging - Selected Messaging Service					
User A - Sender	Connected to Cellular network	Yes	Yes	No	No
	Registered to RCS	Yes	No	Yes	No
User B - Recipient	Connected to Cellular network	n/a			
	Registered to RCS				
Selected service		RCS	xMS*	RCS	RCS*
* On-device caching of unsent RCS messages/files required, and the user shall be informed.					

**Table 5: Table to explain and summarise static conditions for Seamless Messaging**

**US5-4 As a user, I want to send Messages to my contacts.  
 As a user, I want to ensure that my RCS messages are only read by me and the intended recipient(s).**

NOTE: This document describes the Messaging Service functionality for contacts on-net or on an Interconnected RCS service. Other contacts may have less functionality available.

R5-4-1 Any RCS user shall be able to send a Message to Contacts in the contact list or by entering the contact’s MSISDN.

R5-4-2 The user shall have the option to send a message at any time by entering an existing chat conversation and continue.

NOTE: The 1-to-1 conversation has no visible end. Despite the way it is technically realised, to the user it will always appear as a conversation thread of messages to which they can reply at any time. The user may switch to other screens any time during or after a chat without affecting the messaging history or the option to resume the chat at a later time.

R5-4-3 The messaging service that is used to convey the messages is determined by either the rule set of Integrated Messaging or the rule set of Seamless Messaging.

R5-4-3-1 If E2EE is not enabled, the RCS Service Provider shall be free to choose either Integrated Messaging or Seamless Messaging.

NOTE: If E2EE is enabled, the RCS Service Provider cannot choose Seamless Messaging as the user needs to know the encryption status changes (see US5-45).

R5-4-3-2 In Integrated Messaging, the user can influence the proposed messaging service according to requirements under US18-12.

R5-4-4 The RCS client shall only send an encrypted message when the recipient’s RCS client has enabled E2EE.

**US5-5 As a user, I want to see the status of my sent Messages.**

R5-5-1 For A-Party, the following message states shall be supported:

R5-5-1-1 Message Pending: Transfer of the Message in progress (e.g. queuing on device).

- R5-5-1-2 Message Sent: confirmation that the message has been correctly accepted by the A-Party's network.
- R5-5-1-3 Message Delivered: Confirmation that the message has been successfully delivered to the B-Party device.
- R5-5-1-3-1* For legacy SMS messages sent from a device, Delivery Notifications may be supported upon user choice or network default configuration.
- R5-5-1-3-2* For Integrated Messaging: If a message was delivered applying NFS, the A-Party RCS client shall be able to differentiate between a message that was terminated as Chat and a message that was terminated as SMS. For example, the user shall be able to understand whether to expect a Delivery Notification.
- R5-5-1-4 Message Displayed: When the message has been displayed in the Messaging conversation thread on the receiving device
- R5-5-1-4-1* As per US18-7 and the related requirements, the user shall have the option to disable sending the feedback that the message was displayed.
- NOTE: Message Displayed status may not be supported by all networks. Incoming "displayed" notifications may be ignored by these networks and not forwarded to the user.
- R5-5-1-4-2* For legacy SMS messages sent from a device, appropriate means shall be used to inform the user that "Message Displayed" is not available (e.g. by greying out Display Notification as soon as the Delivery Notification is displayed).
- R5-5-1-4-3* For Integrated Messaging: If a message was delivered applying NFS, the A-Party RCS client shall be able to differentiate between a message that was terminated as Chat and a message that was terminated as SMS. For example, the user shall be able to understand whether to expect a Display Notification.
- R5-5-1-5 Message sending failed: The expected outcome of the operation could not be confirmed by the network (in this case: Message 'Sent', 'Delivered' or 'Displayed' status has not been received) and the device does not attempt to send the message again. (Sending the message may be re-triggered manually by the user).
- R5-5-2 If the sending device is offline at the time a message status is received, message state shall be updated once the sending device is online again.
- R5-5-3 Aggregation of 'Display' Sent Message States may be done: if it was confirmed the last message has been displayed, then all previously confirmed 'delivered' messages and files can be assumed displayed as well and the status may be aggregated in the last known 'displayed' status.
- R5-5-4 The 'failed' Message Status shall never be aggregated but presented separately to the user.

- R5-5-5 Message states only apply to messages to recipients that do not blacklist the sender. In case the sender is blacklisted, the valid sending message states shall be “pending”, “sent”, “failed” and “delivered”.
- R5-5-6 If the sender’s and recipient’s RCS clients have enabled E2EE, the RCS client shall ensure that Message States cannot be modified.
- R5-5-7 If a Push Notification Mechanism is used, the A-Party RCS client shall present the Message ‘Delivered’ and ‘Displayed’ status to the user only upon actual retrieval of these Message statuses from the RCS Service Provider.
- R5-5-7-1 The requirements R2-3-1 to R2-3-4 shall be applicable for the Push Notification.

**US5-6 As a user, I want to include small graphics into my Messages.**

NOTE: Small graphics can express mood, fun or icons to explain a thing or a status in a graphical, easy to use and understandable manner. Examples are ☺, 📞, 🌟 and 🌙.

R5-6-1 It shall be possible to add small graphics when creating a message by adding from a selection of graphical elements in the messaging application.

NOTE: Standards for conversion of text strings to Emoji are described in Annex “Emoticon conversion table”, Annex A.2.

R5-6-2 It shall be possible to add a few basic small graphics when creating a message by typing in the respective text string, separated by blank spaces (e.g. “;-)” converts to ☺) or typing in the respective text string without blank spaces if the string is the only characters of the message content.

R5-6-3 The graphical elements that are used may vary between implementations, but the conveyed meaning must not be changed.

R5-6-4 Small graphics shall be displayed properly in any representation of the messages on the user interface, which includes the conversation thread as well as any notifications or previews of messages in pop-ups or dedicated screens.

**US5-7 As a user, I want to see when the other party is currently writing a Message.**

R5-7-1 The other party shall be able to see an “is typing” notification whenever the creator of a message is typing.

NOTE: Networks may not support “is typing” notification. In this case, networks may ignore incoming “is typing” notifications.

R5-7-2 The RCS client shall not encrypt “is typing” notifications.

**US5-8 As a user, I want to ensure that my messages reach their destination as reliably and quickly as possible.**

**As a user, I want to send text Messages to my contacts even when they are temporarily offline (e.g. device switched off). I expect them to receive these Messages as soon as they can be terminated.**

- R5-8-1 The MNO shall ensure all 1-to-1 messages and related messaging services originating from a device shall be conveyed in a manner that will ensure the quickest delivery to the recipient.
- R5-8-1-1 Store and Forward shall be available and provided by every RCS Service Provider to host messages for its RCS users on the terminating leg when these users are offline.
- R5-8-2 It shall be possible to send a message to a B-Party user when they are offline.
- NOTE: If the B party receives the message using another service before re-registering to RCS, then the B-party shall not be notified of the message – this avoids message duplication.
- US5-9 As a user, I want to receive text Messages from my contacts. As a user, I want to see all messages and files exchanged with a contact in a single threaded view.**
- As a user, I want a single environment for creating and viewing my messages, covering a multitude of different services. By having this convenience, I do not have to change apps to carry out similar messaging tasks.**
- As a user, I want to read encrypted RCS Messages that are intended for me.**
- R5-9-1 Any RCS user shall be able to receive message(s) that are sent to them.
- R5-9-2 Any message exchanged in the Chat Conversation shall be received without any form of acceptance of the message.
- NOTE: MMS may be restricted by user settings.
- R5-9-3 The user shall see any Messages and File Transfer events exchanged with a single contact grouped into one conversation thread.
- R5-9-3-1 Any application allowed to manage (read, write, view) xMS on a device shall also be allowed to manage (read, write, view) RCS messages. Any application allowed to manage (read, write, view) RCS on a device shall also be allowed to manage (read, write, view) xMS messages.
- R5-9-3-2 Any application selected by the user as the default messaging application shall manage xMS and RCS messages (incl. File Transfer).
- R5-9-4 If messages are received that exceed the number of characters that the application is able to display properly, the application shall cut off characters that cannot be displayed properly and inform the user about the fact that only a part of the message can be displayed.
- R5-9-5 The RCS client shall provide the ability for the user to distinguish encrypted and unencrypted messages.
- R5-9-6 Only the RCS client(s) of the intended recipient(s) of an encrypted message shall be able to decrypt it.
- R5-9-6-1 The recipient's RCS client shall not require any action from the user.
- R5-9-7 If the RCS client receives an encrypted message it cannot decrypt, the RCS client shall inform the user that there was a problem.

R5-9-7-1 The RCS client may ask the user to take an action (e.g. to update the RCS client) to support E2EE.

R5-9-7-2 The sender's RCS client shall not present the "Message Delivered" Message status to the user.

R5-9-8 If the sender's RCS client receives a Delivery Notification signifying a decryption error (for example, a specific error code or plaintext delivery), it shall treat the event as a change in conversation's encryption status (see R5-45-1).

**US5-10 As a user, I want to be notified at any time my device receives a new Message. I want notifications of rapidly sequenced incoming Messages intelligibly aggregated and counted.**

R5-10-1 On receiving a message, the user shall be made aware with a New Incoming Event Notification if the user is not in the conversation in which the incoming event is received with the active device window.

R5-10-2 Rapid sequence of incoming Messages or File Transfers in one Conversation shall be consolidated into one audible New Incoming Event Notification per Conversation. Consolidation of visual notifications is not affected.

R5-10-3 The visual New Incoming Event Notification shall be permanently removed after the user has opened the message or seen the file download (link).

R5-10-4 If a Push Notification Mechanism is used, the RCS client shall retrieve the new Message from the RCS Service Provider before notifying the user with a New Incoming Event Notification as per R5-10-1.

R5-10-4-1 The requirements R2-3-1 to R2-3-4 shall be applicable for the Push Notification.

**US5-11 As a user, I want audible New Incoming Event Notification in line with device settings.**

R5-11-1 For audio New Incoming Event notifications, device audio related settings shall prevail.

**US5-12 As a user, I want to view my sent and received Messages and MIVC Call Logs in a time-based order.**

R5-12-1 All messages exchanged 1-to-1 with the same contact shall be threaded in the same conversation thread in a timely order.

NOTE: Where a contact has multiple telephone numbers, then a conversation thread should be created for each telephone number. The conversation thread name should clearly show which identity is in use (e.g. work, home and so on).

R5-12-2 The order of messages shall be in line with the order messages have been sent and received on the device.

R5-12-3 Incoming and outgoing messages shall be displayed interlaced.

R5-12-4 Sent messages shall be inserted into the conversation thread as they have been sent.

R5-12-5 MIVC Call Logs shall be inserted in the conversation thread based on the timestamp of the Messaging Initiated Video Call (MIVC) initiation.

R5-12-5-1 Any messages received in the 1-to-1 Conversation during an MIVC shall be inserted based on the timestamp when the message was received, and not the MIVC timestamp.

**US5-13 As a user, I want to see the timestamp associated with each of my sent and received messages and MIVCs.**

R5-13-1 The date and time associated with each Chat Message and MIVC shall be displayed adjusted to the current device date and time.

R5-13-1-1 This timestamp shall be generated for sent messages and MIVCs by the device in a consistent way as timestamps are generated for other device functions, e.g. SMS.

R5-13-1-2 Timestamps for received messages and MIVCs shall be based on the UTC timestamp that comes with each message, aligned with the selected device time zone.

**US5-14 As a user, I want conversations that contain unread messages and missed MIVCs to be differentiated from conversations that contain messages I have seen.**

NOTE: Unseen files or file download links or thumbnails cover events that use File Transfer as an enabler e.g. but not limited to Audio Messaging or vCard share.

R5-14-1 Conversations with unread messages or unseen files or file download links or thumbnails or missed MIVCs shall be marked accordingly, e.g. by display of subject line in bold font and / or an unread message counter.

R5-14-2 The visual notification shall be permanently removed after the user has opened the message or seen the missed MIVC Call Log

**US5-15 As a user, I want to know who is participating in Chat Conversation at any point in time.**

R5-15-1 If the sender of a message is not in the user's contact list, the sender's RCS Alias name, if available, shall be presented in addition to the sender's MSISDN. Representation of Alias names shall be differentiated from contact list matches. The support of RCS Alias shall be RCS Service Provider configurable.

NOTE: For security reasons, the use of Alias in 1-to-1 Chat has been limited to 'display' (if an Alias is provided to the handset, it shall be displayed to the user) but not 'create' (handsets shall only offer to set an Alias for Group Chat, but not 1-to-1 Chat). In a future version, this limitation might be removed in conjunction with the introduction of additional security features, e.g. an "Alias Blacklist for 1-to-1 Chat".

R5-15-2 If neither contact name nor the RCS Alias are available, the B-Party shall be represented by their MSISDN.

R5-15-3 If the RCS clients have enabled E2EE, the RCS Alias shall be encrypted.

**US5-16 As a user, I do not want to feel restricted by message size limits.**

R5-16-1 Messages (incoming and outgoing) shall allow for up to 8192 bytes length.

NOTE: RCS Service Provider defined parameter.

**US5-17 As a user, I want to exchange multi-media content in my Conversations (e.g., but not limited to: take an instant picture from camera and send from within the chat).**

NOTE: Details on multi-media content share are covered in 'File Transfer', section 7.

R5-17-1 The user shall be able to select and send media elements in Conversations.

R5-17-2 The user shall be able to receive Multi Media in Conversations.

R5-17-3 The user shall be able to browse any media that was exchanged in the particular 1-to-1 Conversation in an aggregated view.

**US5-18 As a user, I want to maintain multiple conversations in parallel.**

R5-18-1 Multiple parallel conversations (with different recipients) and Group Chat conversations shall be supported at any given point in time.

**US5-19 As a user, I want my messages backed up in a trusted and safe environment.**

R5-19-1 The RCS Service Provider shall be able to store 1-to-1 Messaging conversations.

NOTE: Details of that storage are at the individual RCS Service Provider discretion.

R5-19-2 The RCS Service Provider shall be able to determine the storage duration for messages based on individual parameters.

R5-19-3 In case the RCS Service Provider deletes stored messages (e.g. for capacity limitation), these messages shall not be deleted from local user equipment.

**US5-20 As a user, I want to restore my 1-to-1 Messaging conversations (e.g., but not limited to, after wiping the device or purchasing a new device).**

R5-20-1 The user shall have the option to restore 1-to-1 Messaging conversations (e.g., but not limited to, in case of handset replacement or automated local memory removal of messages on device to free up memory space).

R5-20-2 An RCS client that has enabled E2EE shall not back up encrypted messages with the RCS Service Provider.

NOTE: The RCS client might have an RCS client-specific implementation for backup and restore.

NOTE: This requirement applies to this version of the Universal Profile. Future specifications are expected to include more extended support.

**US5-21 As a user, I want to delete complete conversations.**

**As a user, I want to select and delete single and multiple nonadjacent messages in a conversation thread.**

R5-21-1 Any messages or entire conversations that have been deleted by the user shall no longer be available via the RCS Service Provider.

**US5-22 As a user, I want to switch to a voice or video call during a Messaging conversation - and return to the Messaging conversation when the call is finished.**

NOTE: During the Voice or Video Call, the user may make use of the 1-to-1 Messaging application.

R5-22-1 The user shall be able to receive a voice call when actively engaged in a conversation and return to the Messaging conversation when the voice call was ended.

R5-22-2 The user shall be able to receive a video call when actively engaged in a 1-to-1 Messaging conversation or Group Chat Conversation and return to the conversation when the video call ends.

**US5-23 As a user, I want the ability to share my current position or a selected location with any of my contacts (RCS contacts or legacy non-RCS contacts) from the 1-to-1 Messaging application.**

NOTE 1: Pre-requisite: The Geolocation Push service relies on a map function on the sending device that supports the RCS functionalities.

NOTE 2: Pre-requisite: There is no intention to build positioning or map functions within the RCS specification.

R5-23-1 The 1-to-1 Messaging conversation shall be a service entry point to initiate a Geolocation Push.

R5-23-2 There may be other service entry points available on the device to initiate a Geolocation Push (e.g. Contact Card, call log).

R5-23-3 The Geolocation Push Service shall offer a 'legacy mode' to send positions or locations to non-RCS recipients or recipients with RCS implementations that do not support Geolocation Push.

NOTE: Legacy mode may be provided by a link to an online map display or a 'screenshot' with map picture.

R5-23-4 For Geolocation Push, the rules of Delivery Assurance as described in this section shall apply if the MNO supports Integrated Messaging.

R5-23-5 If Geolocation Push is delivered using SMS, the recipient's device shall be able to detect that it is a Geolocation Push and display that event as an icon.

R5-23-5-1 The icon shall make visible to the user that they received a location.

R5-23-5-2 If the user selects the icon, the service shall be performed as if the Geolocation Push would have been transferred as a RCS message.

**US5-24 As a user, I want to view an automatically detected position on map and have the ability to change this manually before sending.**

R5-24-1 If the current position is to be sent, the location shall be automatically detected and suggested to the end user.

R5-24-2 The user shall have the option to preview and correct the automatically detected position on a map view before sending.

R5-24-3 The Geolocation Push service shall support sending of a location from other applications (e.g. mapping apps).

**US5-25 As a user, I want to tag positions or locations with a text field.**

R5-25-1 The user shall have the option to tag a position or location with a free text field before sending.

**US5-26 As a user, I want to receive positions / locations in a map view.**

NOTE: These functions are not provided by the RCS implementation.

R5-26-1 When receiving a position or location, the RCS Geolocation Push user shall have the ability to see the position / location on a map.

R5-26-2 When receiving a position or location, the RCS Geolocation Push user shall be able to see any tags that were added by the sender.

**US5-27 As a user, I want to send many 1-to-1 messages and files by selecting multiple recipients.**

R5-27-1 The RCS client shall make clear to the user the differences between multiple 1-to-1 message and a Group Chat.

R5-27-2 The user shall be able to create a distribution list for multiple 1-to-1 messages.

R5-27-2-1 The distribution list shall be available as a service entry point for multiple 1-to-1 messages.

R5-27-3 The user shall be able to create multiple 1-to-1 messages by selecting 1-to-1 messaging and add more than one participant as recipients.

R5-27-3-1 A distribution list shall be created in this case.

R5-27-3-2 The distribution list of a multiple 1-to-1 message shall be stored on the device and be accessible for the user after sending the message, e.g. for sending another message or file instantly or later.

R5-27-3-3 The user shall be able to manage distribution lists for multiple 1-to-1 messages: Name distribution list (e.g. football team), add and remove recipients, or delete an entire distribution list.

R5-27-4 All messages and files that are sent to a distribution list are treated on the originating and terminating devices similar to explicit 1-to-1 messages or file transfers.

R5-27-5 Recipients of messages sent to a distribution list are not aware of the other recipients who are on the list and receive similar messages.

**US5-28 As an RCS Service Provider, I would like to control the use of multiple 1-to-1 messages.**

R5-28-1 To prevent Spam distribution, the RCS Service Provider shall be able to limit the list of recipients.

R5-28-2 The RCS Service Provider shall be able to determine the messaging service(s) that are used to convey multiple 1-to-1 message distribution.

R5-28-2-1 The rules of Seamless Messaging and Integrated Messaging shall apply if RCS is used to deliver messages.

**US5-29 As a user, I would like to easily and quickly find messages in 1-to-1 conversations that are important to me.**

R5-29-1 The user shall be able to select and flag messages as important.

R5-29-2 The user shall be able to deselect messages that have been flagged as important before.

R5-29-3 The information which messages are flagged as “important” is only visible to the user on the local device and is not visible to the user’s communication partners.

R5-29-4 Upon user request, only flagged events shall be displayed.

R5-29-4-1 When the user selects the feature “show important messages only” from within a conversation, only events (e.g., but not limited to, messages, files, audio messages, Rich Cards and Carousels) that have been flagged as “important” by the user are represented. The UI shall differentiate the “important” view from a “standard” view so the user is clear at all times what is on display.

R5-29-4-2 When the user selects the feature “show important messages only” from the list of conversations, all messages flagged as “important” shall be displayed, with the newest event on top of the list and descending.

R5-29-4-3 The user shall be able to flag communication events as important in MaaP conversations as well as in P2P (Chat and Group Chat) conversations.

R5-29-4-4 The feature “show important messages only” shall be available in MaaP and in P2P conversations.

R5-29-5 Important flags shall be shared across all user’s devices in a Multi Device Scenario.

R5-29-6 When the UI implementation shows a confirmation prompt whenever the user tries to delete messages or conversations, and if the user tries to delete a

message that is flagged as important or a conversation that contains messages that are flagged as important, the user confirmation prompt shall display to the user of the fact that the message is flagged as important or the conversation contains messages which are flagged as important.

- R5-29-7 The requirements as specified in R5-29-1 to R5-29-6 shall be applicable for all events within a Messaging conversation, including, but not limited to, messages, file transfers, audio messages, geolocations and events as a result of Enriched Calling features.

**US5-30 As a user, I would like to easily and quickly find 1-to-1 Conversations that are important to me.**

- R5-30-1 The user shall be able to select a conversation to pin it to the top of the list of conversations.

- R5-30-1-1 The user shall be able to undo the action of pinning a conversation to the top of the list of conversations.

- R5-30-2 The UI should ensure that many conversations pinned to top should not hide other conversations with potentially unseen messages from display of first page of the list of conversations (e.g. by limit to maximum, carousel, etc.).

- R5-30-3 Activities within a conversation that have been pinned to top shall change the order of these conversations. The conversation with the latest activity shall be on top (or position number 1 e.g. in case of a carousel).

- R5-30-3-1 Activities that have an impact on the order of conversations pinned to top shall be identical to activities that have an impact on the order of conversations that have not been pinned to top (e.g., but not limited to, an incoming new message or a message sent by the user from that conversation).

- R5-30-4 In a Multi device scenario, pinning a conversation to the top of the list of conversations shall have the same impact on any of the user's interfaces.

**US5-31 As a user, I want to be able to report suspicious conversations.**

- R5-31-1 A user shall have the option to report any conversation as suspicious to the RCS Service Provider.

- R5-31-2 A user shall be able to report and categorize a suspicious conversation as "Spam", "Fraud", "Inappropriate Content" or "Other".

- R5-31-3 Upon initiating reporting, the RCS client shall provide the user a clear description of what data is collected, where it is sent and how it is used (at a high level). The user shall have the option to accept or reject submitting the report.

- R5-31-4 When reporting, the RCS client should provide the sender's telephone number to the RCS Service Provider.

- R5-31-5 When reporting, the user shall have the option to also block future messages from the sender's telephone number.

R5-31-5-1 All requirements under US18-15 shall be applicable for the blocked contact.

R5-31-6 When reporting, the RCS client shall provide the user a text field to explain the reason of the report.

R5-31-7 When reporting, the user shall have the option to also include the contents of recent messages.

R5-31-8 A user shall be able to see conversations reported as suspicious on the RCS client.

NOTE: Subject to applicable regulations, the RCS Service Provider is recommended to share received reports (or aggregate information from received reports) with appropriate parties (e.g. GSMA's T-ISAC, in country centralised reporting, other MNOs who might be subject to the same threats, etc.) and for those parties to share such information with RCS Service Providers. The means to do such sharing are not related to the RCS implementation and thus out of scope of this specification.

**US5-32 As an RCS Service Provider, I would like to protect my users from suspicious messages.**

R5-32-1 The RCS Service Provider may block messages in the network confirmed to be suspicious.

R5-32-2 For messages that an RCS Service Provider does not want to block in the network, they should provide a Suspicion Indicator to their user's RCS clients to indicate if a message or conversation is suspicious.

R5-32-3 An RCS Service Provider shall be able to enable or disable their user's reporting of suspicious conversations via the RCS client.

**US5-33 As a user, I want to avoid suspicious messages in my inbox.**

R5-33-1 An RCS client shall provide a Spam Folder visible to the user.

R5-33-2 An RCS client shall inform users of the existence of the Spam Folder and messages or conversations can be moved automatically to the Spam Folder.

R5-33-3 Upon receiving the Suspicion Indicator from the RCS Service Provider, the RCS client shall either automatically move the suspicious message or conversation to the Spam Folder or provide the user with visual information that the message or conversation is suspicious. If providing visual information, the RCS client shall allow the user the option to move message or conversation to the Spam Folder.

R5-33-4 A user shall be able to move messages or conversations out of the Spam Folder.

R5-33-5 An RCS client having E2EE enabled shall implement techniques to detect suspicious messages or conversations. An RCS client shall provide means to detect at least for the following types of suspicious messages or conversations:

R5-33-5-1 "Spam" Messages

R5-33-5-2 Fraud attempts targeting the user (e.g. phishing/smishing attempts or business messages sent in a person-to-person conversation)

R5-33-5-3 “Inappropriate content

NOTE: The implementation details are left to the RCS client.

NOTE: If E2EE is enabled for the conversation, RCS Message content cannot be checked for “Spam” (or “Fraud”, or “Inappropriate Content”) on the RCS Service Provider, so it is important to check them on the RCS client to protect users.

NOTE: Subject to applicable regulations, RCS client providers are recommended to share information or aggregate information on detected suspicious messages and conversations with appropriate parties (e.g. GSMA’s T-ISAC, in country centralised reporting, MNOs who might be contacted by their subscribers, etc.) and for those parties to share such information with RCS client providers. The means to do such sharing are not related to the RCS implementation and thus out of scope of this specification.

R5-33-6 An RCS client having E2EE enabled shall inform users of any suspicious messages or conversations that it detected.

**US5-34 As a user, I want to be able to send a Reply Message to any of my sent or received messages.**

R5-34-1 The RCS client shall be capable of selecting a message to send a Reply Message to, in Chat conversations.

R5-34-2 The RCS client shall be capable of sending a Reply Message to a message that was sent or received.

R5-34-3 The RCS client shall be capable of sending a Reply Message to a Reply Message that was sent or received.

R5-34-4 The RCS client shall be capable of sharing exactly one Reply Message at a time.

R5-34-5 The RCS client shall be capable of sharing all RCS supported multi-media content, including Emojis/Emoticons, as a Reply Message.

R5-34-6 The Reply Message shall be displayed along with the associated messages and is left to the RCS client implementation.

R5-34-7 The RCS client shall display the Reply Message with a duplicated copy of its associated message.

NOTE: As an example, the duplicated associated message with delimiters precedes the Reply Message (see Figure 3).

R5-34-7-1 If the associated message is not text (e.g., image, video, audio, geolocation, etc.), the requirements of File Transfer Auto-Accept, i.e., the requirements related to the thumbnail preview, as per section 7 shall apply.

- R5-34-7-2 If the associated message no longer exists, i.e., it has been deleted after the Reply Message has been sent, the Reply Message shall be displayed with an indication of the associated message, which is left to the RCS client implementation.
- R5-34-7-3 If the user selects the duplicated associated message (whether it exists or not), the RCS client shall navigate up to the position in the conversation thread where the original or deleted message placeholder resides, allowing the content in its entirety to be accessible for view/playback.
- R5-34-7-4 If the associated message is a Rich Text Message, the duplicated copy shall retain its Rich Text Formatting.



**Figure 3: UX example for replying to a message and A-party UI examples for Reply Message, framed in orange**

- R5-34-8 The RCS client shall display a Reply Message to a Reply Message with a duplicated copy of its associated Reply Message.

NOTE: As an example, the duplicated associated Reply Message with delimiters precedes the Reply Message.

- R5-34-8-1 If the associated Reply Message is not text (e.g., image, video, audio, geolocation, etc.), the requirements of File Transfer Auto-Accept, i.e. the requirements related to the thumbnail preview, as per section 7, shall apply.
- R5-34-8-2 If the associated Reply Message no longer exists, i.e., it has been deleted after the Reply Message has been sent, the Reply Message shall be displayed with an indication of the associated Reply Message, which is left to the RCS client implementation.
- R5-34-8-3 If the user selects the duplicated associated Reply Message (whether it exists or not), the RCS client shall navigate up to the position in the conversation thread where the original or deleted Reply Message placeholder resides, allowing the content in its entirety to be accessible for view/playback.

**US5-35 As a user, I want to be able to receive a Reply Message.**

R5-35-1 The Reply Message shall display with a duplicated copy of its associated message.

NOTE: As an example, the duplicated associated message with delimiters precedes the Reply Message.

R5-35-1-1 If the associated message is not text (e.g., image, video, audio, geolocation, etc.), the requirements of File Transfer Auto-Accept, i.e. the requirements related to the thumbnail preview, as per section 7, shall apply.

R5-35-1-2 If the associated message no longer exists, i.e., it has been deleted, the Reply Message shall be displayed with an indication of the associated message, which is left to the RCS client implementation.

R5-35-1-3 If the user selects the duplicated associated message (whether it exists or not), the RCS client shall navigate up to the position in the conversation thread where the original or deleted message placeholder resides, allowing the content in its entirety to be accessible for view/playback.

R5-35-1-4 If the associated message is a Rich Text Message, the duplicated copy shall retain its Rich Text Formatting.

R5-35-2 The Reply Message to a Reply Message shall be displayed with a duplicated copy of its associated original Reply Message.

NOTE: As an example, the duplicated associated Reply Message with delimiters precedes the Reply Message.

R5-35-2-1 If the associated Reply Message is not text (e.g., image, video, audio, geolocation, etc.), the requirements of File Transfer Auto-Accept, i.e. the requirements related to the thumbnail preview, as per section 7 shall apply.

R5-35-2-2 If the associated Reply Message no longer exists, i.e., it has been deleted, the Reply Message shall be displayed with an indication of the associated Reply Message, which is left to the RCS client implementation.

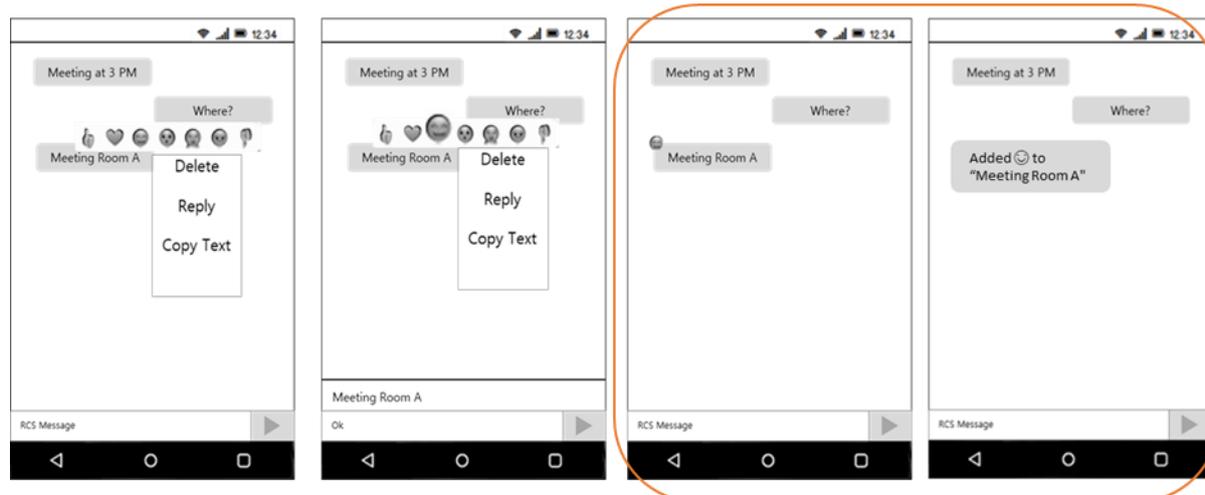
R5-35-2-3 If the user selects the duplicated associated Reply Message (whether it exists or not), the RCS client shall navigate up to the position in the conversation thread where the original or deleted Reply Message placeholder resides, allowing the content in its entirety to be accessible for view/playback.

R5-35-3 If Reply Messages are not supported, the Reply Message should be displayed as a normal Chat Message and with an indication of reply to the associated message, which is left to the RCS client implementation.

**US5-36 As a user, I want to be able to send a Reaction or multiple Reactions to any of my sent or received messages.**

R5-36-1 The RCS client shall be capable of selecting a message to send a Reaction to, in Chat conversations.

- R5-36-2 The RCS client shall be capable of sending a Reaction or multiple Reactions to a message that was sent or received, for as many times as they desire.
- R5-36-2-1 An RCS client shall only offer Multiple Reactions to the user if the Multiple Reactions feature is supported by the recipient.
- R5-36-3 The RCS client shall be capable of sending a Reaction to a Reply Message that was sent or received, for as many times as they desire.
- R5-36-3-1 The RCS client shall only be capable of sending Multiple Reactions to a Reply message that was sent or received, for as many times as they desire, if the Multiple Reactions feature is supported by the recipient.
- R5-36-4 The RCS client shall be capable of sharing one Reaction or multiple Reactions at a time.
- R5-36-5 The RCS client shall be capable of sharing all RCS supported Emojis/Emoticons as a Reaction.
- R5-36-6 The Reaction or Multiple Reactions shall be displayed along with the associated messages and is left to the RCS client implementation.
- R5-36-7 The RCS client shall display the Reaction assigned to its associated message.
- NOTE: As an example, the associated message has the Reaction (Emoji/Emoticon) assigned and displayed in-situ (see Figure 4).
- R5-36-8 The RCS client shall allow the user to replace their previously assigned Reaction to a message with another Reaction, for as many times as they desire.
- R5-36-9 The RCS client shall allow the user to remove their previously assigned Reaction to a message.
- R5-36-10 The assignment, replacement or removal of a Reaction shall not require any message status notification, e.g. Delivery Notification, Display Notification.
- R5-36-11 The RCS client shall support sending any image as a Reaction.
- R5-36-11-1 Requirements R7-7-1, R7-7-2 and R7-1-5 shall apply for images sent as Reactions.



**Figure 4: UX example for selecting and sending a Reaction to a message and UI examples for Reaction, framed in orange**

**US5-37 As a user, I want to be able to receive a Reaction or Multiple Reactions.**

R5-37-1 The assigned Reaction or multiple Reactions shall be displayed on the associated message.

R5-37-1-1 The assigned Multiple Reactions shall be displayed on the associated message.

R5-37-2 The RCS client shall remove a previously assigned Reaction when the assigned Reaction is removed by the sender.

R5-37-3 The Reactions shall support message status notification per individual Reaction (sender side) as per US5-10 and the supporting requirements.

R5-37-4 If Reactions are not supported, the Reaction should be displayed as a normal Chat Message and with an indication of Reaction to the associated message, which is left to the RCS client implementation.

R5-37-5 The RCS client shall allow users to download and view images sent as a Reaction.

**US5-38 As a user, I want to be able to recall an RCS Message that I have sent.**

R5-38-1 The RCS client shall allow the user to select an already sent message and recall the selected message.

R5-38-2 Recall Message shall be available on the sender's RCS client only within the Recall Time Interval.

NOTE: The Recall Time Interval is left to RCS client implementation. A recommended value is 30 seconds.

R5-38-3 The Recall Time Interval shall start when the RCS Message is sent by user.

R5-38-4 The sender's RCS client shall remove the recalled message and shall show a Recall Message Indication for the RCS Message that was recalled.

**US5-39 As a user, I want to know that a message has been recalled.**

R5-39-1 If the message to be recalled does not exist, the recipient's RCS client shall ignore the Recall Message request.

NOTE: In the event the RCS client is based on an older Universal Profile version and does not support message recalls, the message could not be recalled on the recipient's device.

R5-39-2 If the message to be recalled exists, the recipient's RCS client shall remove the recalled message and shall not provide a history of the recalled message.

R5-39-3 The RCS client shall show a Recall Message Indication for the message that was recalled.

R5-39-4 If there is a New Incoming Event Notification for the original message that the recipient user has not dismissed when that message is recalled by the sender, the New Incoming Event Notification should be removed.

**US5-40 As a user, I want to edit an RCS Message that I have sent.**

R5-40-1 The RCS client shall allow the user to select an already sent message and to send an edited message to replace the selected message.

R5-40-2 Edit Message shall be available on the sender's RCS client only within the Edit Time Interval.

NOTE: The Edit Time Interval is left to RCS client implementation. A recommended value is 15 minutes from the first sent message.

R5-40-3 The RCS client shall not limit the number of times that a message may be edited within the Edit Time Interval.

R5-40-4 The sender's RCS client shall show an Edit Message Indication to indicate that a message has been edited.

R5-40-5 The RCS client should allow the sender to see the original message and all instances of the edited message.

NOTE: Depending on regulations, this could be mandatory. The implementation is left up to the RCS client.

R5-40-6 The RCS client shall handle the case when recipient does not support edited message feature.

**US5-41 As a user, I want to receive an RCS Message that has been edited.**

R5-41-1 If the sender has edited a message, the recipient's RCS client shall replace the original message with the received edited message and show an Edit Message Indication that a message has been edited.

NOTE: In the event the RCS client is based on an older Universal Profile version and does not support message edits, the message could not be edited on the recipient's device.

R5-41-2 The RCS client shall not generate a New Incoming Event Notification for the edited message.

R5-41-3 The client should allow the recipient to see the original message and all instances of the edited message.

NOTE: Depending on regulations, this could be mandatory. The implementation is left up to the RCS client.

R5-41-4 The RCS client shall update the timestamp to indicate when the last edited message was received.

R5-41-5 If the message to be edited no longer exists, the edited message shall be displayed with an Edit Message Indication.

**US5-42 As a user, I want to select and delete single or multiple RCS Messages that I have sent, from my device and the recipient's device.**

R5-42-1 The RCS client shall allow the user to select one or more RCS Messages that they have already sent and to delete them for the user themselves and for the recipient.

R5-42-2 The availability of deleting from the sender and recipient's device may only be visible on the sender's RCS client when the Recall Time Interval has expired.

R5-42-3 The RCS client should provide the user with a confirmation of intent to delete the RCS Message.

R5-42-4 The sender's RCS client shall show Delete Message Indication for the deleted RCS Message.

R5-42-5 The RCS client should allow the user to see the history of the deleted RCS Message.

NOTE: Depending on regulations, this could be mandatory. The implementation is left up to the RCS client.

**US5-43 As a user, I want to see when an RCS Message I received that has been deleted.**

R5-43-1 If the sender has deleted an RCS message for themselves and the recipient, the recipient's RCS client shall remove the deleted message and show a Delete Message Indication instead.

NOTE: In the event the RCS client is based on an older Universal Profile version and does not support message deletion, the message might not be deleted on the recipient's device.

R5-43-2 If the RCS Message to be deleted does not exist on the recipient device, the recipient's RCS client shall not show any Delete Message Indication for the deleted RCS Message.

R5-43-3 In the event the user has not dismissed a New Incoming Event Notification for the original RCS Message and the RCS Message was deleted by the sender, the New Incoming Event Notification shall be removed.

R5-43-4 The RCS client shall not generate a New Incoming Event Notification for the deletion of the RCS Message.

R5-43-5 The RCS client should allow the user to see the history of the deleted RCS Message.

NOTE: Depending on regulations, this could be mandatory. This is left up to the RCS client implementation.

**US5-44 As a user, I want to ensure that my RCS message is only read by me and the intended recipient(s).**

R5-44-1 RCS clients shall enable E2EE by default unless expressly prohibited by local regulations.

R5-44-1-1 The RCS client provider shall enable or disable E2EE for all their users in a market of operation.

R5-44-1-2 The RCS client provider shall not enable or disable E2EE for a subset of users, or for individual users in a market of operation.

R5-44-1-3 If E2EE is disabled, the user shall be informed that E2EE is not available in their market of operation.

R5-44-2 All User Initiated Content shall be end-to-end encrypted, excluding "Is Typing" Notifications

**US5-45 As a user, I want to know when the encryption status of my RCS conversation changes.**

R5-45-1 When the user is composing a Chat Message, if the last Chat Message in the conversation was encrypted and the RCS client discovers that the recipient's RCS client has not enabled E2EE, the RCS client shall inform the user, prior to sending, that the Chat Message to be sent will not be encrypted.

R5-45-1-1 The RCS client shall provide the user a choice to proceed or not (based on the settings described in US18-19).

R5-45-2 When the user is composing a Chat Message, if the last Chat Message in the conversation was unencrypted and the RCS client discovers that the recipient's RCS client has enabled E2EE, the RCS client shall inform the user, prior to sending, that the Chat Message to be sent will be encrypted.

NOTE: No action by the RCS client is required if the encryption status of the last message in the conversation is the same as the encryption status of the message to be sent.

R5-45-3 If the last message in the conversation was unencrypted and the RCS client receives an encrypted message, the RCS client shall inform the user that the conversation is encrypted, upon displaying the message.

R5-45-4 If the last message in the conversation was encrypted and the RCS client receives an unencrypted message, the RCS client shall inform the user that the conversation is unencrypted, upon displaying the message.

**US5-46 As a user, I want to compose and send Rich Text Messages using a dedicated user interface.**

- R5-46-1 The RCS client shall support the styles for Rich Text Formatting as defined in Table 6.
- R5-46-2 An RCS client shall only offer Rich Text Formatting styles to the user when they are supported by the recipient.

Style Name	Description	Version
bold	Increases weight of selected text	1
italic	Slants selected text	1
underline	Draws a line beneath the text	1
strikethrough	Draws a line through the text	1

**Table 6: Rich Text Formatting Style Elements**

**US5-47 As a user, I want to receive and view Rich Text Messages exactly as the sender formatted them.**

- R5-47-1 If a client receives a Rich Text Message containing a style element that it does not support, it shall not display the message content and shall inform the user that the message contains an unsupported Rich Text Formatting style.

**US5-48 As a user, I want to make or receive MIVCs.**

- R5-48-1 The RCS client shall display the entry point for an MIVC according to the requirements in US3-3 in the view of the Messaging conversation thread.
  - R5-48-1-1 If the RCS Service Provider configures multiple MIVC services, the RCS client shall select the first in the RCS Service Provider's preference of the MIVC services that both the sender and recipient are capable of.
- R5-48-2 All requirements under US11-6 shall apply.
- R5-48-3 During an ongoing MIVC the RCS client shall offer the user the ability to toggle between the associated 1-to-1 Messaging conversation and the MIVC.
- R5-48-4 During an ongoing MIVC, the RCS client shall handle all New Incoming Event Notifications.
  - R5-48-4-1 The RCS client shall display any received messages from the associated conversation in the ongoing MIVC
- R5-48-5 While initiating or during an ongoing MIVC, the RCS client shall not allow 1-to-1 Messaging conversation participants to add any other user to the MIVC.
- R5-48-6 All requirements for E2EE specified under US5-44 shall be applicable to MIVCs if supported by the applied technology.
  - R5-48-6-1 During an ongoing MIVC, the RCS client shall display the encryption status of the call.

## 5.3 Technical information

### 5.3.1 Overview

This section covers the functional requirements for the RCS client to select and apply the service behaviour specified in the previous section. For some services, the desired requirements may be provided by multiple technologies. This section deals with the co-existence of the technologies and specifies the selection rules taking into account the following services:

- The **1-to-1 Messaging service** can be provided based on:
  - The RCS 1-to-1 Chat service following the Open Mobile Alliance (OMA) Converged IP Messaging (CPM) technical realisation defined in section 3.2.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. In order for the RCS 1-to-1 Chat service to be used it shall be enabled by the RCS Service Provider via the configuration parameter CHAT AUTH as defined in section A.1.3 and A.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and the RCS client shall be registered in IMS. The RCS client shall advertise the chat capability in accordance with the definitions of sections 2.6.1.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] based on the procedures specified in section 3.2.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. RCS 1-to-1 Chat delivery is driven by Delivery assurance requirements described in section 5.2 that are realised as described in section 3.2.3.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

NOTE: As per [GSMA PRD-RCC.11], there is no message included in the SIP INVITE.

- The RCS Standalone Messaging service as defined in section 3.2.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. In order for the RCS Standalone messaging service to be used, it shall be enabled by the RCS Service Provider via the configuration parameter STANDALONE MSG AUTH as defined in sections A.1.3 and A.2.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and the RCS client shall be registered in IMS.
- The Short Messaging Service as defined in [3GPP TS 23.040] or the Short Messaging Service over IP as defined in [GSMA PRD-IR.92] and [GSMA PRD-NG.114].

This profile assumes that the RCS Service Provider deploys one of the following options with regards to enabled RCS 1-to-1 messaging technologies:

1. Only RCS Standalone Messaging service is enabled (i.e. STANDALONE MSG AUTH set to 1) or
2. Only RCS 1-to-1 Chat service is enabled (CHAT AUTH is set to 1) or
3. RCS 1-to-1 Chat and RCS Standalone messaging service are enabled (i.e. STANDALONE MSG AUTH is set to 1 and CHAT AUTH is set to 1)

NOTE: For RCS Service Providers that deploy the first option in combination with the Group Chat service (i.e. GROUP CHAT AUTH is set to 1) and choose to interwork with RCS Service Providers that deploy the second option through interworking their RCS Standalone messages to an RCS 1-to-1 Chat session and vice versa, an interworking function will be deployed. The implementation of the interworking procedures is for further study.

- The **Geolocation Push service** can be provided based on:
  - The RCS Geolocation Push service realised as defined in section 3.2.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. In order for the RCS Geolocation Push service to be used it shall be enabled by the RCS Service Provider via the configuration parameter PROVIDE GEOLOC PUSH as defined in sections A.1.7 and A.2.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and the RCS client shall be registered in IMS.
- The **1-to-Many Messaging service** can be provided based on the services listed under the 1-to-1 Messaging service.
  - If the RCS Standalone Messaging service is enabled, the 1-to-Many Messaging service is provided based on the procedures described in [GSMA PRD-RCC.11].
  - Otherwise, if the RCS Standalone messaging service is not enabled, the 1-to-Many Messaging service is provided as 1-to-1 Messaging service per single recipient.

The 1-to-Many messaging service is enabled if the MAX 1 TO MANY RECIPIENTS configuration parameter defined in section A.1.3 and A.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] is present with a value other than "0".

### 5.3.2 Network Fallback Support Capability

Delivery Assurance in this profile is provided based on the procedures described in section 3.2.3.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

For Integrated Messaging configured RCS clients (i.e. MESSAGING UX set to 1), the SMS fallback shall be enabled on the RCS client based on the MESSAGING FALLBACK DEFAULT client configuration parameter and user selection. For Seamless Messaging configured RCS clients (i.e. MESSAGING UX is set to 0), there is no user authorisation required for the SMS.

The 1-to-1 Messaging technology selection rules defined in section 3.2.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] apply for the case where the originating RCS client is registered for RCS services. If the RCS client is not registered for RCS services specific handling is applied based on the MESSAGING UX client configuration parameter setting.

### 5.3.3 Chat Message revocation

Message Revocation shall be implemented as defined in section 3.2.3.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

### 5.3.4 Configuration Parameters

#### 5.3.4.1 New configuration parameters

To provide the required MNO control of the 1-to-1 Messaging behaviour, the following parameters are added to those that are available in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07], [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] and [GSMA PRD-RCC.15]:

Configuration parameter	Description	RCS usage
MESSAGING UX	<p>This parameter controls whether the UX for messaging shall be the Seamless Messaging (0, default value) or the Integrated Messaging experience (1)</p> <p>NOTE: When receiving a provisioning document from a legacy network, this parameter is not provided resulting in the default behaviour.</p>	Optional Parameter
USER ALIAS AUTH	<p>This parameter controls whether the RCS client is authorised to offer the user alias function to the user. The following values are defined:</p> <p>The RCS client is not authorised for user alias handling. The RCS client shall not offer the user a UX to manage the user alias used for RCS services. For mobile originated RCS transactions, the RCS client shall never add a user alias as defined in section 2.5.3.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. If the RCS client receives a user alias as defined in section 2.5.3.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] in a mobile terminated RCS transaction, the RCS client shall discard the value, i.e. it is neither displayed to the user nor stored in the communication history.</p> <p>The RCS client is authorized to offer the user functions related to the user alias handling (default). The definitions of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07], specifically section 2.5.3.4, and the user alias related functional requirements of this document apply.</p>	Optional Parameter
MESSAGING FALLBACK DEFAULT	<p>This parameter is applicable only when MESSAGING UX is set to 1 and CHAT REVOKE TIMER is set to a value higher than 0. It controls the default setting for the RCS client switch controlling the user dialog when according to the rules in section 3.2.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] an RCS 1 to 1 Chat Message or RCS Geolocation Push message should be resent as SMS, The default can be set to:</p> <p><b>0 (Default Value)</b>, never ask the user to confirm the retransmission as SMS and always send as SMS,  <b>-1</b>, never ask the user to confirm the retransmission as SMS and never send as SMS  <b>1</b>, always ask the user to confirm whether the message should be sent as SMS instead.</p>	Optional parameter
MSG TECH DISP SWITCH	<p>This parameter is applicable only for Seamless Messaging (when MESSAGING UX is set to 0). It controls whether the RCS client will show or visually indicate to the user the technology / service used to convey the message from / to the device.</p> <p>0 (Default Value), or absent. The RCS client shall not show or indicate to the user the underlying messaging technology / service</p> <p>1, The RCS client shall show or indicate to the user the underlying messaging technology/service.</p>	Optional parameter

**Table 7: Additional Configuration Parameters to control 1-to-1 Messaging behaviour**

The MESSAGING UX, USER ALIAS AUTH, MESSAGING FALLBACK DEFAULT and MSG TECH DISP SWITCH parameters are added to the UX tree with the following formal definition:

Node: /<x>/UX

The parameters used to control the UX of the RCS client are placed under this interior node.

Status	Occurrence	Format	Min. Access Types
Required	One	node	Get

**Table 8: UX MO sub tree addition node**

- Values: N/A
- Associated HTTP XML characteristic type: "UX"

Node: /<x>/UX/messagingUX

Leaf node that describes whether the Seamless Messaging experience or the Integrated Messaging experience shall be used.

If not instantiated, the Seamless Messaging experiences shall be used.

Status	Occurrence	Format	Min. Access Types
Required	ZeroOrOne	Bool	Get, Replace

**Table 9: UX MO sub tree addition parameters (messagingUX)**

- Values:  
 0 (default), the RCS client shall use the Seamless Messaging experience  
 1, the RCS client shall use the Integrated Messaging experience
- Post-reconfiguration actions: As the RCS client remains unregistered during configuration, there are no additional actions apart from de-registering, using the old configuration and registering back using the new parameter.
- Associated HTTP XML characteristic type: "messagingUX"

Node: /<x>/UX/userAliasAuth

Leaf node that describes whether the RCS client is authorised for user alias handling for RCS services.

If not instantiated, user alias handling as defined in this document based on the implementation in section 2.5.3.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] shall be applied by the RCS client.

Status	Occurrence	Format	Min. Access Types
Required	ZeroOrOne	Bool	Get, Replace

**Table 10: UX MO sub tree addition parameters (userAliasAuth)**

- Values:  
 0, the RCS client is not authorised for user alias handling  
 1 (default), the RCS client is authorised for user alias handling
- Post-reconfiguration actions:  
 If the configuration parameter value transits from 0 to 1, or the parameter is added with value 1 to the RCS client configuration, the RCS client shall unhide the UX elements for the management of the user alias.  
 If the configuration parameter value transits from 1 to 0 or the configuration parameter is removed, then the RCS client shall hide the UX element for the management of the user alias. A stored user alias value of the RCS client user shall be deleted.  
 The new value of the configuration parameter shall be stored and applied from this time on.
- Associated HTTP XML characteristic type: “userAliasAuth”

Node: /<x>/UX/msgFBDefault

Leaf node that describes the default setting of the switch controlling whether the user should confirm a retransmission of a 1 to 1 RCS Chat Message or RCS Geolocation Push message as SMS.

Status	Occurrence	Format	Min. Access Types
Required	ZeroOrOne	int	Get, Replace

**Table 11:UX MO sub tree addition parameters (msgFBDefault)**

- Values:  
 -1, the default setting of the switch is to never ask the user to confirm the retransmission and never do the fallback  
 0 (default value), the default setting of the switch is to never ask the user to confirm the retransmission and always do the fallback.  
 1, the default setting of the switch is to always ask the user to confirm the retransmission as SMS
- Post-reconfiguration actions: Change the setting of the switch, if the user has not toggled it before.
- Associated HTTP XML parameter ID: “msgFBDefault”

Node: /<x>/UX/msgTDSwitch

Leaf node that describes whether RCS client will show or visually indicate to the user the technology / service used to convey the message from/to the device.

When Integrated Messaging is used, this parameter should be ignored by RCS clients if it is present.

Status	Occurrence	Format	Min. Access Types
Required	ZeroOrOne	Bool	Get, Replace

**Table 12: UX MO sub tree addition parameters (msgTDSwitch)**

- Values:
  - 0 (Default Value) or absent. The RCS client shall not show or indicate to the user the underlying messaging technology / service.
  - 1, the RCS client shall show or indicate to the user the underlying messaging technology / service.
- Post-reconfiguration actions: Start using the provided value the next time when receiving / sending a message or xMS.
- Associated HTTP XML characteristic type: "msgTDSwitch"

Node: /<x>/UX/Ext

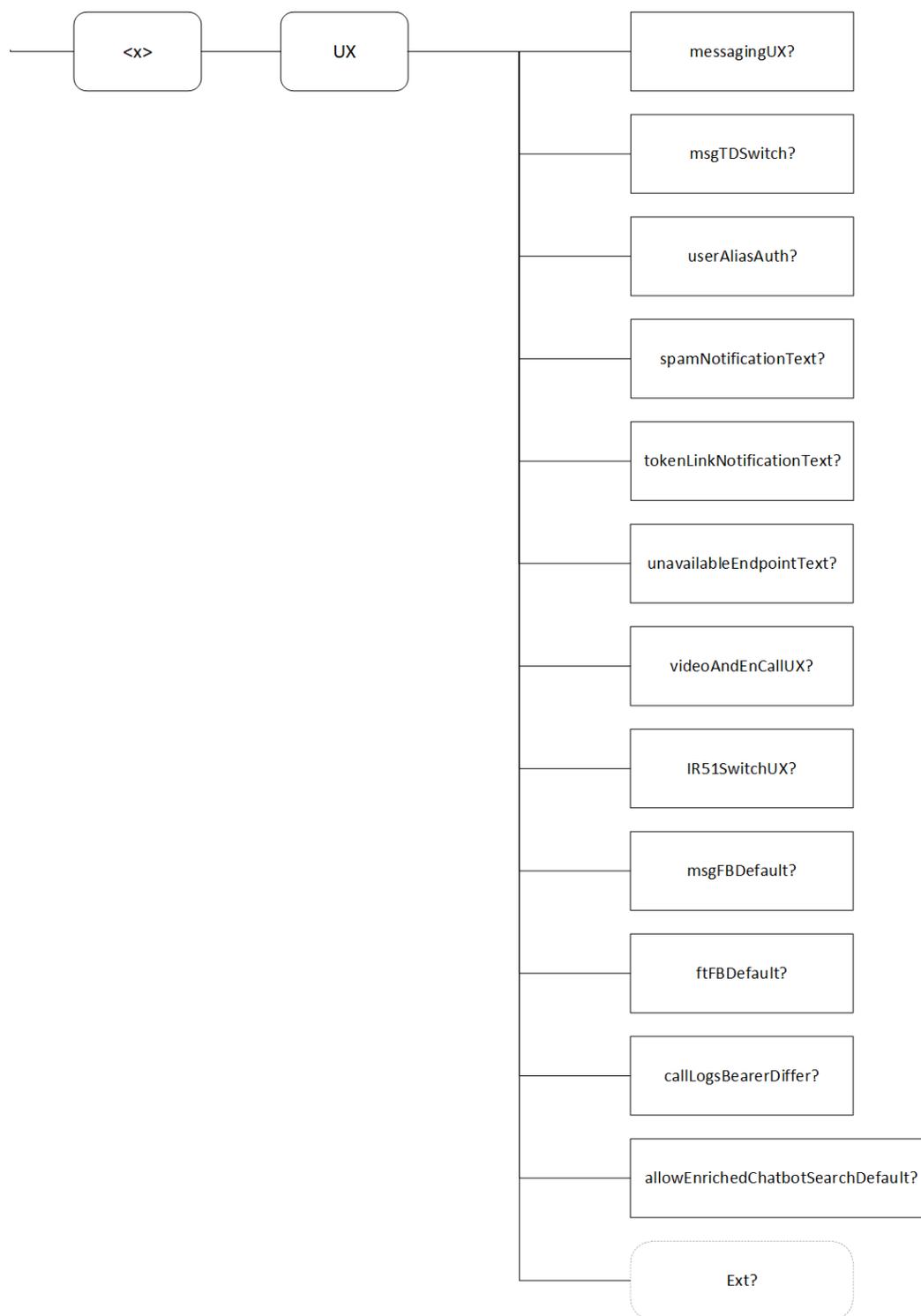
An extension node for RCS Service Provider specific parameters. RCS clients that are not aware of any extensions in this sub tree (e.g. because they are not RCS Service Provider specific) should not instantiate this tree.

Status	Occurrence	Format	Min. Access Types
Optional	ZeroOrOne	node	Get

**Table 13: UX MO sub tree addition RCS Service Provider Extension Node**

- Values: N/A
- Associated HTTP XML characteristic type: "Ext"

This leads to the following UX tree:



**Figure 5: UX MO tree**

The associated HTTP configuration XML structure is presented in the table below:

```

<characteristic type="UX">
  <parm name="messagingUX" value="X"/>
  <parm name="msgTDSwitch" value="X"/>
  <parm name="userAliasAuth" value="X"/>
  <parm name="spamNotificationText" value="X"/>
  <parm name="tokenLinkNotificationText" value="X"/>
  <parm name="unavailableEndpointText" value="X"/>
  <parm name="videoAndEnCallUX" value="X"/>
  <parm name="IR51SwitchUx" value="X"/>
  <parm name="msgFBDefault" value="X"/>
  <parm name="ftFBDefault" value="X"/>
  <parm name="callLogsBearerDiffer" value="X"/>
  <parm name="allowEnrichedChatbotSearchDefault" value="X"/>
  <characteristic type="Ext"/>
</characteristic>

```

**Table 14: UX MO sub tree associated HTTP configuration XML structure**

### 5.3.5 Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service Requirements

- R5-49-1 Requirements R5-1-1 and R5-1-2 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-2 Requirement R5-2-1 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-3 Requirements R5-2-2-1 and R5-2-2-2 and their sub requirements are implemented locally on the device based on the current connectivity state and the available information on the B-party as a consequence of the capability exchange (see section 3.3) and as specified in section 5.3.3.1.
- R5-49-4 Requirements R5-2-2-3, R5-2-2-4 and R5-2-2-5. shall be implemented locally on the device
- R5-49-5 Requirement R5-2-3 shall be realised based on the interworking procedures in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and the applicable specifications it refers to.
- R5-49-6 Requirement R5-2-3-1 shall be realised through the procedures in section 3.2.3.8.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-7 Requirement R5-2-3-2 shall be implemented on the MNO. The MNO shall not perform interworking when the recipient's RCS client has enabled E2EE via the mechanism mentioned below. The MNO shall remember that the recipient's RCS client has enabled E2EE via uploading a public key and the vendor ID of the Home Key Distribution Server (KDS) to the Auto-Configuration Server as defined in section 2.3.2.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] during client provisioning.
- R5-49-8 Requirement R5-2-4 shall be realised through the revocation procedures defined in section 3.2.3.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-9 Requirement R5-2-4-1 shall be realised based on the client configuration parameter CHAT REVOKE TIMER defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and the network indication for the support of revocation as specified in section 3.2.3.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-10 Requirement R5-2-4-1-1 shall be implemented on the server by following procedures to disable NFS and not indicating +g.gsma.rcs.msgfallback as a result of the procedures defined in section 3.2.3.8.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]

indicating +g.gsma.rcs.msgrevoke instead. The MNO shall remember that the recipient's RCS client has enabled E2EE via uploading a public key and the vendor ID of Home KDS to Auto-Configuration Server as defined in section 2.3.2.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] during client provisioning.

- R5-49-11 Requirement R5-2-4-2 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-12 Requirement R5-2-4-3 shall be implemented locally on the device based on the value configured for the client configuration parameter CHAT REVOKE TIMER defined in A.1.3 and A.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-13 Requirement R5-2-4-4 and its sub requirements shall be implemented locally on the device with the default for the user setting being configured through the MESSAGING FALLBACK DEFAULT client configuration parameter defined in section 5.3.4.
- R5-49-14 Requirement R5-2-4-5 and its sub requirements shall be implemented on the device using the revocation procedures defined in section 3.2.3.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] with the timeout on regaining connectivity required in requirement R5-2-4-5-2 being controlled through the RECONNECT GUARD TIMER parameter defined in section A.1.3 and A.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. For sending the SMS in parallel with the Message Revoke requests required in requirement R5-2-4-5-4, the CFS TRIGGER parameter defined in section A.1.3 and A.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] shall be set to zero.
- R5-49-15 Requirement R5-2-4-6 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-16 Requirement R5-2-4-6-1 shall be implemented locally on the device. It is applicable when selected user settings resulting from RCS Service Provider configuration or user selection for both undelivered RCS Chat Messages and undelivered RCS files allow SMS fallback and latching (i.e. set to always resend undelivered RCS Chat Messages as SMS and always resend undelivered RCS Files as SMS link)
- R5-49-17 Requirement R5-2-5 and its sub requirements shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-18 Requirement R5-3-1 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-19 For requirement R5-3-2, the RCS client shall rely on the value of the MSG TECH DISP SWITCH parameter which needs to be set by the MNO:
- For Integrated Messaging, this parameter shall be ignored by RCS clients if it is present.
  - For Seamless Messaging, if this parameter is absent, or is set 0, the RCS client shall not show or indicate to the user the underlying messaging technology / service; however, if this parameter is present and is set to 1, the RCS client shall show or indicate to the user the underlying messaging technology / service.
- R5-49-20 Requirement R5-3-3 shall only apply if E2EE is disabled, and shall be implemented based on the selected 1-to-1 messaging technology. When RCS 1-to-1 Chat is selected, interworking on the network serving the recipient of the message can be performed based on procedures described in sections 3.2.3.4 and 3.2.3.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. When RCS Standalone messaging is

selected, originating or terminating fallback may be applied based on RCS Service Provider policies. The MNO shall remember that the recipient's RCS client has enabled E2EE via uploading a public key and the vendor ID of the Home KDS to Auto-Configuration Server as defined in section 2.3.2.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] during client provisioning.

- R5-49-21 Requirement R5-3-3-1 shall be implemented on the MNO by following procedures to disable NFS defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and by setting the ChatRevokeTimer client configuration parameter defined in appendix A.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The MNO shall remember that the recipient's RCS client has enabled E2EE via uploading a public key and the vendor ID of the Home KDS to Auto-Configuration Server as defined in section 2.3.2.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] during client provisioning.
- R5-49-22 Requirements R5-3-4, R5-3-5, R5-3-6, R5-3-7, R5-3-8 and their sub requirements shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-23 Requirements R5-4-1 and R5-4-2 shall be implemented locally on the device. The RCS client shall consider the RCS addressing model defined in section 2.5.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] to determine the address type and the corresponding 1-to-1 messaging service technology for user provided contact addresses.
- R5-49-24 Requirement R5-4-3-1 shall be realised by configuring the MESSAGING UX parameter defined in section 5.3.4. The MNO shall remember that the recipient's RCS client has enabled E2EE via uploading a public key and the vendor ID of the Home KDS to Auto-Configuration Server as defined in section 2.3.2.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] during client provisioning.
- R5-49-25 Requirement R5-4-3-2 is realised as specified in section 18.3.
- R5-49-26 Requirement R5-4-4 shall be realised locally on the device based on the +g.gsma.rcs.mls.mls-version Capability indication defined in section 2.6.1.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and following the procedures defined in section 5.2, 8.1 and 9.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16].
- R5-49-27 For the message transfer states of requirement R5-5-1 the following technical implementation applies:
- **Pending:** When the user presses the button to send the message until the first success response is received from the network. For RCS 1-to-1 Chat Message or RCS Standalone message, it may be in this state for some time when the user is not registered with the IMS core (e.g. offline or airplane mode). For SMS, it may be in this state when the user is not available for sending SMS.
  - **Sent:** For RCS 1-to-1 Chat Message, a MSRP 200 OK is received. For RCS Standalone message pager mode, a SIP 200 OK is received from the network. For RCS Standalone message Large Message Mode, a SIP 200 OK response is received to the SIP BYE request sent by the RCS client once the Standalone message has been successfully transferred via MSRP. For SMS, the message is successfully submitted to the network.

- **Delivered:** For RCS 1-to-1 Chat Message or RCS Standalone message, when receiving the Delivery Notification with status set to "delivered". Requirement R5-5-1-3-1 is realised based on the procedures described in [3GPP TS 23.040] upon receiving a delivery report of the short message. Requirement R5-5-1-3-2 shall be realised based on the Interworking disposition notification as specified in section 3.2.3.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

NOTE: An originating RCS client may receive for a Chat Message both a delivery and an interworking disposition notification, e.g. due to support of multi device in the terminating network. Reception of the delivery disposition notification overwrites the "interworking" status of the message".

- **Displayed:** For RCS 1-to-1 Chat Message or RCS Standalone message, when receiving the Displayed Notification with the status set to "displayed". Requirement R5-5-1-4-1 shall be implemented locally on the device based on the setting for US18-7. Requirement R5-5-1-4-2 shall be implemented locally on the device. Requirement R5-5-1-4-3 shall be realised based on the Interworking disposition notification as specified in section 3.2.3.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. Displayed status is not applicable if the RCS client received an interworking notification but no delivery notification.
- **Error:** For 1-to-1 RCS Chat Message or RCS Standalone message, when an error is received as specified in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and the applicable specifications it refers to.

- R5-49-28 Notifications on delivery status information as defined in R5-5-2 shall be stored and forwarded in the Store and Forward server as specified in section 3.2.3.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-29 Requirements R5-5-3, R5-5-4 and R5-5-5 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-30 Requirement R5-5-6 shall be realised locally on the device. The RCS client shall use signing procedures defined in section 9.1.3 and 9.1.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16].
- R5-49-31 Requirement R5-5-7 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-32 Sub-requirement R5-5-7-1 shall be implemented as specified in section 2.3.2, (see R2-16-5 to R2-16-8).
- R5-49-33 For the requirements in user story US5-6 the device shall support the encoding and display of the graphical elements as defined in Annexes A.2 and A.3.
- R5-49-34 The indication that the other party is typing in requirement R5-7-1 is based on the reception of the "isComposing" indication as defined in section 3.2.3.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The "isComposing" indication can only be transferred within an active RCS 1-to-1 Chat session. "isComposing" indication cannot be transferred when other messaging technology is selected based on the messaging technology selection rules defined in this section. The RCS client shall send the "isComposing" indication only if a RCS 1-to-1 Chat session exists

for the conversation the user is typing in. When there is no active session, session initiation is triggered when the user sends a message and consequently there is no “isComposing” indication for the first message sent. There is no “isComposing” indication for messages delivered through Store and Forward delivery procedures.

- R5-49-35 Requirement R5-7-2 shall be realised locally on the device.
- R5-49-36 Requirement R5-8-1 is fulfilled based on sections 5.3.1 and 5.3.2 and section 3.2.3.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-37 Requirement R5-8-1-1 shall be implemented as defined in sections 3.2.3.2 and 3.2.3.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-38 Requirement R5-8-2 is fulfilled based on sections 5.3.1 to 5.3.3 and section 3.2.3.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-39 Requirement R5-9-1 shall be implemented as defined in sections 5.3.1 to 5.3.3 and section 3.2.3.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-40 For requirement R5-9-2, the RCS client shall always accept an incoming SIP INVITE request for a 1-to-1 Chat session immediately as specified in section 3.2.3.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-41 Requirement R5-9-3 and R5-9-4 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-42 Requirement R5-9-5 shall be realised locally on the device.
- R5-49-43 Requirement R5-9-6 and its sub requirements shall be realised locally on the device through procedures defined in section 8.1 and 9.1 defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.16].
- R5-49-44 Requirement R5-9-7 and its sub requirements shall be realised locally on the device, using procedures defined in section 10 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16].
- R5-49-45 Requirement R5-9-8 shall be realised locally in device through procedures defined in section 11 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16] and following error code specification in section 5.4.23.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16].
- R5-49-46 The requirements of user stories US5-10 and US5-11 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-47 Sub-requirement R5-10-4-1 shall be implemented as specified in section 2.3.2, (see R2-16-5 to R2-16-8).
- R5-49-48 Requirement R5-12-1 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-49 For the requirements R5-12-2, R5-12-3, R5-12-4 and R5-12-5 the RCS client shall support the following procedure:
  - It is the responsibility of the Messaging Server to deliver Chat Messages in the correct order, so the RCS client can rely on it when sorting received messages. The RCS client shall interleave the sent and received messages in the chronological order. The RCS client shall interleave received messages based on the value of the CPIM

Message-Direction header value (as referred to from section C.1.9 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.11]) as sent or received or, if absent as received message. The RCS client shall interleave client-originated messages as sent message.

- After the RCS client has synchronised with the Common Message Store successfully, then messages shall be sorted in accordance with the time indicated in the CPIM DateTime header value received with message from the Common Message Store. The RCS client shall interleave messages based on the value of the Direction attribute defined in [CPM-MSGSTOR-REST].

R5-49-50 The requirements of user story US5-13 shall be implemented locally on the device. As a clarification, the timestamp for "sent" messages received via the 1-1 chat service or the Common Message Store is taken from the CPIM DateTime header in accordance with the technical implementation of R5-12-2, R5-12-3 and R5-12-4.

R5-49-51 The requirements of user story US5-14 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R5-49-52 To satisfy the requirements of US5-15 the RCS client shall apply the following procedure:

R5-49-52-1 If the configuration parameter USER ALIAS AUTH defined in section 5.3.4 is set to 0 then the RCS client shall:

*R5-49-52-1-1* Not offer the user to manage a user alias used for RCS communications.

*R5-49-52-1-2* Not send a user alias for mobile originated chat sessions and

*R5-49-52-1-3* Discard the user alias received in mobile terminated chat session messages, i.e. the user alias is not displayed and not stored in the local communication history.

R5-49-52-2 If the configuration parameter USER ALIAS AUTH defined in section 5.3.4 is set to 1 or it is not present, then:

*R5-49-52-2-1* The RCS client shall offer the user to manage a user alias used for RCS communications.

*R5-49-52-2-2* For mobile originated chat transactions, the RCS client shall add a user alias if set by the user as defined in section 2.5.3.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

*R5-49-52-2-3* If the RCS client receives a user alias as defined in section 2.5.3.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] in a mobile terminated chat session and the originator address does not match an address book contact, the RCS client shall display the user alias to the user.

*R5-49-52-2-4* The RCS client shall store the user alias in the local chat communication history.

- R5-49-53 In addition, the RCS client implementation shall respect the requirements of the post reconfiguration actions defined for the configuration parameter USER ALIAS AUTH in section 5.3.4.
- R5-49-54 Requirement R5-15-3 shall be realised locally on the device, using procedures defined in section 9.1.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16].
- R5-49-55 For the realization of requirements of user story US5-16 the RCS client shall enforce the max message size for sending messages as defined by the configuration parameter MAX SIZE IM defined in section A.1.3 and A.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-56 For requirements R5-17-1 and R5-17-2 section 7.3 applies.
- R5-49-57 Requirement R5-17-3 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-58 Requirement R5-18-1 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-59 Requirement R5-19-1 and R5-20-1 is fulfilled by deploying a Common Message Store as described in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and [GSMA PRD-RCC.11].
- R5-49-60 Requirement R5-19-2 is fulfilled based on RCS Service Provider policies.
- R5-49-61 Requirement R5-19-3 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-62 For requirement R5-20-1, a dedicated Message Store client shall be implemented on the device as defined in section 4.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and [GSMA PRD-RCC.11].
- R5-49-63 Requirement R5-20-2 shall be realised locally on the device.
- R5-49-64 For requirement R5-21-1, the RCS client shall delete messages and conversations in the Common Message Store after local deletion as defined in section 4.1.15.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-65 The requirements of US5-22 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-66 The requirements of the user stories US5-23 to US5-26 are implemented via the RCS Geolocation Push service defined in section 3.2.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-67 Requirements R5-27-1, R5-27-2, R5-27-3, R5-27-4 and R5-27-5 shall be implemented based on the 1-to-Many Messaging service procedures defined in section 3.2.2.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-68 For requirement R5-28-1, the MAX 1 TO MANY RECIPIENTS parameter defined in section A.1.3 and A.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] shall be configured.
- R5-49-69 For R5-28-2, the 1 TO MANY SELECTED TECHNOLOGY parameter defined in section A.1.3 and A.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] shall be configured.
- R5-49-70 Requirement R5-28-2-1 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-71 The requirements of US5-29 shall be implemented locally on the device. For the requirement R5-29-5, the technical implementation of message bookmarks

in the Common Message Store, as defined in section 4.1.6.10 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07], applies.

- R5-49-72 The requirements of US5-30 shall be implemented locally on the device. There is no technical implementation for requirement R5-30-4 in this version of the Universal Profile, i.e. bookmarks for conversations can only be managed locally on the device and cannot be stored in the Common Message Store.
- R5-49-73 The requirements and sub requirements of R5-31-1 and R5-31-4, are implemented via the Spam and Other Inappropriate User Behaviour Handling procedures defined in section 3.2.9 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-74 The requirements R5-31-2, R5-31-3, R5-31-5, R5-31-6, R5-31-7 and R5-31-8 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-75 The requirements and sub requirements for US5-32 are implemented via the Suspicion Indicator defined in section 3.2.9.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. R5-32-3 shall be realized via the use of the IM-SPAM-REPORTING-URI parameter defined in section A.1.3. of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-76 The requirements and sub requirements for US5-33 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-77 The requirements R5-34-1, R5-34-2, R5-34-3, R5-34-4 and R5-34-5 shall be implemented via procedures defined in the Reply Message section of 3.2.8.4.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-78 R5-35-1 is implemented locally on the device based on the information received as part of the procedure defined in section 3.2.8.4.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-79 All requirements and sub-requirements of R5-34-6, R5-34-7, R5-34-8, R5-35-2 and R5-35-3 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-80 Requirements R5-36-2, R5-36-10 and R5-36-11 shall be implemented via the procedures defined in sections of 3.2.8.5 and 3.2.8.6 in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-81 Requirements R5-36-1, R5-36-3, R5-36-4, R5-36-5, R5-36-6, R5-36-7, R5-36-8, R5-36-9, R5-37-2, R5-37-3 and R5-37-4 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-82 Requirements R5-37-1 and R5-37-5 shall be implemented via the procedures defined in sections 3.2.8.5 and 3.2.8.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-83 The requirement R5-38-1 shall be implemented via the procedures defined in section 3.2.8.8.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-84 Requirements R5-39-1 and R5-39-2 shall be implemented via the procedures defined in section 3.2.8.8.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-85 Requirements R5-38-2, R5-38-3, R5-38-4, R5-39-3 and R5-39-4 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-86 Requirements R5-40-1 and R5-41-1 shall be implemented via the procedures defined in section 3.2.8.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

- R5-49-87 Requirement R5-40-6 shall be implemented using the Capability exchange procedures defined in 3.2.8.2 and Backward Compatibility features defined in 3.2.8.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-88 Requirements R5-40-2, R5-40-3, R5-40-4, R5-40-5, R5-41-2, R5-41-3, R5-41-4 and R5-41-5 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-89 The requirements R5-42-1 and R5-43-1, shall be implemented via the procedures defined in section 3.2.8.9 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-90 Requirements R5-42-2, R5-42-3, R5-42-4, R5-42-5, R5-43-2, R5-43-3, R5-43-4 and R5-43-5 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R5-49-91 The requirement R5-44-1 and its sub requirements and R5-44-2 shall be realised locally on the device.
- R5-49-92 Requirement R5-45-1 and its sub requirements, R5-45-2, R5-45-3 and R5-45-4 shall be realised locally on the device, aided by procedures defined in section 11 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16], and aided by capabilities defined in 2.6.1.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-93 The requirements of user story US5-46 shall be realised using the Rich Text Message sender procedures defined in section 3.2.10.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-94 The requirements of user story US5-47 shall be realised using the Rich Text Message receiver procedures defined in section 3.2.10.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-95 Requirements R5-48-1 shall be implemented locally on the device aided by section 3.7.3 in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R5-49-96 Requirements R5-48-2, R5-48-3, R5-48-4, R5-48-5 and their sub requirements shall be implemented locally on the device
- R5-49-97 Requirement R5-48-6 and its sub requirement shall be implemented locally on the device and aided by the procedures defined in section 9.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16].

## 6 Group Chat

### 6.1 Description

Group Chat allows users to exchange Chat Messages with a number of contacts at the same time. All participants can see all other participants' activity within the group and replies are distributed to the entire group of participants.

Compared to Universal Profile 2.0 and its subversions, Universal Profile 3.0 introduces the following:

- Support for E2EE

## 6.2 User Stories and Feature Requirements

**US6-1 As a user, I want to create a Group Chat conversation with a selection of my contacts.**

- R6-1-1 Any RCS user shall be able to create a Group Chat Conversation by selecting capable (for this service) contacts from the contact list and invite them to a Group Chat.
- R6-1-1-1 Any Chatbot or MaaP Application that is part of the user's contact list shall be considered as an incapable contact for Group Chat, i.e. these Chatbot contacts cannot be added to the participants list when creating a Group Chat conversation.
- R6-1-2 It shall be possible to create a Group Chat Conversation by adding a (for this service capable) participant to a 1-to-1 Chat Conversation. As a result of this operation, the existing 1-to-1 Messaging conversation window is closed and the conversation remains active and accessible. A new Group Chat is opened with an empty history in the foreground. The participants shall be the two participants from the 1-to-1 Messaging conversation plus the selected contact(s) from the extension.
- R6-1-2-1 Any Chatbot or MaaP Application that is part of the user's contact list shall be considered as an incapable contact for Group Chat, i.e. these contacts cannot be added as participants to a Group Chat conversation.
- R6-1-2-2 If a user is in an existing conversation with a Chatbot or MaaP Application, it shall not be possible to extend this conversation to a Group Chat by adding one or more capable (for this service) contact(s) from the contact list.
- R6-1-3 Any (for this service capable) RCS user shall be able to participate in a Group Chat conversation after the invite to that Group Chat has been confirmed (by automatic confirmation or manual confirmation).
- R6-1-3-1 Any Chatbot or MaaP Application shall be considered as an incapable participant for Group Chat.
- R6-1-4 The RCS Service Provider shall be able to set a maximum number of participants in a Group Chat conversation. To ensure interoperability, the RCS Service Provider shall allow 100 participants for each Group Chat conversation where participants from other networks are included.
- R6-1-5 When starting a new Group Chat, the inviting user or initiator shall invite at least two other Group Chat capable participants.
- R6-1-5-1 The restriction of at least three participants in a Group Chat shall only apply to the creation of a Group Chat, i.e. a Group Chat containing only two participants is perfectly valid if previous Group Chat participants have left or invited participants never joined.
- R6-1-6 When a user tries to create a new Group Chat with the same list of participants and the same Group Chat subject as an existing one, then the RCS client shall jump to the existing Group Chat and not create a new one.

- R6-1-7 When a user tries to create a new Group Chat with the same list of participants as an existing one but not with the same Group Chat subject, then a new Group Chat shall be created.
- R6-1-8 For any Group Chat conversations, the creator of a Group Chat shall be able to remove participants that have been added to the conversation (either when creating the Group Chat or later).
- R6-1-8-1 In the case where a participant is removed, all participants shall be informed about a participant being removed from the Group Chat in the same way as when a participant leaves the Group Chat voluntarily.
- R6-1-8-2 The removed user shall see a last update to the Group Chat conversation thread politely indicating that they have been removed.
- R6-1-8-3 The removed user shall not be able to create or send any further messages to that group (e.g. including the case when a user was offline during their removal from the group and messages were not sent).
- R6-1-8-4 Once removed from a Group Chat, a user shall receive no further updates from the group.
- R6-1-8-5 If the creator of a Group Chat leaves the conversation, then there shall be an option to pass on the right for removing participants from the Group Chat to another participant.
- US6-2 As a user, I want to add a Group Chat subject and icon to any Group Chat conversation.**
- R6-2-1 When creating a Group Chat conversation, it shall be possible for the creator to define subject and an icon for that Group Chat
- R6-2-2 If no subject has been defined, the application shall automatically generate a subject (e.g. list of users on the Group Chat "Liz, Thomas plus 3 others"). If no Group Chat icon has been defined, a placeholder Group Chat icon shall be used.
- R6-2-2-1 The subject of a Group Chat shall be represented in the list of chat conversations similar to contact names for 1-to-1 Messaging conversations. In addition to the Group Chat subject, the number of Group Chat participants shall be indicated in brackets (e.g. "Group Chat Subject (4)" if the subject was set to 'Group Chat Subject' and the number of participants in the Group Chat is four).
- R6-2-2-2 The subject of a Group Chat shall be visible as a 'headline' on top of the Group Chat window when the Group Chat conversation is displayed on the screen. The number of Group Chat participants shall be displayed in addition to the Group Chat subject similar to the requirements in R6-2-2-1.
- R6-2-2-3 If the Group Chat subject is too long to be represented in the list of conversations or the headline of a Group Chat, the Group Chat subject shall be truncated, and the user shall have the option to see the Group Chat subject in full length on user interaction. The number of Group Chat participants shall however always be visible.

- R6-2-2-4 The UI design shall allow the user to clearly differentiate Group Chat subjects from Chatbot names, to prevent that Group Chat is used as a tool for spoofing false identities.
- R6-2-3 The Group Chat icon shall be represented in the list of chat conversations similar to contact icons for 1-to-1 Messaging conversations. The selection mechanism, including possible resize, crop or aspect ratio correction tools, shall be similar to the procedures that are offered by the device for contact icons.
- R6-2-4 It shall be possible to maintain more than one Group Chat with identical Group Chat subjects.
- R6-2-5 Any Group Chat participant shall be able to change the subject of the Group Chat and / or Group Chat icon at any time.
- R6-2-5-1 The change shall be visible for all Group Chat participants by an information in the Conversation History that subject and / or icon was changed, the person who made the change plus date and timestamp. (There is no need to log the content of the change). In case of offline devices, the change shall be visible once the device come online again).
- R6-2-5-2 The user shall have the ability to see who has changed the icon or subject and when by browsing the message history of that Group Chat.
- R6-2-6 When the RCS clients of all Group Chat participants have enabled E2EE, the RCS clients should encrypt and decrypt Group Chat subject and icon.
- US6-3 As a user, I want to add a contact from my contact list to an existing Group Chat conversation.**
- R6-3-1 Participants in a Group Chat conversation shall be able to add new participants from their contact list.
- R6-3-1-1 Additions of new participants shall be limited to user's contacts; it shall not be possible to add any Chatbot or MaaP Application to an existing Group Chat.
- R6-3-2 It shall not be possible to add new Group Chat participants in a Group Chat conversation once the maximum number of participants has been reached as configured by the RCS Service Provider (see R6-1-4).
- R6-3-3 It shall be possible to add participants to a Group Chat if they are offline at the time where the addition takes place.
- NOTE: These participants are known to be RCS enabled but not registered to the RCS service at the time of addition.
- R6-3-4 It shall not be possible to add legacy non-RCS contacts to a Group Chat.
- R6-3-5 Other Group Chat participants shall see the new participant, irrespective of whether the new participant is online or offline, from the time the new participants are accepted (either by automatic confirmation or manual confirmation of the user when online).

R6-3-6 For a Group Chat conversation that is end-to-end encrypted, if a participant is adding a user having an RCS client that has not enabled E2EE, the participant's RCS client shall inform the participant that adding this user will make the Group Chat conversation not end-to-end encrypted.

R6-3-6-1 The participant's RCS client shall confirm with the participant that they want to add the user to the Group Chat.

*R6-3-6-1-1* If the participant confirms, the participant's RCS client shall add the user to the Group Chat and the conversation shall not be subject to E2EE from this point onwards. All other participants shall be informed of the change of status of the Group Chat.

*R6-3-6-1-2* If the participant rejects, the participant's RCS client shall not add the user to the Group Chat and the conversation shall remain subject to E2EE.

**US6-4 As a user, I want to know who is participating in a Group Chat conversation at any point in time.**

R6-4-1 Any Group Chat participant shall be able to see a list of participating contacts whenever they wish.

R6-4-2 If a Group Chat participant is not in the user's contact list, they shall be represented by the RCS Alias name (if available), in addition to their MSISDN.

R6-4-2-1 Representation of Alias names in Group Chat conversations or list of Group Chat participants shall be visually differentiated from contact list matches, including clear wording that suggest the Alias name has not been verified, e.g. "+49171 1234567 (possibly "Alias")".

R6-4-3 If neither contact name nor RCS Alias is available, a Group Chat participant shall be represented with their MSISDN in the Group Chat

R6-4-4 In the case where new Group Chat participants join the Group Chat, all other Group Chat participants shall be informed appropriately in the Conversation History

R6-4-5 In the case where Group Chat participants leave the conversation, all other Group Chat participants shall be informed appropriately in the Conversation History.

R6-4-6 If E2EE applies to a Group Chat, the RCS clients shall encrypt and decrypt the RCS Alias.

R6-4-7 If a Push Notification Mechanism is used, the RCS client shall retrieve the participant change information from RCS Service Provider before informing the user as required by R6-4-4 and R6-4-5.

R6-4-7-1 The requirements R2-3-1 to R2-3-4 shall be applicable for the Push Notification.

**US6-5 As a user, I may not want to deal with Group Chat invites and acceptances.**

- R6-5-1 The RCS Service Provider shall be able to configure the device in a way that any user who was invited to a Group Chat conversation shall automatically become a participant of that Group Chat conversation – no invite / acceptance ‘handshake process’ required.
- R6-5-2 The user shall be able to see who originally set up the Group Chat.
- R6-5-3 Auto-accept for Group Chat shall be RCS Service Provider configurable; if an RCS Service Provider decides to not support auto-accept, the invited user becomes participant in a Group Chat once the participation was manually accepted.

**US6-6 As a user, I want to send text Group Chat Messages to an existing Group Chat Conversation.**

- R6-6-1 Any participant in a Group Chat conversation shall be able to send messages to all Group Chat participants.
- R6-6-2 If the originating user tries to send messages to other Group Chat participants while offline, the messages shall be queued locally on the device and sent out once the device is online again.
- R6-6-3 The RCS client shall only send an encrypted message when all Group Chat participants’ RCS clients have enabled E2EE.
- NOTE: This case can also happen if one or more Group Chat participants who previously did not have E2EE enabled, gain E2EE support (for example, by upgrading their RCS client).
- NOTE: This case can also happen if one or more Group Chat participants who previously did not have E2EE enabled were removed from the Group Chat (or left the Group Chat).
- NOTE: This case can also happen if one or more Group Chat participants who previously had E2EE enabled, lose E2EE (for example, by changing their RCS client).

**US6-7 As a user, I want to send a Group Chat Message to an existing Group Chat conversation like a text and it is just delivered. Recipients do not need to explicitly accept any single message.**

- R6-7-1 Any message exchanged in the Group Chat conversation shall be received on other participants’ devices without any form of acceptance confirmation of the message.

**US6-8 As a user, I want to send Group Chat Messages to all Group Chat participants even when they are temporarily offline (e.g. device switched off). I expect them to receive these Group Chat Messages when they come online again.**

- R6-8-1 In case any participant in a Group Chat conversation is currently offline, all message(s) or updates to the list of Group Chat participants shall be delivered once the user is back online.

R6-8-2 The RCS Service Provider shall be able to set the storage duration for store & forward cases (deferred messaging) based on individual RCS Service Provider parameters.

NOTE: The parameters may be aligned on local level as the terminating network storage time has an impact on the sending network user's experience.

**US6-9 As a user, I want to include small graphics into my Group Chat Messages.**

NOTE: Small graphics can express mood, fun or icons to explain a thing or a status in a graphical, easy to use and understand manner. Examples are 😊, 📞, 🌟 and 🙄.

R6-9-1 It shall be possible to add small graphics when creating a Group Chat Message by adding from a selection of graphical elements in the Chat/Group Chat application.

R6-9-1-1 The RCS client shall only send encrypted small graphics when all Group Chat participants' RCS clients have enabled E2EE.

NOTE: Standards for conversion of text strings to Emoji are described in the Annex "Emoticon conversion table", Annex A.2

R6-9-2 It shall be possible to add a few basic small graphics when creating a Group Chat Message by typing in the respective text string, separated by blank spaces (e.g. " ;-)" "converts to "😊") or typing in the respective text string without blank spaces if the string is the only characters

R6-9-2-1 The RCS client shall only send encrypted small graphics when all Group Chat participants' RCS clients have enabled E2EE.

R6-9-3 The graphical elements that are used may vary between implementations, but the conveyed meaning must not be changed.

NOTE: The conversion of text strings to graphics for any type of smileys shall affect any representation of the messages on the user interface, which includes the conversation thread as well as any notifications or previews of messages in pop-ups or dedicated screens.

**US6-10 As a user, I do not want to feel restricted by Group Chat Message size limits.**

R6-10-1 Group Chat Messages (incoming and outgoing) shall allow to send and receive up to 8192 bytes.

NOTE: RCS Service Provider defined parameter.

R6-10-2 If Group Chat Messages are received that exceed the number of characters that the application is able to display properly, the application shall cut off characters that cannot be displayed properly and inform the user about the fact that only a part of the message can be displayed.

**US6-11 As a user, I want to see the status of my sent Group Chat Messages and files.**

R6-11-1 For A-Party, the following Message States shall be indicated to the user:

R6-11-1-1 Message or file 'Pending' - transfer of the message or file has been triggered but not actually started (e.g. queuing on device).

R6-11-1-2 File Transfer 'In Progress' – File Transfer started but not completed.

*R6-11-1-2-1* The progress of sending the file shall be indicated to the user.

R6-11-1-3 File Transfer 'Cancelled' – the sender has cancelled the File Transfer during the File Transfer 'In Progress'.

R6-11-1-4 Message or file 'Sent' - confirmation that the message or file has been correctly handed over to the network successfully.

R6-11-1-5 Message or file 'Delivered' - the message or file has been successfully delivered to all recipient's devices.

NOTE: Networks may not support message or file 'Delivered' in Group Chat. In this case, there are no outgoing notifications generated and incoming message or file 'Delivered' notifications in Group Chat may be ignored.

R6-11-1-6 Message or file 'Displayed': the content of the message or file was brought to all recipients' attention.

*R6-11-1-6-1* As per US18-7 and the related requirements, the user shall have the option to disable the feedback that the message or file was displayed.

R6-11-1-7 When the message or file 'Failed': The expected outcome of the operation could not be confirmed by the network (in this case: message or file 'Sent', 'Delivered' or 'Displayed' status has not been received and the device does not attempt to send the message or file again). Sending the message or file may be re-triggered manually by the user.

NOTE: For Message States and File Transfer States Notifications, restrictions e.g. in cases of legacy support as specified in sections 5 and 7 apply.

R6-11-2 If the sending device is offline at the time a message status is received, message states shall be stored on the network and forwarded once the sending device is online.

R6-11-3 In the Messaging conversation, 'Delivered' and 'Displayed' states for messages and files shall only be indicated whenever all recipients' devices have confirmed the status.

R6-11-4 The A-Party user shall be able to see detailed Message and File Transfer States Notifications per recipient when looking at details (triggered by A-Party user manual action).

R6-11-5 When all Group Chat participants' RCS clients have enabled E2EE, the RCS client shall ensure that Message States cannot be modified.

R6-11-6 All requirements specified under R5-5-7 and R7-4-4 shall be applicable for Group Chat.

**US6-12 As a user, I want to see when the other party is currently writing a Group Chat Message.**

R6-12-1 Any participant of the Group Chat shall be able to see when another Group Chat participant is in the process of creating a new message.

R6-12-1-1 "Is Typing" Notifications shall not be encrypted.

NOTE: Networks may not support "Is Typing" Notification. In this case, networks may ignore incoming "Is Typing" Notifications and may not send outgoing "Is Typing" Notifications.

**US6-13 As a user, I want to be notified at any time my device receives a new Group Chat Message.**

R6-13-1 On receiving a Group Chat Message or file transfer, the user shall be notified with a new incoming event notification.

R6-13-2 For audible new incoming event notifications, device audio related settings shall prevail.

R6-13-3 All requirements specified under R5-10-4 and R7-13-6 shall be applicable for Group Chat.

**US6-14 As a user, I want New Incoming Event Notifications of rapidly sequenced incoming Group Chat Events intelligibly aggregated and counted.**

R6-14-1 Rapid sequence of incoming Group Chat Events in one Group Chat conversation shall be consolidated into one audible notification per Group Chat conversation. Consolidation of visual notifications is not affected.

R6-14-2 The visual notification shall be permanently removed after the user has opened the message.

**US6-15 As a user, I want to see the Group Chat subject and icon as the identifier of a Group Chat Conversation in the list of Chat and Group Chat conversations.**

R6-15-1 Any Group Chat shall be represented with Subject title and Group Picture (and possibly unread message identifier) in the list of Chat Conversations.

**US6-16 As a user, I want conversations that contain unread messages or unseen File Transfer events to be differentiated from conversations that contain messages I have seen.**

NOTE: Unseen files or file download notifications cover events that use File Transfer as an enabler e.g., but not limited to, Audio Messaging or vCard share.

R6-16-1 Group Chat conversations with unread messages or unseen files shall be marked accordingly.

**US6-17 As a user, I want to receive Group Chat Messages from any of the contacts participating in a Group Chat conversation.**

R6-17-1 Any RCS user shall receive Group Chat Message(s) that are sent to Group Chat conversations the user participates in at any point in time.

R6-17-2 Group Chat Messages shall be received straight in the inbox; no handshake acceptance shall be required.

- R6-17-3 Any participant of a Group Chat shall only be able to see messages that have been exchanged between the time of joining the Group Chat and leaving the Group Chat.
- R6-17-4 It shall not be possible for any participant of a Group Chat conversation to see any messages that possibly have been exchanged before the participant has joined the Group Chat.
- R6-17-5 The RCS client shall decrypt encrypted messages in Group Chats subject to E2EE.

**US6-18 As a user, I want to exchange multi-media content (e.g., but not limited to: take an instant picture from camera and send from within the chat) in my Group Chat conversations.**

NOTE: Details on multi-media content are covered by 'File Transfer', section 7.

- R6-18-1 The user shall be able to select and send any files including Multi Media elements in Group Chat conversations.
- R6-18-2 The user shall be able to receive Multi Media elements in Group Chat Conversations.
- R6-18-3 The user shall be able to browse any files including media that were exchanged in the selected Group Chat in an aggregated view.

**US6-19 As a user, I want to view my sent and received Group Chat Messages in a time-based order.**

- R6-19-1 All messages exchanged within the same Group Chat conversation shall be threaded in the same group chat conversation thread in timely order.
- R6-19-2 The order of messages shall be in line with the order messages have been sent and received on the device.
- R6-19-3 Incoming and outgoing messages shall be displayed interlaced.
- R6-19-4 Outgoing messages shall be inserted into the Group Chat conversation thread as they have been sent.

**US6-20 As a user, I want to see the timestamp associated with each of my sent and received messages.**

- R6-20-1 The date and time associated with each Chat Message shall be displayed adjusted to the current device date and time.
  - R6-20-1-1 This timestamp shall be generated for sent messages by the device in a consistent way as timestamps are generated for other device functions, e.g. SMS.
  - R6-20-1-2 Timestamps for received messages shall be based on the UTC timestamp that comes with each message, aligned with the selected device time zone.

**US6-21 As a user, I want any Group Chat conversations to permanently reside on my device, and I can resume that group whenever I decide to do so.**

- R6-21-1 Any participant in a Group Chat conversation shall be able to send a Chat Message to other participants in the Group Chat at any given point in time.
- R6-21-2 If the chat application is closed either by manual user interaction (e.g. by selection of another RCS function, pressing the 'home' key or switch to another application) or device interaction (e.g. receiving call), any ongoing Group Chat shall stay active, i.e. the user shall stay in the group, continue to receive incoming new messages and resume at any point in time. The other participants shall not be made aware of this procedure.
- R6-21-3 A Group Chat shall end permanently, which means that no further messages or files can be exchanged in this conversation,
- R6-21-3-1 after an extended time of inactivity (no messages were exchanged, no participants were invited or removed) as defined by the RCS Service Provider.
- R6-21-3-2 upon network configuration if the number of remaining users in a Group Chat equals one (1).
- R6-21-4 Permanently closing the Group Chat shall be indicated to the last known remaining participants in the Conversation History similar to a Group Chat that was left by participant's intention.

**US6-22 As a user, I want to maintain multiple 1-to-1 Messaging and Group Chat conversations in parallel.**

- R6-22-1 Multiple parallel 1-to-1 Messaging and Group Chat conversations shall be supported.

**US6-23 As a user, I want to be able to leave a Group Chat Conversation at any point in time. After I left a Group Chat Conversation, the conversation thread is still visible in the list of my conversations, but I am neither able to send any messages to that Group nor do I receive any kind of updates from that Group.**

NOTE: Re-joining Group Chat conversation once left is only possible if the user is re-invited to that Group Chat.

- R6-23-1 Any participant in a Group Chat conversation shall be able to leave that Group Chat at any point in time.
- R6-23-2 Any participant who has left a Group Chat conversation shall no longer receive any new messages or updates to the participants list.
- R6-23-3 After a Group Chat participant has left, the Group Chat Conversation shall still be visible in the list of Conversations (if not manually deleted), containing any messages or participant list updates for the period of participation of the user.
- NOTE: It is expected that the user is able to see the content of the Group Chat conversation irrespectively whether the user left intentionally or was removed from the list of participants as a result of a Group Chat creator action (see R6-1-8).

- R6-23-4 Re-joining a previously left Group Chat Conversation shall be possible by the user being re-invited by another (still active) Group Chat participant.
- R6-23-5 Manually deleting a Group Chat conversation from the list of chat conversations automatically triggers leaving the Group Chat, i.e. the participant is removed from the list of Group Chat participants.
- NOTE: A user warning may be given by the device that the deletion of a Group Chat removes the participant from the Group Chat entirely.
- R6-23-6 Deleting one, more or all messages within a Group Chat conversation (without removing the Group Chat conversation thread from the list of conversations) does not trigger leaving the Group Chat.
- R6-23-7 Participants shall be automatically removed from the Group if the corresponding user account / subscription is no longer valid.
- NOTE: Details of the subscription validity are at the discretion of the individual RCS Service Provider.
- US6-24 As a user, I want to be able to answer any incoming voice or video call during a Group Chat conversation - and resume the Group Chat when the call is finished.**
- NOTE: During the Voice or Video Call, the user may make use of the Group Chat application.
- R6-24-1 The user shall be able to receive a voice call when actively engaged in a Group Chat conversation and when the voice call ends, the user interface should return to the Group Chat conversation.
- R6-24-2 The user shall be able to receive a video call when actively engaged in a Group Chat Conversation and when the video call ends, the user interface should return to the Group Chat conversation.
- US6-25 As a user, I want my Group Chat Messages backed up in a trusted and safe environment.**
- R6-25-1 The RCS Service Provider shall be able to store Group Chat Conversations on the network.
- NOTE 1: If the user has not been part of a Group Chat conversation from the very beginning, or left the Group Chat conversation while other Group Chat participants continued, only the part of the Group Chat Conversation between joining and leaving the Group Chat shall be stored.
- NOTE 2: Details of storage are at the individual RCS Service Provider discretion.
- US6-26 As a user, I want to restore my Group Chat Conversations (e.g. but not limited to, after wiping device or purchasing a new device).**
- R6-26-1 The user shall have the option to restore Group Chat conversations with the entire content (messages and files) from the network (e.g. in case of handset replacement or factory reset of the user's device).

**US6-27 As a user, I want the ability to share my current position or a selected location with any of my Groups from the messaging application.**

R6-27-1 The user shall have the ability to share positions or locations with all participants of a Group Chat conversation.

R6-27-2 Recipients participating in the Group Chat shall be able to receive any position or location in the Group Chat, irrespectively whether their RCS implementation supports the "Geolocation Push" service or not.

NOTE: Legacy mode may be provided by a link to an online map display or a 'screenshot' with map picture.

NOTE: Requirements defined under US5-26 detailing the service in addition to the above listed Group Chat specific requirements are valid accordingly.

**US6-28 As a user, I want to be made aware about creating multiple 1-to-1 messages or Group Chat Messages.**

R6-28-1 The user shall be made aware of the difference of Group Chat versus multiple 1-to-1 messages as described in 1-to-1 Messaging section 5 in relevant places of the implementation.

**US6-29 As a user, I would like to easily and quickly find messages in Group Chat conversations that are important to me.**

R6-29-1 All requirements specified under US5-29 shall be applicable for Group Chat conversations.

**US6-30 As a user, I would like to easily and quickly find Group Chat conversations that are important to me.**

R6-30-1 All requirements specified under US5-30 shall be applicable for Group Chat conversations as well.

**US6-31 As a user, I want to be able to report suspicious Group Chat conversations.**

R6-31-1 All requirements specified under US5-31, shall be applicable for Group Chat conversations.

**US6-32 As an RCS Service Provider, I would like to protect my users from suspicious messages in a Group Chat conversation.**

R6-32-1 All requirements specified under US5-32 shall be applicable for Group Chat conversations.

**US6-33 As a user, I want to avoid suspicious Group Chat Messages in my inbox.**

R6-33-1 All requirements specified under US5-33 shall be applicable for Group Chat conversations.

**US6-34 As a user, I want to be able to send a Reply Message in Group Chat conversations.**

R6-34-1 All requirements specified under US5-34 shall be applicable for Group Chat conversations.

R6-34-2 The Reply Message sent in the Group Chat shall be displayed to all participants.

**US6-35 As a user, I want to be able to receive a Reply Message in Group Chat conversations.**

R6-35-1 All requirements specified under US5-35 shall be applicable for Group Chat conversations.

**US6-36 As a user, I want to be able to send Reaction or multiple Reactions to any of my sent or received messages in Group Chat conversations.**

R6-36-1 All requirements specified under US5-36 shall be applicable for Group Chat conversations.

R6-36-2 The Reaction or multiple Reactions sent in the Group Chat shall be displayed to all participants.

**US6-37 As a user, I want to be able to receive a Reaction or multiple Reactions to any of my sent or received messages in Group Chat conversations.**

R6-37-1 All requirements specified under US5-37 shall be applicable for Group Chat conversations.

R6-37-2 The RCS client shall display all received Reactions and shall allow the recipient to view the sender of each Reaction.

R6-37-3 The RCS client should support aggregation of Reactions.

**US6-38 As a user, I want to be able to recall an RCS Message that I have sent in a Group Chat conversation.**

R6-38-1 All requirements specified under US5-38 shall be applicable for Group Chat conversations as well.

**US6-39 As a user, I want to know that an RCS Message has been recalled in a Group Chat conversation.**

R6-39-1 All requirements specified under US5-39 shall be applicable for Group Chat conversations.

**US6-40 As a user, I want to edit an RCS Message that I have sent in a Group Chat conversation.**

R6-40-1 All requirements specified under US5-40 shall be applicable for Group Chat conversations as well.

NOTE: If a participant has left the Group Chat, Edit Message might not be possible.

**US6-41 As a user, I want to receive an RCS Message that has been edited in a Group Chat conversation.**

R6-41-1 All requirements specified under US5-41 shall be applicable for Group Chat conversations as well.

**US6-42 As a user, I want to select and delete single or multiple RCS Messages that I have sent from my device and from all the participant's devices in a Group Chat conversation.**

R6-42-1 All requirements specified under US5-42 shall be applicable for Group Chat conversations.

NOTE: If a participant has left the Group Chat, Message deletion might not be possible for that participant.

**US6-43 As a user, I want to be able to see when an RCS Message that I received was deleted by the sender in a Group Chat conversation.**

R6-43-1 All requirements specified under US5-43 shall be applicable for Group Chat conversations.

**US6-44 As a user, I want to ensure that my messages are only read by me and the intended recipient(s) in a Group Chat conversation.**

R6-44-1 All requirements specified under US5-44 shall be applicable for Group Chat conversations.

R6-44-2 All requirements specified under US5-45 shall be applicable for Group Chat conversations.

**US6-45 As a user, I want to compose and send Rich Text Messages in my Group Chat conversations.**

R6-45-1 All requirements specified under US5-46 regarding the composition and sending of Rich Text Messages shall be applicable for Group Chat conversations, including the use of the Rich Text Formatting styles defined in Table 6 and the dedicated user interface for applying those styles.

R6-45-2 An RCS client shall only offer Rich Text Formatting styles to the user in a Group Chat that are supported by all recipients.

**US6-46 As a user, I want to receive and view Rich Text Messages in my Group Chat conversations.**

R6-46-1 All requirements specified under US5-47, regarding receiving and viewing a Rich Text Message, shall be applicable for Group Chat conversations.

**US6-47 As a user, I want to make or receive Group MIVCs.**

R6-47-1 All requirements under US5-48 shall apply.

NOTE: The handling of the Group MIVCs follows the requirements of MIVCs in a 1-to-1 Messaging conversation as described in US5-48 with the following refinements detailed below.

R6-47-2 If the RCS Service Provider configures multiple MIVC services, the RCS client shall select the first in the RCS Service Provider's preference of the MIVC services that all Group Chat participants are capable of.

- R6-47-3 In an incoming call screen, or incoming call notification of a Group MIVC the RCS client shall display the Group Chat icon, Group Chat subject, MIVC initiator contact name (or if absent MSISDN) and icon.
- R6-47-4 During an ongoing Group MIVC, the RCS client shall indicate that a Group MIVC is ongoing in the associated Group Chat conversation thread and in the list of conversations.
- R6-47-4-1 The RCS client shall allow Group Chat participants who are not already in the associated ongoing Group MIVC to join at any time before it terminates.
- R6-47-4-1-1* In addition to R5-12-5, the RCS client shall display the timestamp the user joined an ongoing call in the MIVC Call Logs.
- R6-47-4-1-2* During a Group MIVC, the RCS client shall show the timestamp of all Group Chat participants joining and leaving the call. The RCS client shall also display the timestamp all participants joined or left in the MIVC Call Logs.
- R6-47-5 If a new Group Chat participant is added to the Group Chat, their RCS client shall indicate that a Group MIVC is ongoing in the associated Group Chat conversation thread.
- R6-47-5-1 If a new Group Chat participant is added to a Group Chat but their RCS client does not support the MIVC technology of an ongoing Group MIVC, the RCS client shall not offer them the possibility to join the Group MIVC (e.g. the entry point is not shown).
- R6-47-5-1-1* The new Group Chat participant shall be informed of their ineligibility to join the MIVC in the same place that they are notified of the ongoing MIVC.
- R6-47-5-1-2* The ongoing Group MIVC shall be allowed to continue, but the RCS client shall not allow any new Group MIVCs once the call ends.
- R6-47-6 The RCS client shall not offer the possibility to add new Group Chat participants to an ongoing Group MIVC without the user first adding them to the associated Group Chat.
- R6-47-7 MIVCs shall have no more than 32 participants.
- R6-47-7-1 The RCS Service Provider shall allow a maximum of 32 participants in a Group MIVC.
- R6-47-7-2 In a Group Chat with more than 32 participants, the RCS client shall not offer the possibility to initiate a Group MIVC.
- R6-47-7-3 If a new Group Chat participant is added to a Group Chat that has more than 32 participants while a Group MIVC is ongoing, the RCS client of the added participant shall not offer them the possibility to join the Group MIVC.
- R6-47-7-3-1* The new Group Chat participant shall be informed of their ineligibility to join the MIVC in the same place that they are notified of the ongoing MIVC.

*R6-47-7-3-2* The ongoing Group MIVC shall be allowed to continue, but the RCS client shall not allow any new Group MIVCs once the call ends

R6-47-8 If a Group Chat participant leaves a Group Chat, they shall also be removed from the associated ongoing Group MIVC and they shall no longer be able to join the associated ongoing Group MIVC again.

R6-47-9 If a Group Chat participant is removed from a Group Chat while in an ongoing Group MIVC, they shall be allowed to complete the call.

R6-47-9-1 If removed Group Chat participants are the only participants left in the Group MIVC, the RCS client shall end the call.

R6-47-10 The RCS client of the participant who was removed/left from the Group Chat shall remove the ongoing Group MIVC indication in the associated Group Chat conversation thread.

R6-47-11 When a Group Chat participant in a Group MIVC leaves the call, their participation in the associated Group Chat is not affected.

R6-47-11-1 In addition to R5-12-5, the RCS client shall display the timestamp the Group Chat participant left an ongoing Group MIVC.

**US6-48 As a user, I want to know who is participating in a Group MIVC at any point in time.**

R6-48-1 Any Group Chat participant shall be able to see a list of other contacts participating in the Group MIVC.

R6-48-2 If a Group MIVC participant is not in the user's contact list, they shall be represented by the RCS Alias name (if available as per US5-15), in addition to their MSISDN.

R6-48-2-1 Representation of Alias names in Group MIVC or list of Group MIVC participants shall be visually differentiated from contact list matches, including clear wording that suggest the Alias name has not been verified, e.g. "+49171 1234567 (possibly "Alias")".

R6-48-3 If neither contact name nor RCS Alias is available, a Group MIVC participant shall be represented with their MSISDN in the Group MIVC.

R6-48-4 In the case where a Group Chat participant joins the Group MIVC, all other Group MIVC participants shall be informed appropriately.

R6-48-5 In the case where a Group Chat participant leaves the Group MIVC, all other Group MIVC participants shall be informed appropriately.

R6-48-6 If E2EE applies to a Group MIVC, the RCS clients shall encrypt and decrypt the RCS Alias.

## 6.3 Technical Information

### 6.3.1 Overview

The Group Chat service is provided based on the Group Chat technical enabler defined in section 3.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

### 6.3.2 Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service requirements

R6-49-1 For user story US6-1 the following definitions apply:

- The Group Chat service shall be offered to the user if the device configuration authorises the service as defined in section 3.2.4.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- For requirement R6-1-1, the procedures for initiation of a group chat and the conditions for the RCS client to select capable contacts are defined in section 3.2.4.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R6-1-1-1 shall be realised locally on the device based on the Chatbot role capability indication defined in section 2.6.1.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- For requirement R6-1-2, in alignment with the UX procedures, a new Group Chat shall be created as a separate session as specified in section 3.2.4.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] without reference to the ongoing 1-to-1 Chat conversation.
- R6-1-2-1 shall be realised locally on the device based on the Chatbot role capability indication defined in section 2.6.1.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R6-1-2-2 shall be realised locally on the device.
- For requirement R6-1-3, the procedures for a RCS client to handle the invitation to a Group Chat as defined in section 3.2.4.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] apply.
- R6-1-3-1 shall be realised locally on the device based on the Chatbot role capability indication defined in section 2.6.1.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- For requirement R6-1-4, the procedures for the management of the maximum number of participants applies as defined in section 3.2.4.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] for the initiation of a Group Chat.
- Requirement R6-1-5 for the restriction upon Group Chat creation shall be implemented as defined in section 3.2.4.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- For requirement of R6-1-5-1, the RCS Service Provider's conforming to the profile defined in this document shall choose to set the value of the minimum number of participants allowed in a Group Chat as defined in section 3.2.4.9.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] to either "2" or "1". For the handling of a Group Chat invitation where no invited participant accepts the invitation, the procedures of [GSMA PRD-RCC.11] apply.
- Requirements R6-1-6 and R6-1-7 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- For the requirements in R6-1-8, the procedures described in
  - section 3.2.4.12 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] apply for the handling of removal requests. The conference focus of the Messaging Server shall set the "Participant Removal policy" described in section 3.2.4.14 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] to "administrator only". The RCS client shall offer the option to remove a participant only if the RCS client's own user is assigned with the "administrator" role.
  - section 3.2.4.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] applies for the information sent to other participants.

- section 3.2.4.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] applies for the move of the administrator role to another participant. The Messaging Server shall set the "user role assignment policy" to "single administrator". If the "user role assignment policy" is set to "single administrator" and the RCS client's own user is assigned with the "administrator" role and the user requests the RCS client to leave the Group Chat, then the RCS client shall first invoke the UX procedure to ask the user whether the role shall be moved to another participant. If the user selects another participant to become the "administrator", then the RCS client shall invoke the procedure of the Group session data management to "move" the role to the selected participant. The RCS client shall process the request to leave the Group Chat only after the request to move the "administrator" role has been finished. If the RCS client is offline and the user is assigned to be the "administrator", then the RCS client shall not offer the user to leave the Group Chat, until it comes online again.

- R6-49-2 For requirement R6-2-1, the "subject" shall be handled at the time of initiation of a Group Chat via the procedure described in section 3.2.4.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The "icon" shall be assigned to the Group Chat via the Group session data management for icon management described in section 3.2.4.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The RCS client shall resize the Group Chat icon to have a maximum file size of 1 MBytes
- R6-49-3 The requirements R6-2-2 to R6-2-4 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R6-49-4 The requirements of R6-2-5 shall be implemented via the Group session data management for subject and icon management described in section 3.2.4.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] for change of icon and via the procedures for receiving of Group Chat participant and meta information described in section 3.2.4.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] for the distribution to Group Chat members. The RCS client shall resize the Group Chat icon to have a maximum file size of 1 MBytes.
- R6-49-5 Requirement R6-2-6 shall be realised locally on the device, using procedures defined in section 9.7.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16].
- R6-49-6 For requirement R6-3-1, to add participants, the procedure described in section 3.2.4.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] applies.
- R6-49-7 For R6-3-1-1, this shall be realised locally on the device based on the Chatbot role capability indication defined in section 2.6.1.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R6-49-8 For requirement R6-3-2, the determination of the maximum number of participants applies as defined in section 3.2.4.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] for an existing Group Chat.
- R6-49-9 For requirements R6-3-3 and R6-3-4, the recipient's capability to support the Chat service shall be treated as "service availability information" as defined in section 3.3.1 of this document.
- R6-49-10 Requirement R6-3-5 shall be implemented locally on the device.

- R6-49-11 Requirement R6-3-6 and its sub requirements shall be realised locally on the device, based on the capabilities defined in section 2.6.1.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07], and using the key exchange mechanisms defined in section 5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16], and Group operation procedures defined in section 9.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16].
- R6-49-12 For user story US6-4, the management of the Group Chat participants list shall be managed by the Messaging Server and the RCS client using the procedure described in section 3.2.4.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- The RCS Alias for Group Chat users described in requirements R6-4-3 and R6-4-4 shall be implemented as defined in section 2.5.3.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R6-49-13 Requirement R6-4-6 shall be realised locally on the device, using procedures defined in section 9.1.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16].
- R6-49-14 Requirement R6-4-7 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R6-49-15 Sub-requirement R6-4-7-1 shall be implemented as specified in section 2.3.2, (see R2-16-5 to R2-16-8).
- R6-49-16 For user story US6-5, the RCS client handling for invitation to a new Group Chat as described in section 3.2.4.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] applies. An RCS client being invited to a Group Chat via the procedure described in section 3.2.4.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07], shall use the value of the SIP Referred-By header as per the definition of section 2.5.2.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07], to indicate the originator of the invitation.
- R6-49-17 For the requirements of user story US6-6, in order to send text to a conversation while a Group Chat exists the RCS client shall send the message using this session. If no session exists, the RCS client shall restart the Group Chat as defined in section 3.2.4.10 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and send the message to it.
- R6-49-18 Requirement R6-6-3 shall be realised locally on the device. The RCS client shall use the group operation procedures defined in section 8 and 9 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16], and the capabilities defined in 2.6.1.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R6-49-19 The RCS client shall not implement client UI procedures to accept reception of messages or group chat invitations to fulfil the requirements of user story US6-7.
- R6-49-20 The requirements of user story US6-8, the Messaging Server shall implement the procedures for Store and Forward as described in section 3.2.4.15 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] with a duration of storage as per RCS Service Provider policy.
- R6-49-21 The implementation of the graphics in a Group Chat conversation in the requirements of US6-9 shall be implemented locally on the device considering the definitions of defined in Annex A.2 and A.3. For encryption/decryption of the graphics, the RCS client shall use the messaging procedures defined in section 9.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16].

- R6-49-22 For the realization of the requirements R6-10-1, the RCS client shall enforce the configured maximum message size of a Chat for sending messages as described in section 3.2.4.17 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R6-49-23 The requirement R6-10-2 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R6-49-24 For the realisation of the requirements in user story US6-11, the status indication for Group Chat Messages and File Transfer sent in the Group Chat are the same as defined for RCS 1-to-1 Chat Messages in section 5 and for files in section 7. When requesting, sending and receiving disposition notifications in a Group Chat, the RCS client shall respect the definitions of section 3.2.4.17 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R6-49-25 Notifications on delivery status information as defined in R6-11-2 shall be stored for offline users and forwarded in the Messaging Server as specified in section 3.2.4.15 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R6-49-26 Requirement R6-11-5 shall be realised locally on the device. The RCS client shall use the signing procedures defined in section 9.1.3 and 9.1.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16].
- R6-49-27 Requirement R6-11-6 shall be implemented based on the implementations of R5-5-7 and R7-13-6.
- R6-49-28 The requirements for US6-12 to display typing notifications is implemented same as for RCS 1-to-1 Chat via "isComposing" notification as defined in section 3.2.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R6-49-29 Requirement R6-12-1-1 shall be realised locally on the device.
- R6-49-30 The requirements for user stories US6-13 and US6-14 are implemented locally on the device.
- R6-49-31 Requirement R6-13-3 shall be implemented based on the implementations of R5-10-4 and R7-13-6.
- R6-49-32 The requirement of user story US6-15 is implemented locally on the device in alignment with the requirements of user story US6-2.
- R6-49-33 The requirement of user story US6-16 is implemented locally on the device.
- R6-49-34 The requirements of user story US6-17 shall be implemented locally on the device. The RCS client shall not apply any UI procedures for the acceptance of the delivery of single messages. To meet the requirements R6-17-3 and R6-17-4 the implementation of the Messaging Server shall conform to definitions of section 3.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R6-49-35 Requirement R6-17-5 shall be realised locally on the device. The RCS client shall use messaging procedures defined in section 9.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16].
- R6-49-36 Sending of Multimedia in a Group Chat, as defined in the requirements of user story US6-18, is done via the File Transfer defined in section 7 of this document. Transmission of File Transfer in a Group Chat shall follow the procedures defined in section 3.2.4 and 3.2.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

- R6-49-37 For the requirements in user story US6-19 the RCS client shall support the following procedure.
- It is the responsibility of the Messaging Server to deliver messages in the correct order, so the RCS client can rely on it when sorting messages. The RCS client shall interleave the sent and received messages in the chronological order.
  - After the RCS client has synchronised with the Common Message Store successfully, then messages shall be sorted in accordance with the time indicated in the CPIM DateTime header value received with message from the Common Message Store.
  - For the interleaving of sent and delivered messages, the RCS client shall respect the definitions of section 3.2.4.16 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] regarding support of direct delivery.
- R6-49-38 The requirements of user story US6-20 shall be implemented locally on the device. The Messaging Server shall apply processing of the CPIM DateTime header as described in section 3.2.4.17 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R6-49-39 The requirements R6-21-1, R6-21-2 and R6-21-4 shall be implemented locally on the device based on the Group Chat life cycle described in section 3.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R6-49-40 The requirement R6-21-3 to terminate a Group Chat after inactivity shall be implemented on the Messaging Server based on the procedure described in section 3.2.4.9.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R6-49-41 The requirements of user story US6-22 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R6-49-42 The requirements of user story US6-23 shall be implemented as defined in section 3.2.4.11 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- Subsequent invitations to a Group Chat which the user has left voluntarily shall be accepted by the RCS client in accordance with the definitions for invitation to a new Group Chat, see user story US6-5.
- R6-49-43 The RCS client implementation shall ensure that the Group Chat handling as defined in R6-23-5 initiates a request to the network to leave the Group Chat.
- R6-49-44 The requirement for automatic removal from the Group Chat defined in R6-23-7 shall be implemented via the procedure described in section 3.2.4.11 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R6-49-45 The requirements of user story US6-24 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R6-49-46 The requirements of user story US6-25 are implemented as defined in section 3.2.4.8 and 3.2.4.16 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and based on the definitions in section 9 of this document.
- R6-49-47 The implementation of user story US6-27 shall be based on Geolocation Push in a Group Chat as defined in section 3.2.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

- R6-49-48 The requirements of user story US6-28 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R6-49-49 For the implementation of US6-29 refer to the technical implementation of US5-29.
- R6-49-50 For the implementation of US6-30 refer to the technical implementation of US5-30.
- R6-49-51 For the implementation of US6-31 refer to the technical implementation of US5-31.
- R6-49-52 For the implementation of US6-32 refer to the technical implementation of US5-32.
- R6-49-53 For the implementation of US6-33 refer to the technical implementation of US5-33.
- R6-49-54 For the implementation of requirement R6-34-1 refer to the technical implementation of US5-34.
- R6-49-55 The implementation of requirement R6-34-2 shall be based on the procedures defined in sections 3.2.8.5 and 3.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R6-49-56 For the implementation of US6-35 refer to the technical implementation of US5-35.
- R6-49-57 For the implementation of requirement R6-36-1 refer to the technical implementation of US5-36.
- R6-49-58 The implementation of requirement R6-36-2 shall be based on the procedures defined in sections 3.2.8.5 and 3.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R6-49-59 For the implementation of requirement R6-37-1 refer to the technical implementation of US5-37.
- R6-49-60 The implementation of requirement R6-37-2 shall be based on the procedures defined in sections 3.2.8.5 and 3.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R6-49-61 Requirement R6-37-3 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R6-49-62 For the implementation of US6-38 refer to the technical implementation of US5-38.
- R6-49-63 For the implementation of US6-39 refer to the technical implementation of US5-39.
- R6-49-64 For the implementation of US6-40 refer to the technical implementation of US5-40.
- R6-49-65 For the implementation of US6-41 refer to the technical implementation of US5-41.
- R6-49-66 For the implementation of US6-42 refer to the technical implementation of US5-42.

- R6-49-67 For the implementation of US6-43 refer to the technical implementation of US5-43.
- R6-49-68 The requirements of US6-44 shall be realised locally on the device, using procedures defined in section 8.1 and 9.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16].
- R6-49-69 For the implementation of US6-45 refer to the technical implementation of US5-46.
- R6-49-70 For the implementation of US6-46 refer to the technical implementation of US5-47.
- R6-49-71 For requirement R6-47-1 refer to the technical implementation of US5-48.
- R6-49-72 Requirement R6-47-2 shall be implemented locally on the device aided by section 3.7.3 in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R6-49-73 Requirements R6-47-3 and R6-47-4 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R6-49-74 Requirement R6-47-5 and its subrequirements shall be implemented locally on the device aided by the procedures defined in section 3.7.5.5.7 and 3.7.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R6-49-75 Requirement R6-47-6 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R6-49-76 Requirements R6-47-7 and subrequirements R6-47-7-2, R6-47-7-3, R6-47-7-3-1, and R6-47-7-3-2 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R6-49-77 Requirement R6-47-7-1 shall be implemented by the RCS Service Provider.
- R6-49-78 Requirement R6-47-8 shall be implemented locally on the device aided by procedures in section 3.7.5.5.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R6-49-79 Requirements R6-47-9, R6-47-10, and R6-47-11 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R6-49-80 The requirements under user story US6-48 shall be implemented locally on the device aided by procedures in section 3.7.5.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R6-49-81 The RCS Alias for Group Chat users described in requirement R6-48-2 shall be implemented as defined in section 2.5.3.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

## 7 File Transfer

### 7.1 Description

File Transfer enables transferring files from one RCS device to one or more RCS devices. The main service entry points will be the Chat and Group Chat applications on the device, but there shall be other service entry points as well.

Compared to Universal Profile 2.0 and its subversions, Universal Profile 3.0 introduces the following:

- Support for E2EE

## 7.2 User Stories and Feature Requirements

**US7-1 As a user, I want to transfer files to Contacts and receive files from other RCS users.**

**As a user, I want to transfer and receive a file of any file format.**

**As a user I want to ensure that my files and related metadata is only read by me and the intended recipient(s).**

NOTE: Any file format can be selected and transferred, irrespective of the receiving device capabilities of representing the content in an appropriate way.

R7-1-1 If the originating device is offline, File Transfer cannot be sent from the device.

R7-1-1-1 The device implementation may allow the user to create an RCS File Transfer in that case.

R7-1-1-2 The File Transfer status is 'pending' and the A-Party user is informed about this status.

R7-1-1-3 The File Transfer shall be executed once the originating device is online again without further user interaction.

R7-1-1-4 When the originating device is offline (i.e. not registered for RCS), but data connectivity is available, MMS should be used to send the file when the MMS service is enabled by the RCS Service Provider for that device.

R7-1-2 Any RCS user shall be able to transfer a file to Contacts in their Contact List or by entering the contact's MSISDN

R7-1-3 File Transfer shall allow transfer of any files from a sending device to one or more recipients.

R7-1-4 File Transfer shall be capable of transferring exactly one file at a time.

NOTE: The user interface of a device may want to allow multiple selection of files for File Transfer and then process these files as separate File Transfer jobs.

R7-1-5 The following file types per content type shall be supported by any RCS device in the way that content can be generated by the user or displayed / replayed:

R7-1-5-1 Pictures in Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG) format

R7-1-5-2 Panoramic Photos (as guidelines described in Annex A.3)

R7-1-5-3 Pictures in animated Graphics Interchange Format (GIF) format:

*R7-1-5-3-1* When opening a Messaging conversation thread containing a GIF file transfer and if automatic playing of GIFs is enabled by the user (see US18-21), this file shall be animated automatically and run once when visible.

*R7-1-5-3-2* After that, the user is able to trigger the animation again whenever clicking on the object (a visual indication that the animation can be retriggered should be associated with the file).

R7-1-5-4 Audio files in MP3 format

*R7-1-5-4-1* Audio files in MP4 format

R7-1-5-5 Video Files in MPEG4 format

*R7-1-5-5-1* When opening a Messaging conversation thread containing a video File Transfer and if automatic playing of video(s) is enabled by the user (see US18-21), this file shall be animated automatically without sound and run once when visible.

*R7-1-5-5-2* After that, the user is able to trigger the playing again whenever clicking on the object (a visual indication that the animation can be retriggered should be associated with the file).

*R7-1-5-5-3* The RCS client shall provide the user with the option to enable sound.

R7-1-5-6 vCards in .vcf format (for details see US7-17)

R7-1-5-7 Ddocuments in PDF format

R7-1-6 Any RCS device may support (generation / replay) other formats in addition to the formats listed in R7-1-5.

*R7-1-6-1* The user shall be informed of the risks when sending or receiving file formats that are neither considered downloadable (i.e. sufficiently safe to allow their download without user confirmation, see R7-1-6-2 and R7-1-6-3) nor unsafe (i.e. they cannot be exchanged using File Transfer, see R7-1-6-5).

NOTE: In R7-15-3-4 additional requirements are provided for the handling on the recipient side of a file that is considered neither downloadable (see R7-1-6-2 and R7-1-6-3) nor unsafe (see R7-1-6-5), disabling automatic acceptance for such files.

*R7-1-6-2* The file formats listed in R7-1-5 shall be considered downloadable formats.

NOTE: For a file that is considered to be of a downloadable format, no file format specific requirements apply related to the download (i.e. the file would be transferred without warnings on the file format and can be automatically accepted at the recipient side).

NOTE : No file format can be considered safe by nature. Therefore, additional validation of the actual file sent needs to be done by the RCS client (see e.g. R7-1-9-1) and if E2EE does not apply, the network, checking the file for known exploits.

*R7-1-6-3* An implementation may consider further file formats beyond those listed in R7-1-5 as downloadable, e.g. text files.

*R7-1-6-4* The user shall not be allowed to send file formats that are considered unsafe (see R7-1-6-5) and shall be informed that File Transfer cannot be used to exchange such files.

*R7-1-6-5* At least executables and applications packages shall be considered unsafe formats.

NOTE: R7-1-6-1 to R7-1-6-5 intend to restrict usage of RCS File Transfer as a distribution channel for malicious content, (see also [GSMA PRD-FS.41]).

NOTE: R7-1-6-1 to R7-1-6-5 in combination with R7-15-1-6 and R7-15-3-4 results in the following end-to-end behaviour for files in categorised differently at sender and recipient side (given that both sides use their own classification and act independently of each other):

		Recipient considers file as		
		Downloadable	Neither downloadable nor unsafe	Unsafe
Sender considers file as	Downloadable	File is transferred without warnings on either side and can be automatically accepted at recipient side if allowed by operator configuration and user settings	File is transferred without warnings on sender side. The recipient needs to manually accept the file (R7-15-3-4) and a warning is presented on it being potentially unsafe (R7-1-6-1)	File is transferred without warnings on sender side. The recipient cannot download the file (R7-15-1-6).
	Neither downloadable nor unsafe	Sender user is presented a warning when sending the file (R7-1-6-1). No warning is provided to the recipient and the file is automatically accepted if auto-accept applies based on operator configuration and user settings	Sender user is presented a warning when sending the file (R7-1-6-1). The recipient needs to manually accept the file (R7-15-3-4) and a warning is presented on it being potentially unsafe (R7-1-6-1)	Sender user is presented a warning when sending the file (R7-1-6-1). The recipient cannot download the file (R7-15-1-6).
	Unsafe	Sender user informed that they cannot send the file (R7-1-6-4)		

**Table 15: End-to-end behaviour following from independent actions and classification of file formats on sender and recipient sides**

R7-1-7 If the recipient is not RCS capable, but the originating device is connected to RCS, the originating device shall use one of the MNO configurable options below:

R7-1-7-1 File Transfer legacy support:

**R7-1-7-1-1** The file shall be uploaded and the sending device creates a SMS containing the link that allows the recipient to download the file with minimal user interaction. This link shall be accompanied by a 'cover note' in local language that conveys the following message: "You have received a file that originates from the sender as indicated. If you wish to download the file, please click the link:". The link shall use the format of a "short link" that allows the user to identify the sender as their MNO which is a trusted party. (If technically required, it might be the originating network identifier as well).

**R7-1-7-2 MMS**

**NOTE:** In no case, will the RCS client attempt to send RCS to non-RCS users and wait for the fail result.

**R7-1-8** The user shall be able to change the proposed File Transfer service on a per file and on a general basis.

**NOTE:** Details of this function are specified in section US18-14.

**R7-1-9** When the sender's and recipient(s)' RCS client have enabled E2EE, the RCS client shall encrypt the file name, file content type, and file content.

**R7-1-9-1** When the sender's and recipient(s)' RCS client have enabled E2EE, the recipient's RCS client(s) shall implement mechanisms to reduce the risk of compromise originating from any file. This shall include validation of the file contents and, if applicable, the icon to prevent it from exploiting known vulnerabilities before rendering it and/or allowing the user to open/play the file.

**NOTE:** The means to do this validation are left to RCS client implementation.

**R7-1-9-2** If attempts to exploit vulnerabilities are detected, the RCS client shall remove the file and should indicate to the user that a suspicious file was received.

**R7-1-9-3** If automatic download applies (see R7-15-3) and attempts to exploit vulnerabilities are detected, a New Incoming Event Notification should not be generated and a File 'Displayed' notification (see R7-4-1-6) shall not be sent.

**R7-1-9-4** If an RCS client cannot validate a file for whatever reason (e.g. insufficient memory), the file should not be rendered, and a warning should be shown to the user.

**NOTE:** Subject to applicable regulation, RCS client providers are recommended to share information or aggregate information on detected attempts to exploit vulnerabilities with appropriate parties (e.g. other RCS client providers, GSMA's T-ISAC, in country centralised reporting, MNOs who might be contacted by their subscribers, etc.) and for those parties to share such information with RCS client providers. The means to do such sharing are not related to the RCS implementation and thus out of scope of this specification.

R7-1-10 In case of Media Share, the RCS client should send a file format that is supported by the recipient.

**US7-2 As a user, I want to ensure that my files reach their destination as reliably and quickly as possible.**

R7-2-1 If File Transfer cannot be instantly delivered by RCS, the B-Party network should apply Delivery Assurance.

R7-2-1-1 The B-Party network shall notify the A-Party network and RCS client that the file delivery is ensured by the B-party network.

R7-2-2 If the A-Party RCS client is made aware that "CFS" is available and a file is not confirmed to be delivered within an MNO configurable period of time via RCS File Transfer, the A-Party user (who is registered on RCS) shall be informed and have the opportunity to notify the recipient with a download link based on SMS.

NOTE: This requirement and the sub-requirements apply to both encrypted and non-encrypted files.

R7-2-2-1 The user shall have the option to automate the user interaction for Client Fallback to SMS link.

The following options shall be selectable:

- Always ask
- Never ask and always send as SMS link
- Never ask and never send as SMS link

R7-2-2-1-1 The user shall have the option to view and/ or change this decision at any point in the RCS settings section.

NOTE: Steps 3 (R7-2-2-2-3 below) to Step 4b (R7-2-2-2-5 below) are only presented to the user if the device is configured to "Always Ask" and would be automatically processed accordingly if the device is configured to "Never Ask and always send as SMS".

R7-2-2-2 Details of how and when the revocation of the RCS link and "Send as SMS link" procedure shall be applied:

R7-2-2-2-1 Step 1: User A has created a File Transfer and the file has been sent.

R7-2-2-2-2 Step 2: Delivery for that File Transfer has not yet been confirmed within an MNO configurable period of time. If the A-Party device should have been offline during this period, the following Step 3 shall not be triggered unless the A-Party device was 'online' for an MNO configurable time after reconnection, to allow update of File Transfer status notifications.

R7-2-2-2-3 Step 3: The user is presented with a message "Your File Transfer has been successfully uploaded, but the notification for the recipient could not be delivered instantly. Do you want to change to an SMS notification?" and a confirmation request for the user to select (yes / no) input.

- If during the display of that message, before user confirmation, a delivery notification for that File Transfer comes in, the user request for “Send as SMS link” shall be removed, and the original File Transfer shall be indicated ‘delivered’ (or ‘downloaded’, if applicable).

*R7-2-2-2-4* Step 4a: If the user selects “Yes”, then

- a revocation for the original download link notification shall be triggered,
- the original File Transfer (thumbnail element) shall be removed from the conversation history once the revocation has been confirmed successful,
- an SMS link shall be sent in the background.
- A second File Transfer is generated in the A-party RCS client as a thumbnail of the original File (consistent behaviour compared to Chat / SMS experience), with the sending service indication “SMS”.
- If the user has sent more than one File or message, then the decision to send as SMS (link) shall apply to all events in ‘sent’ or ‘pending’ status.
- Failure of one of these steps shall not mean that the other steps should not be executed. This may lead to duplicated File Transfer access messages on the recipient’s device.
- File Transfer latching shall be applied (as described in R7-2-2-3).

*R7-2-2-2-5* Step 4b: If the user selects “No”, a revocation of the original download link notification shall not be triggered and an SMS link shall not be sent.

- The File Transfer status is updated according to the delivery status.
- The RCS File Transfer notification to the recipient user will stay in the store & forward of the terminating network (according to terminating MNO policies).

*R7-2-2-3* File transfer latching: When sending a File to a known CFS enabled contact, a Universal Profile RCS client shall by default propose to use FT. If during the last FT exchange the RCS client has applied CFS (SMS link) and there has been no indication since that the contact is online again (e.g. capability exchange or use of another RCS service), SMS link shall be used as the default sending service.

*R7-2-2-4* SMS link shall also apply if the RCS client has already fallen back to SMS for text messaging: subsequent File transfers shall continue to be sent as SMS or SMS link until RCS availability is confirmed (e.g. capability exchange or use of another RCS service).

*US7-3* **As a user, I want to transfer a file from multiple service entry points on my device.**

R7-3-1 There shall be a number of service entry points to File Transfer, including, but not limited to, 1-to-1 Chat, Group Chat, Contact Card, and Gallery.

R7-3-2 The user shall have the option to send files to multiple 1-to-1 contacts, as described in requirements of US5-28.

**US7-4 As a user, I want to see the status of any file I sent (including those which have not been delivered (yet)).**

R7-4-1 For A Party, the following File Transfer states shall be supported

R7-4-1-1 File Transfer 'Pending' – Transfer of the file has been triggered but not actually started (e.g. queuing on device).

R7-4-1-2 File Transfer 'In Progress' – File Transfer started but not completed.

*R7-4-1-2-1* The progress of sending the file shall be indicated to the user.

R7-4-1-3 File Transfer 'Cancelled' – the sender has cancelled the File Transfer during the File Transfer 'In Progress'.

R7-4-1-4 File 'Sent' - transmission of the File Transfer request has been successfully completed.

R7-4-1-5 File 'Delivered' – the file has been successfully delivered to the recipient's device.

*R7-4-1-5-1* For pictures, file 'Delivered' shall be reported whenever the preview thumbnail has been successfully delivered to the recipient's device. If the entire file has been pushed to the device without a preview-thumbnail (e.g. in case of auto-download), then its arrival on the recipient's device shall trigger the file 'Delivered' status notification.

*R7-4-1-5-2* For audio messages and other file types, the file 'Delivered' status shall be triggered when the recipient's device has been informed there is a file available for download.

NOTE: It is important not to use the confirmation of full file download to trigger 'Delivered' as, in case of auto-download set to 'off' by the user and Delivery Assurance, this could lead to duplicates.

*R7-4-1-5-3* The A-Party user shall know whether to expect a 'Delivered' notification for a File Transfer or other restrictions that are caused by Delivery Assurance application.

R7-4-1-6 File 'Displayed' - the content of the file was brought to the user's attention by display of the file transfer notification in the Messaging conversation thread on the active screen.

*R7-4-1-6-1* 'Displayed' notifications are not available for legacy support and Delivery Assurance cases. The originating RCS client shall be made aware and the user shall be made aware of the reduced feature set of legacy support, similar to missing 'Displayed' notification in 1-to-1 Chat.

*R7-4-1-6-2* As per US18-7 and the related requirements, the user shall have the option to disable sending the feedback that the file was displayed.

*R7-4-1-7* File Transfer 'Failed'- the expected outcome of the operation could not be confirmed by the network (In this case: file 'Sent', file 'Delivered' or file 'Displayed' status notifications have not been received) and the device does not attempt to send the message again).

*R7-4-2* When a 'Failed' status notification occurs, sending the message again may be triggered manually by the user. If the sending device is offline at the time a notification is received, notifications shall be stored on the network and forwarded once the sending device is online again.

*R7-4-3* When all Group Chat participants' RCS clients, or RCS clients in a 1-to-1 conversation, support E2EE, the RCS clients shall ensure that File Transfer states cannot be modified.

*R7-4-4* If a Push Notification Mechanism is used, the A-Party RCS client shall present the File 'Delivered' and 'Displayed' status to the user only upon actual retrieval of these File statuses from the RCS Service Provider.

*R7-4-4-1* The requirements R2-3-1 to R2-3-4 shall be applicable for the Push Notification.

*US7-5* **As a user, I want the option to resize pictures before transferring the file, in order to limit transfer volume, memory need and transfer time.**

NOTE: "Resize" means changing the picture size to either a high, medium and low size of the picture.

*R7-5-1* Selecting a picture file format that can be rendered by the sending device shall offer the user the option to resize the picture to smaller file size in order to save memory, network load and transfer time. "Resize" means changing the picture resolution.

*R7-5-2* The user shall have the option to configure the image resizing feature as described in US18-9 and the related requirements.

NOTE: In most cases, users are aware of the use of the picture on recipient side, for instance whether it shall be displayed on small screens only, or whether it may be printed on large scale. This feature provides the user with an option to adopt to these cases.

*US7-6* **As a user, I want the option to resize videos before transferring the file, in order to limit the transfer volume, the size of storage needed and the time to transfer the file.**

*R7-6-1* On selecting a video file, the user shall have the option to resize the video resolution to a smaller file size in order to save memory, network load and transfer time. The user shall see what the file size would be after that resizing option is applied.

*US7-7* **As a user, I do not want to perceive a restriction in file sizes that I want to transfer.**

R7-7-1 The RCS Service Provider shall set the File Transfer limit to 100MB.

R7-7-2 The RCS Service Provider shall be able to configure a warning threshold value. When a user attempts to transfer a file larger than this value, auto-acceptance is not possible.

**US7-8 As a user, I want to transfer a file to multiple users at a time within a Group Chat.**

R7-8-1 File Transfer within a Group Chat shall transfer the file to all participants of the Group Chat.

R7-8-2 When the participants' RCS clients have enabled E2EE, the RCS client shall encrypt the file name, file content type, and file content.

NOTE: The sender side shall only send the file once over the network in this case.

**US7-9 As a user, I want to be able to cancel files while the sending process has not been completed yet.**

R7-9-1 The device shall provide the user with the option to cancel a File Transfer while the file is still in the process of being sent on the originating leg.

NOTE: Once the File Transfer on the originating leg is completed, it is not possible for the sender to stop the process of File Transfer.

**US7-10 As a user, I want to transfer a file to multiple users at one time from the gallery or a file browser.**

R7-10-1 The Operator Messaging Service selection shall be made based on capabilities of the participants and cannot be determined before the participants are selected.

R7-10-2 To prevent Spam distribution, the RCS Service Provider shall be able to limit the list of recipients.

R7-10-2-1 The RCS Service Provider shall be able to set the possibility of unlimited participants.

R7-10-3 If the user selection of recipients does include one or more contacts not known to be RCS capable and the sender's RCS client has not enabled E2EE, the file shall be delivered based on RCS Service Provider configuration:

R7-10-3-1 The file shall be uploaded to the RCS File Transfer server and

*R7-10-3-1-1* The File Transfer is carried out as multiple 1-to-1 File Transfers.

*R7-10-3-1-2* The File Transfer is visible in existing or to be set up 1-to-1 Chat conversations with each recipient.

*R7-10-3-1-3* For recipients who are RCS capable, RCS File Transfer shall be used to deliver the file.

*R7-10-3-1-4* For recipients who are not RCS capable, the network shall generate a "short link" that allows the user to identify the MNO that provides the download link as a trusted source. This link shall be

accompanied by a 'cover note' in local language that conveys the following message: "You have received a file that originates from the sender as indicated. If you wish to download the file, please click the link:"

#### R7-10-3-2 MMS

R7-10-4 If all of the selected contacts are RCS capable and the sender's RCS client has not enabled E2EE, the user shall have the option to send the file as either RCS File Transfer in a Group Chat or multiple 1-to-1 File Transfers.

R7-10-4-1 The file shall be transferred as RCS File Transfer in a Group Chat if the user selected the option to send the file in a Group Chat.

R7-10-4-2 The file shall be sent as multiple 1-to-1 File Transfers if the user selected the option to send the file as multiple 1-to-1 File Transfers.

R7-10-4-3 Default action of sending the file is subject to a user setting, as described in requirements of US18-8.

R7-10-5 If the sender's RCS client has enabled E2EE, the following requirements shall apply:

R7-10-5-1 If the user selection of recipients does include one or more contacts not known to be RCS capable, and none of the RCS capable contacts' RCS clients has enabled E2EE, the file shall be delivered based on R7-10-3.

R7-10-5-2 If the user selection of recipients does include one or more contacts not known to be RCS capable, and at least one of the RCS capable contacts' RCS clients has enabled E2EE, the file shall be delivered based on:

*R7-10-5-2-1* For contacts who do not have E2EE enabled, the sender's RCS client shall deliver the file based on R7-10-3.

*R7-10-5-2-2* For contacts who have enabled E2EE, the sender's RCS client shall upload the encrypted file name, encrypted file content type, and encrypted file content to the RCS File Transfer server. Requirements R7-10-3-1-1, R7-10-3-1-2, and R7-10-3-1-3 shall apply for encrypted File Transfers.

R7-10-5-3 If all the selected contacts are RCS capable, and none of the RCS capable contacts have enabled E2EE, the sender's RCS client shall deliver the file based on R7-10-4.

R7-10-5-4 If all of the selected contacts are RCS capable, and at least one the RCS capable contacts have enabled E2EE but not all, and if the user selected the option to send the file in a Group Chat, the sender's RCS client shall transfer the file as an unencrypted RCS File Transfer in a Group Chat.

R7-10-5-5 If all the selected contacts are RCS capable, and all the RCS capable contacts have enabled E2EE, and if the user selected the option to send the file in a Group Chat, the sender's RCS client shall upload the encrypted file name, encrypted file content type, and encrypted file content to the RCS File Transfer server and send the file as an RCS File Transfer in a Group Chat.

R7-10-5-6 If all the selected contacts are RCS capable, and at least one the RCS capable contacts has enabled E2EE, and if the user selected the option to send the file in multiple 1-to-1 File Transfers, the file shall be transferred as:

*R7-10-5-6-1* For contacts who have not enabled E2EE, the sender's RCS client shall transfer the file as RCS File Transfer.

*R7-10-5-6-2* For contacts who have enabled E2EE, the sender's RCS client shall upload the encrypted file name, encrypted file content type, and encrypted file content to the RCS File Transfer server; and send in multiple 1-to-1 File Transfers.

**US7-11 As a user, I want to transfer a file with my Contact(s) even when they are temporarily offline (e.g. device switched off).**

R7-11-1 In case Delivery Assurance is implemented (CFS or NFS), store and forward may not be applied or only applied temporarily and the request for delivery may be forwarded instantly according to the rules defined for File Transfer Delivery Assurance.

R7-11-2 If a user attempts to download a file that has expired from the network storage, they shall be informed that the file is no longer available.

NOTE: This requirement relates to the store & forward feature.

**US7-12 As an RCS Service Provider, I want to limit how long a file is available on the network for offline users.**

R7-12-1 The RCS Service Provider shall be able to define the network storage time for File Transfers that have not been downloaded yet.

NOTE: This requirement relates to the store & forward feature.

**US7-13 As a user, I want the device to notify me about new incoming files in a similar way to new incoming messages. I want notifications of rapidly sequenced incoming Chat Messages intelligibly aggregated and counted.**

R7-13-1 On receiving a file or preview thumbnail, the user shall be notified.

R7-13-2 Notifications for File Transfer shall be aggregated similar to Chat Messages as described in US5-10 and related requirements.

R7-13-3 For audio notifications of a new File Transfer request, device settings shall prevail.

R7-13-4 Rapid sequence of incoming File Transfer requests and Chat Messages in one Chat Conversation shall be consolidated into one audible notification per Chat Conversation. Visual notifications are not affected.

R7-13-5 The visual notification for an incoming File Transfer shall be permanently removed from the notification centre bar, once the conversation thread with the file or thumbnail preview has been opened.

NOTE: Independently of whether the user has clicked the notification or has accessed the conversation thread from the messaging application.

R7-13-6 If a Push Notification Mechanism is used, the RCS client shall retrieve the new File Transfer from the RCS Service Provider before notifying the user as per R7-13-1.

R7-13-6-1 The requirements R2-3-1 to R2-3-4 shall be applicable for the Push Notification.

**US7-14 As a user, I want to receive incoming files within a new or existing Chat or Group Chat Conversation.**

**As a user, I want sent and received files to be part of the Chat or Group Chat conversation thread in similar order and appearance of Chat Messages, but representing the transferred content.**

**As a user, I want to view incoming files within E2EE Chat or Group Chat Conversations.**

R7-14-1 Incoming files shall be displayed within a new or existing 1-to-1 Messaging conversation.

R7-14-2 Files shall be threaded in the conversation as an event similar to messages. The same ruling for order of messages as specified in '1-to-1 Messaging' and 'Group Chat', shall be applied to files.

R7-14-3 1-to-1 Messaging or Group Chat conversations shall be sorted descending according to the time stamp of the last action (e.g., but not limited to, a received File Transfer, Audio Message or Geolocation Push) within the conversation (i.e. the conversation with the latest event timestamp shall be on top of the list).

R7-14-4 1-to-1 Messaging or Group Chat conversations with unread events (any event that is received within the 1 to 1 Messaging conversation, including, but not limited to, Chat Messages, received files, received Geolocation Push, received Audio Messages) shall be marked accordingly.

R7-14-5 When the RCS client receives an encrypted file, it shall decrypt the file name, file content type, and file content.

**US7-15 As a user, I want to see incoming files as a thumbnail preview (or generic icon if content cannot be rendered on a receiving device) including file size indication.**

**As a user, I want to trigger file download to my device by selecting the thumbnail preview.**

**As a user, I want to be in control of the acceptance of the File Transfer (individually or for all File Transfer events).**

R7-15-1 In case "File Transfer Auto-Accept" is set to off:

R7-15-1-1 The incoming File Transfer presents a thumbnail preview of the file, including file size, on the receiving device first.

R7-15-1-2 The thumbnail preview shall be a preview of the actual picture (if the file type is a picture in a format that can be rendered by the receiving device), or a file type specific icon

NOTE: There shall be file type specific icons at minimum for standard RCS content types for Contact Card, Audio Messaging and Geolocation Push or a generic icon.

- R7-15-1-3 Selection of the preview icon on the receiving device shall trigger the download of the full file to the user's device.
- R7-15-1-4 The user shall have the option to delete the thumbnail preview without downloading the content.
- R7-15-1-5 A "download all" option may be available to trigger the download of all the content of a displayed conversation history that is not considered unsafe.
- R7-15-1-6 For File Formats that are considered unsafe (see R7-1-6-4 and R7-1-6-5), the option to download the file shall not be available and the user shall be informed that the content cannot be downloaded.
- NOTE: For an overview on how this recipient behaviour interacts with the behaviour defined for the sender side, see Table 15.
- R7-15-2 On the B-Party RCS client, if a File Transfer download link was delivered using Delivery Assurance, the link shall not be displayed in plain text but an icon shall represent the link to ensure a user experience as close as possible to the full RCS experience.
- R7-15-2-1 Handling of the file, including display of a picture, should be managed by the RCS application. It should be avoided, if technically possible, to change the application and e.g. open a browser.
- R7-15-2-2 The file size shall be visible to the B-Party user before the download.
- R7-15-2-3 The B-Party user shall be informed accordingly, if the file download is not possible due to missing connectivity.
- R7-15-2-4 The B-Party RCS client shall visually differentiate between File Transfer and Geolocation Push by using different icons.
- R7-15-2-5 The B-Party RCS client should visually differentiate between different file types (e.g. known formats of picture, audio, music and video) by using different icons.
- R7-15-2-6 Once the B-Party device is online again, it shall automatically download the content from the server if the user has enabled File Transfer auto-download in the user settings.
- R7-15-2-7 If auto-download of the File Transfer cannot be performed, the user shall be prompted to download the file.
- R7-15-2-8 If the File Transfer content is a picture that can be rendered by the B-Party device, the generic icon in the chat conversation with A-party shall be replaced with a thumbnail view of the actual picture after download.
- R7-15-2-9 The B-Party RCS client may offer functionality that allows the http-link to be seen in plain text by the user, e.g. in a 'Details' menu of the message.
- R7-15-2-10 If the recipient of the link is a legacy RCS device, then the Uniform Resource Locator (URL) should be in a format that allows the user to see that the link comes from their RCS Service Provider, which is a trusted party. (If technically required, it might be the originating network identifier as well). This link shall be accompanied by a 'cover note' in local language

that conveys the following message: "You have received a file that originates from the sender as indicated. If you wish to download the file, please click the link:"

NOTE: "Legacy RCS device" in this context is an RCS enabled device which does not convert a Delivery Assurance FT link to an icon.

R7-15-2-11 HTTP links received as content of a Chat Message (not in the context of Delivery Assurance) shall be displayed in plain text format.

R7-15-3 In case File Transfer Auto-accept is set to on:

R7-15-3-1 The file is automatically downloaded in its entirety via cellular bearer if the file size is below a threshold defined by the RCS Service Provider and can be accessed from the Chat Conversation.

R7-15-3-2 If the file size is equal or above the threshold defined by the RCS Service Provider and the device is connected via cellular bearer, then the file shall not be automatically downloaded but manual confirmation as described in R7-15-1 and subsequent sub requirements shall apply.

R7-15-3-3 If the device is connected via Wi-Fi, then the file is always downloaded in its entirety without manual user interaction.

R7-15-3-4 If the file format is not considered downloadable (see also R7-1-6-1 to R7-1-6-3), the file shall never be automatically downloaded and manual confirmation as described in R7-15-1 and subsequent sub requirements shall always apply, even when connected via Wi-Fi.

NOTE: For an overview on how this recipient behaviour interacts with the behaviour defined for the sender side, see Table 15.

R7-15-4 The RCS Service Provider shall have the option to set the default value for "File Transfer Auto Accept" via the device provisioning process.

R7-15-5 The user shall have the option to select or deselect "File Transfer Auto-Accept" (see US18-8).

**US7-16 As a user, I want to have a visible notification about the status of received files.**

R7-16-1 File Transfer shall support status notifications per individual file (recipient device):

R7-16-1-1 In case of auto accept off- thumbnail preview received – indication that a file is waiting for download trigger on a receiving network.

R7-16-1-2 File Transfer in progress on receiving device – file transfer started but not completed.

R7-16-1-3 Cancelled – the recipient shall have the option to cancel the File Transfer during the File Transfer process.

R7-16-1-4 File downloaded.

- R7-16-1-5 File Transfer failed – File Transfer could not be confirmed successfully completed by the network and the RCS client does not attempt to retrieve the file any further. (The user may be able to manually re-trigger File Transfer and resume from where the File Transfer failed).

**US7-17 As a user, I want to transfer one or multiple Contact's/Contacts' information from the Contact List to other RCS users.**

- R7-17-1 Selecting "Send Contact" from a Contact Card shall send the Contact details in vcf-format to a recipient that shall be selected.

- R7-17-2 When sending Contact Card(s) from service entry points listed in R7-3-1, the device shall include one or multiple contact cards in a single vcf-format file and send it to the destination recipient(s).

- R7-17-2-1 The RCS client shall encrypt the Contact Card(s) when recipient(s) have enabled E2EE

- R7-17-3 Devices shall be capable to render vCard files in .vcf format and offer to store received Contacts in the device contact list.

- R7-17-3-1 In case multiple contact cards are sent in one vcf-format file, the receiving device shall be capable to render all the contacts in that file, and permit the recipient user to select one or more of them to check details, edit, store, forward, delete or perform other operations.

- R7-17-3-2 When the RCS client receives encrypted Contact Card(s), it shall decrypt them.

**US7-18 As a user, I want to be able to resume interrupted File Transfers**

NOTE: On sending and receiving side.

- R7-18-1 If a File Transfer has been interrupted on the sending or receiving side (e.g. in case of, but not limited to, if device lost radio coverage), the File Transfer shall resume automatically from the point of interruption once the required conditions have been restored (e.g. device is back in radio coverage).

- R7-18-2 If the recipient's device does not have enough storage space to download the full file,

- R7-18-2-1 A notification shall be provided to the recipient before downloading the full file.

- R7-18-2-2 Storage space shall be freed up manually by the recipient before download attempt shall be possible.

- R7-18-2-3 The user shall have the option to re-start the file download as long as the RCS Service Provider storage time (as in R7-12-1) has not expired.

**US7-19 As an RCS Service Provider, I want to be able to limit the size of the files that are transferred.**

- R7-19-1 If the sending device attempts to send a file larger than the limit for File Transfer, the A party shall be notified that the file exceeds the size limit supported by the service.

**US7-20 As a user, I want to administrate File Transfers in Chat and Group Chat Conversations intuitively.**

R7-20-1 If received or sent files are automatically stored on a device or online repository (e.g. an RCS gallery on the device picture gallery), then deleting the File Transfer events from the conversation thread does not automatically delete any files from this repository. In case the user permanently wants to delete this content, separate user action is required (as per individual device operation).

**US7-21 As a user, I want my files backed up by the RCS Service Provider in a trusted and safe environment.**

R7-21-1 The RCS Service Provider shall be able to store files.

NOTE: Details of storage are at the individual RCS Service Provider discretion.

R7-21-2 In case the RCS Service Provider deletes stored files (e.g. for capacity limitation), these files shall not be deleted from local user equipment.

**US7-22 As a user, I want to restore my sent and received files.**

R7-22-1 The user shall have the option to restore transferred files from the network storage (e.g. in case of handset replacement).

**US7-23 As a user, I want to be able to report suspicious conversations that include File Transfers.**

R7-23-1 All requirements specified under US5-31 shall be applicable for File Transfer.

R7-23-2 The RCS client shall remove the reported file.

**US7-24 As an RCS Service Provider, I would like to protect my users from suspicious File Transfers.**

R7-24-1 All requirements specified under US5-32 shall be applicable for File Transfer.

**US7-25 As a user, I want to avoid suspicious File Transfers in my inbox.**

R7-25-1 All requirements specified under US5-33 shall be applicable for File Transfer.

**US7-26 As a user, I want to be able to send a Reply Message to any of my sent or received files.**

R7-26-1 All requirements specified under US5-34 and US6-34 shall be applicable for File Transfer.

**US7-27 As a user, I want to be able to receive a Reply Message for the sent or received file.**

R7-27-1 All requirements specified under US5-35 and US6-35 shall be applicable for File Transfer.

**US7-28 As a user, I want to be able to send a Reaction or multiple Reactions to any of my sent or received files.**

R7-28-1 All requirements specified under US5-36 and US6-36 shall be applicable for File Transfer.

**US7-29 As a user, I want to be able to receive a Reaction or multiple Reactions to any of my sent or received files.**

R7-29-1 All requirements specified under US5-37 and US6-37 shall be applicable for File Transfer.

**US7-30 As a user, I want to be able to recall a File Transfer that I have sent.**

R7-30-1 All requirements specified under US5-38 shall be applicable for File Transfer.

**US7-31 As a user, I want to know that a File Transfer message has been recalled.**

R7-31-1 All requirements specified under US5-39 shall be applicable for File Transfer.

**US7-32 As a user, I want to edit by replacing a File Transfer that I have sent.**

R7-32-1 All requirements specified under US5-40 shall be applicable for files as well.

**US7-33 As a user, I want to receive a File Transfer that has been edited by replacing it.**

R7-33-1 All requirements specified under US5-41 shall be applicable for files as well.

**US7-34 As a user, I want to select and delete single or multiple sent File Transfers from my device and the recipient's device.**

R7-34-1 All requirements specified under US5-42 shall be applicable for File Transfer.

**US7-35 As a user, I want to be able to see when a File Transfer that I received was deleted by the sender.**

R7-35-1 All requirements specified under US5-43 shall be applicable for File Transfer.

**US7-36 As a user I want to ensure that my files and related metadata is only read by me and the intended recipient(s).**

R7-36-1 All requirements specified under US5-44 shall be applicable for File Transfer.

R7-36-2 All requirements specified under US5-45 shall be applicable for File Transfer.

## **7.3 Technical Information**

### **7.3.1 Overview**

The File Transfer service is provided based on the File Transfer Enabler defined in section 3.2.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

The RCS client shall advertise the capability for File Transfer in accordance with the definitions of section 3.2.5.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

A RCS contact is considered File Transfer capable if the File Transfer capability is present.

## 7.3.2 Configuration Parameters

### 7.3.2.1 New Configuration Parameters

To provide operator control of the RCS client's File Transfer behaviour the following new configuration parameter is defined for the profile defined in this document.

Configuration parameter	Description	RCS usage
FT FALLBACK DEFAULT	<p>This parameter is applicable only when MESSAGING UX is set to 1. It controls the operator default of the RCS client switch controlling the user dialog when according to the rules in section 5.2 a Chat Message associated with a File Transfer is subject to SMS fallback.</p> <p><b>0</b> (Default Value), never ask the user to confirm the fallback to File Transfer via SMS and always fall back,  <b>-1</b>, never ask the user to confirm the fallback to File Transfer via SMS and never fall back  <b>1</b>, always ask the user to confirm the fallback to File Transfer via SMS</p>	Optional parameter

**Table 16: Configuration Parameter for File Transfer Control**

The FT FALLBACK DEFAULT configuration parameter is added to the UX tree defined in section 5.3.4.1 based on the following definition.

Node: /<x>/UX/ftFBDefault

Leaf node that describes the operator's default setting RCS client switch to control the user dialog for File Transfer fallback to SMS.

Status	Occurrence	Format	Min. Access Types
Required	ZeroOrOne	int	Get, Replace

**Table 17: UX MO sub tree addition parameters (ftFBDefault)**

- Values:
  - 1, never ask the user to confirm the fallback to File Transfer via SMS and never fall back
  - 0 (default value), never ask the user to confirm the fallback to File Transfer via SMS and always fall back.
  - 1, always ask the user to confirm the fallback to File Transfer via SMS
- Post-reconfiguration actions:
  - Change the user setting, if it has not been toggled by the user before.
- Associated HTTP XML parameter ID: "ftFBDefault"

## 7.3.3 Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service requirements

R7-37-1 The requirements of R7-1-1 are implemented locally on the device.

- R7-37-2 The requirement R7-1-2 is implemented locally on the device. The RCS client shall consider the RCS addressing model defined in section 2.5.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] to determine the address type for user provided contact addresses. For details of the technology selection for the transfer of a file to RCS and non-RCS contacts, refer to R7-1-7 and the corresponding technical implementation.
- R7-37-3 The requirement R7-1-3 is implemented locally on the device for the case of File Transfer to more than one recipient refer to the technical implementation defined for US7-8 and US7-10.
- R7-37-4 The capability required in R7-1-4 is a basic function of the File Transfer enabler.
- R7-37-5 The requirements of R7-1-5 and R7-1-6 are implemented locally on the device.
- R7-37-6 The requirement of R7-1-7 to enable MNO configuration of the File Transfer legacy support mechanism is provided by means of the RCS client configuration parameter FT HTTP FALLBACK defined in section A.1.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R7-37-7 The requirement R7-1-7-1 is applicable
- if the configuration parameter FT HTTP FALLBACK defined in section A.1.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] is set to "1" or the user has selected File Transfer fallback as the mechanism as defined in requirement R7-1-8, or
  - if the configuration parameter FT HTTP FALLBACK defined in section A.1.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] is set to "0" or the user has selected MMS as the mechanism as defined in requirement R7-1-8 and the file does not conform to the formats and codecs defined in [OMA-MMS-CONF].
- The procedure defined in section 3.2.5.7.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] applies.
- R7-37-8 The requirement R7-1-7-2 is applicable if the configuration parameter FT HTTP FALLBACK defined in section A.1.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] is set to "0" or the user has selected MMS as the mechanism as defined in requirement R7-1-8 and the file conforms with the formats and codecs defined in [OMA-MMS-CONF]. The procedure defined in section 3.2.5.7.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] applies.
- R7-37-9 The requirement R7-1-8 is implemented locally on the device. Once the user has altered the setting of the File Transfer fallback mechanism selection on a general basis and the value of the configuration parameter FT HTTP FALLBACK is re-configured via the RCS Service Provider device provisioning, then the RCS client shall ignore the value provided by the RCS Service Provider.
- R7-37-10 The requirement R7-1-9 shall be realised locally on the device, using the procedures defined in section 9.1.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16].
- R7-37-10-1 The requirements R7-1-9-1, R7-1-9-2, R7-1-9-3 and R7-1-9-4 shall be realised locally on the device.
- R7-37-11 The requirement R7-1-10 shall be implemented locally on the device. The RCS client shall ensure that any Media Share file sent, is encoded in a file format that is discovered as supported by both the sender's and receivers' RCS clients

using the Media Share Capability Discovery feature as defined in section 3.2.5.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R7-37-12 The requirement R7-2-1 is implemented via the procedures for delivery assurance defined in section 5.3 of this document.

R7-37-13 The requirement R7-2-1-1 is implemented via the network indication of support of delivery assurance as defined in section 5.3 of this document.

R7-37-14 The requirement R7-2-2 is implemented via the procedure for delivery assurance via client fallback as defined in section 5.3 of this document. If the user has confirmed the client fallback via download link, then the sending RCS client shall invoke the procedures for File Transfer fallback as defined in section 7.3.2 of this document. An operator default for the user setting to confirm a client fallback to SMS via download link is managed via the FT FALLBACK DEFAULT configuration parameter defined in section 7.3.2.1.

R7-37-15 The requirements of user story US7-3 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R7-37-16 The requirements of user story 7-4 shall be implemented as follows. The implementation depends on the file transport technology used:

- **Pending:**

For File Transfer via HTTP and File Transfer Fallback, when the user initiated sending of the file until the first HTTPs POST success response (i.e. HTTP 204 NO CONTENT or HTTP 411 AUTHENTICATION REQUIRED as defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]) is received from the network.

The File Transfer may be in this state for some time when the user is NOT registered with the IMS core (e.g. offline or airplane mode).

- **Progress:**

For File Transfer via HTTP, from the reception of the first success HTTP response from the network until a MSRP 200 OK is received from the network for the Chat Message carrying the File Transfer via HTTP message body content.

For File Transfer Fallback, from the reception of the first success HTTP response from the network until a successful SMS submit confirmation is received from the network for the SMS message carrying the File Transfer Fallback link.

- **Cancelled:**

If the user has cancelled the File Transfer as described in the user story US7-9.

- **Sent:**

For File Transfer via HTTP, if a MSRP 200 OK is received from the network for the Chat Message carrying the File Transfer via HTTP message body content.

For File Transfer Fallback, if a successful SMS submit confirmation is

received from the network for the SMS message carrying the File Transfer Fallback link.

- **Delivered:**  
For File Transfer via HTTP, when receiving the Delivery Notification.  
For File Transfer via SMS, when receiving the delivered status report for the SMS message carrying the File Transfer Fallback link.  
The requirement R7-4-1-5-3 shall be realised based on the Interworking disposition notification as specified in section 3.2.3.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07], i.e. the RCS client should indicate that the user should not expect a displayed status for the message in this case.

NOTE: An originating RCS client may receive for a Chat Message both a delivery and an interworking disposition notification, e.g. due to support of multi device in the terminating network. Reception of the delivery disposition notification overwrites the "interworking" status of the message".

For File Transfer Fallback, when receiving the SMS delivery report. The RCS client should indicate to the user not to expect a displayed status for the message in this case.

- **Displayed:**  
For File Transfer via HTTP, when receiving the Display Notification. If Interworking Disposition notification has been received but no delivery notification, as defined in section 3.2.3.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07], then the displayed status is not applicable.

The requirement R7-4-1-6-1 shall be realised based on the Interworking disposition notification as specified in section 3.2.3.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07], i.e. the RCS client should indicate that the user should not expect a displayed status for the message in this case.

The requirement R7-4-1-6-2 shall be realised locally on the device based on the setting defined for US18-7.

For File Transfer Fallback, not applicable.

- **Failed:**  
The failed state applies whenever the processing to send the File Transfer fails and the RCS client does not attempt to transfer the file anymore. As a clarification, a File Transfer cannot enter the "failed" status anymore after it entered the "sent" status.

R7-37-17 Notifications on delivery and display status information as per requirement R7-4-2 shall be processed for store and forward as follows:

- IMDN in the messaging server as specified in section 3.2.3.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]
- SMS delivery status reports as specified in [3GPP TS 23.040].

R7-37-18 Requirement R7-4-3 shall be realised locally on the device. The RCS client shall use the signing procedures defined in section 9.1.3 and 9.1.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16].

R7-37-19 Requirement R7-4-4 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R7-37-19-1 Sub-requirement R7-4-4-1 shall be implemented as specified in section 2.3.2, (see R2-16-5 to R2-16-8).

R7-37-20 The requirements of US7-5 shall be implemented locally on the device. When transferring a large image using File Transfer, the RCS client may check whether it is possible to reduce the size of the image. It may use following mechanism for this:

- The default scale factor F for the image shall be  
 $F = \min(1280/w, 1280/h, 1.0)$ .

NOTE: The w (width) and the h (height) shall be used in pixels for the calculation.

- If the factor (F) is 1, the original image shall be transferred.
- Otherwise, the size of the image shall be reduced using following algorithm:
  - Scale both dimensions by the same factor F (same for width and height so the aspect ratio is maintained).
  - Compress as JPG with q=75%
  - Compare the new image size with the original, and only offer the possibility to send a resized image if the resulting file is smaller than the original one

R7-37-21 For the requirement R7-6-1 of user story US7-6, videos shall be optimised and resized to facilitate a faster transfer experience during a call (i.e. "low file size" as the default selection).

The recommended approach is to resize the video by modifying the resolution:

- The default resolution shall be 480p encoded at 1200 kbps.
- The resulting size shall be compared to FT WARN SIZE and FT MAX SIZE. The UI shall act correspondingly if the values are reached.
- For a pre-recorded video:
  - If the resolution is higher than 480p but the file is smaller than FT WARN SIZE the UI warns the user about the resolution of the video.
  - if the resolution is higher than 480p and the file is higher than FT WARN SIZE but smaller than FT\_MAX\_SIZE then the UI warns the user about the resolution and the size.
  - if the resolution is higher than 480p and the file is higher than FT MAX SIZE then the UI warns the user about the size and forces the compression or aborts the transfer.
- For a live video recording:
  - Recording at the default resolution of 480p encoded at 1200 kbps is done. When the FT WARN SIZE is reached, the recording is stopped automatically.

- R7-37-22 The video resizing itself shall happen before the File Transfer to the recipient is initiated.
- R7-37-23 The file size limits required in the user story US7-7 are configured via the FT MAX SIZE and FT WARN SIZE parameters defined in section A.1.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R7-37-24 The technical implementation of the requirements of user story US7-8 is defined in section 3.2.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and the technical definitions for Group Chat defined in section 6.3 of this document.
- R7-37-25 Requirement R7-8-2 shall be realised locally on the device, using the procedures defined in section 9.1.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16].
- R7-37-26 To cancel the sending of a File Transfer as required in user story US7-9 the RCS client shall interrupt the ongoing HTTP file upload flow at the time of user input.
- R7-37-27 The requirements in use case US7-10 shall be implemented locally on the device based on the following mechanisms:
- R7-37-27-1 For the requirement R7-10-1, the RCS capability shall be discovered via the capability discovery defined in section 3. To identify recipients being RCS capable the RCS client shall check the capability of recipients as defined in section 6.3 and 7.3.1 of this document.
- R7-37-27-2 The requirement R7-10-2 and R7-10-2-1 shall be implemented on the RCS client based on the operator control configuration parameter FT MAX 1 TO MANY RECIPIENTS defined in section A.1.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R7-37-27-3 Requirements R7-10-3, R7-10-4, R7-10-5 and all their sub requirements shall be realised locally on the device. For encrypted messages, the RCS client shall use the procedures defined in section 9.1.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16]. For unencrypted messages, the RCS client shall use the procedures defined in section 3.2.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R7-37-27-4 The requirement R7-10-3-1 is applicable
- if at least one recipient has no Chat capability as defined in section 6.3 of this document and if the configuration parameter FT HTTP FALLBACK defined in section A.1.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] is set to "1", or
  - all recipients have the Chat capability as defined in section 6.3 of this document and the configuration parameter FT HTTP FALLBACK defined in section A.1.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] is set to "1" but the number of recipients exceeds the value of the configuration parameter MAX\_AD-HOC\_GROUP\_SIZE defined in section A.1.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

As a clarification, the RCS client shall upload the file to the FT Content Server only once and determine per target address whether File Transfer over HTTP or File Transfer fallback is to be used in accordance with the capabilities of the recipient.

R7-37-27-5 The requirement R7-10-3-2 is applicable if

- at least one recipient has no Chat capability as defined in section 6.3 of this document and if the configuration parameter FT HTTP FALLBACK defined in section A.1.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] is set to "0", or
- all recipients have the Chat capability as defined in section 6.3 of this document and the configuration parameter FT HTTP FALLBACK defined in section A.1.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] is set to "0" but the number of recipients exceeds the value of the configuration parameter MAX\_AD-HOC\_GROUP\_SIZE defined in section A.1.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R7-37-27-6 The requirement R7-10-4 shall implement as per R7-37-27-7 if the user selection is Group Chat and R7-37-27-8 if the user selection is multiple 1-to-1 File Transfer.

R7-37-27-7 The requirement R7-10-4-1 is applicable if all recipients have the Chat capability as defined in section 6.3 of this document and the number of recipients does not exceed the value of the configuration parameter MAX\_AD-HOC\_GROUP\_SIZE defined in section A.1.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. For the implementation of File Transfer in a Group Chat, refer to section 6.3 of this document.

R7-37-27-8 The requirement R7-10-4-2 shall implement as per R7-10-3-1-1 by sending File Transfer as multiple 1-to-1 File Transfer.

R7-37-27-9 R7-10-4-3 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R7-37-28 The technical implementation of File Transfer Store and Forward of user story US7-11 is defined in sections 3.2.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. For the technical implementation of Delivery Assurance for File Transfer, refer to the technical implementation of US7-2. The RCS client shall determine the validity of the file for download from the file-info element for the file from the HTTP message body content as defined in section 3.2.5.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] for File Transfer via HTTP or from the URL parameter defined in section 3.2.5.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] for File Transfer fallback. If the RCS client attempts to download the file from the HTTP Content Server as defined in section 3.2.5.4.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and it receives a HTTP 404 NOT FOUND error, then the RCS client shall assume that the file has expired.

R7-37-29 The requirement of user story US7-12 is provided by the RCS Service Provider's policy on the messaging server or the HTTP Content Server.

R7-37-30 The requirements of user stories US7-13 and US7-14 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R7-37-30-1 Sub-requirement R7-13-6-1 shall be implemented as specified in section 2.3.2, (see R2-16-5 to R2-16-8).

R7-37-31 Requirements R7-14-5, R7-17-2-1 and R7-17-3-2 shall be realised locally on the device using procedures defined in section 9.1.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16].

- R7-37-32 The requirements of user story US7-15 shall be implemented locally on the device taking the following additional clarifications into account.
- R7-37-32-1 For the determination of the mode of acceptance for an incoming file transfer depending on the user's setting, the size of the file, the service provider configuration and the type of access network refer to the definitions of US18-8.
  - R7-37-32-2 If the mode of acceptance is dependent on the file size, then the RCS client shall use for File Transfer, the file size provided in the "file-size" parameters of the file-info element of the File Transfer message body as defined in section 4.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. For File Transfer Fallback, the RCS client shall use the value of the "size" URL parameter defined in section 4.2.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
  - R7-37-32-3 The thumbnail preview for File Transfer shall be implemented as defined in section 3.2.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R7-37-33 The requirements of R7-16-1 shall be implemented locally on the device based on the procedures defined in section 3.2.5.4.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and the clarifications for the sub-requirements.
- R7-37-33-1 The requirement of R7-16-1 is implemented locally on the device. During the processing of a reception of a File Transfer the RCS client shall take the following requirements into account:
  - R7-37-33-2 For requirement R7-16-1-1, the RCS client shall send a delivery disposition notification on reception of a Chat Message for File Transfer via HTTP if the message body content does not include a file-info element of type "thumbnail". The RCS client shall send a delivered disposition notification on successful download of the thumbnail in accordance with the procedures in section 3.2.5.4.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] if the message body of the Chat Message for File Transfer via HTTP included a file-info element of type "thumbnail". The requirement is not applicable if the RCS client processes File Transfer fallback as defined in section 3.2.5.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
  - R7-37-33-3 For requirement R7-16-1-3, if the user cancels the download, then the RCS client shall abort the HTTP file download. This requirement is applicable for File Transfer and File Transfer fallback.
  - R7-37-33-4 For the requirement R7-16-1-4, for File Transfer the RCS client shall send a display disposition notification after the content of the file was brought to the user's attention by display of the file transfer notification in the Messaging conversation thread on the active screen, see also requirement R7-4-1-6.
  - R7-37-33-5 For the implementation of requirement R7-16-1-5, the RCS client shall take the definitions of section 3.2.5.4.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] into account.
- R7-37-34 To implement the requirements of US7-17 refer to section 3.2.5.9.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R7-37-35 The requirement of US7-18 shall be implemented based on the procedures defined in

- section 3.2.5.4.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] for resume on the RCS client when sending File Transfer or File Transfer fallback.
- section 3.2.5.4.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] for resume on the RCS client when receiving File Transfer or File Transfer fallback.

R7-37-36 The file size limits defined in the user story US7-19 are configured via the FT MAX SIZE parameter defined in section A.1.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R7-37-37 The requirements of user story US7-20 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R7-37-38 For the implementation of user stories US7-21 through US7-22, refer to section 9 of this document.

R7-37-39 For the implementation of US7-23 refer to the technical implementation of US5-31 where if the user chooses to report the content of the reported File Transfer, the RCS client shall include the <file> element in the Spam Report Message body (with a corresponding namespace) as defined in section 3.2.9.1.2.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R7-37-39-1 The sub-requirement R7-23-2 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R7-37-40 For the implementation of US7-24 refer to the technical implementation of US5-32.

R7-37-41 For the implementation of US7-25 refer to the technical implementation of US5-33.

R7-37-42 For the implementation of US7-26 refer to the technical implementation of US5-34 and US6-34.

R7-37-43 For the implementation of US7-27 refer to the technical implementation of US5-35 and US6-35.

R7-37-44 For the implementation of US7-28 refer to the technical implementation of US5-36 and US6-36.

R7-37-45 For the implementation of US7-29 refer to the technical implementation of US5-37 and US6-37.

R7-37-46 For the implementation of US7-30 refer to the technical implementation of US5-38.

R7-37-47 For the implementation of US7-31 refer to the technical implementation of US5-39.

R7-37-48 For the implementation of US7-32 refer to the technical implementation of US5-40.

R7-37-49 For the implementation of US7-33 refer to the technical implementation of US5-41.

R7-37-50 For the implementation of US7-34 refer to the technical implementation of US5-42.

R7-37-51 For the implementation of US7-35 refer to the technical implementation of US5-43.

R7-37-52 The requirements of US7-36 shall be realised locally on the device using procedures defined in section 9.1.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16].

## 8 Audio Messaging

### 8.1 Description

The Audio Messaging feature allows RCS users to send Audio Messages to one or more RCS users at a time. Audio Messaging provides a way of communication using a live audio recording captured from within the RCS client to convey a message, allowing the recipient to listen to the message within their RCS client. The handling of Audio Messaging files follows the rules of File Transfer as described in 'File Transfer' with the following refinements detailed below.

### 8.2 User Stories and Feature Requirements

**US8-1 As a user, I want to record and send an Audio Message to one or more of my RCS contacts at a time.**

R8-1-1 It shall be possible to record and send an Audio Message in Chat and Group Chat conversations.

R8-1-2 Audio Messaging shall use File Transfer Store & Forward as defined in the File Transfer section 7.

R8-1-3 Audio Messaging service shall be capable of sharing exactly one Audio Message at a time.

R8-1-4 The Audio Message shall stay within limits of the File Transfer maximum size limits as defined in the File Transfer section 7.

R8-1-5 Interruptions in transfer of Audio Messages shall be handled as defined in the File Transfer section 7.

R8-1-6 Any RCS user shall be able to send an Audio Message to Contacts in the contact list or by entering the contact's MSISDN.

R8-1-7 Audio Messaging within a Group Chat shall transfer the Audio Message to all participants in the Group Chat.

NOTE: The sender side will only send the file once over the network in this case.

R8-1-8 Audio Messages are created by a simple user interaction e.g. pressing or holding down a soft key or button to record the message. Once the soft key or button is pressed again or released, the message recording is terminated and the Audio Message may be presented to the sender for playback and/or sending.

R8-1-9 Audio Messaging shall support status notification per individual Audio Message (sender side) as described in user story US7-4 and the supporting requirements.

- R8-1-10 The sender shall be able to cancel the sending of an Audio Message before transfer is complete in accordance with requirements in the File Transfer section.
- R8-1-11 If a sender is interrupted when they are recording an Audio Message, e.g. by an incoming call, then the recording shall stop, and the recording that was made shall be held in the device for later use.
- R8-1-12 Sent Audio Messages shall be displayed and available for playback from a Chat Conversation that is associated with the participant(s) concerned.
- R8-1-13 Audio Message recording shall be limited to either ten minutes or a duration based on the maximum file size supported by the MNO, whichever is smaller.
- R8-1-13-1 Once the maximum Audio Message duration or File Transfer maximum size limit has been reached during a recording, the recording shall stop and the user shall be informed that the message has reached its limit. The Audio Message sharing process shall then continue as if the user had chosen to stop recording manually.
- R8-1-13-2 The limits imposed by the maximum duration and maximum file size of the Audio Message recording shall not affect the quality of the audio recording. I.e. if the maximum file size does not accommodate a duration of ten minutes in the handset's standard recording format, the recording shall not be carried out at a lower quality to guarantee a ten minute length, but a shorter duration limit shall apply.

**US8-2 As a user, I want to be able to receive and listen to Audio Messages that are shared with me as part of a 1-to-1 Chat or Group Chat conversation.**

- R8-2-1 Notifications on reception of an Audio Message or preview icon shall be in line with the according requirement/s in the File Transfer section 7.
- R8-2-2 A new Audio Message notification may look different from a new Chat Message or File Transfer notification in order to indicate it as being an Audio Message.
- R8-2-3 Sorting of Chat and Group Chat Conversations on new incoming Audio Messages shall be in line with the according requirement/s in the File Transfer section.
- R8-2-4 Selecting a visual notification shall trigger the appropriate action according to requirements in the File Transfer section.
- R8-2-5 It shall be possible to receive and play an Audio Message in a 1-to-1 Messaging and a Group Chat conversation.
- R8-2-6 For Audio Messaging, the rules of File Transfer Auto-Accept shall be in line with the according requirement/s in the File Transfer section.
- R8-2-7 A user will be notified, as soon as they come online, of Audio Messages sent to them whilst they were offline as soon as they become online again.
- R8-2-8 If the receiving device does not have enough space to store the incoming Audio Message, the regulations in requirement R7-18-2 shall apply.

- R8-2-9 When a user plays back an Audio Message, it shall be played through the devices internal earpiece (telephone speaker) or through any other currently active audio output.
- R8-2-10 There shall be an option for the user to switch the Audio Message playback to the handset's loudspeaker during playback of the message.

**US8-3 As a user, I want to find my Audio Messages as part of the Chat Conversation with a specific contact or Group Chat.**

- R8-3-1 It shall be possible to delete Audio Messages from a conversation thread according to requirements defined in the File Transfer section.
- R8-3-2 Audio Messages shall be stored on a central MNO storage in accordance with the requirements defined the File Transfer section 7.
- R8-3-3 Any Audio Messages shall be available on secondary devices and interfaces in accordance with requirements in the File Transfer section and requirements specified in the Messaging for Multi-Device section 9.
- R8-3-4 Audio Messages shall be available for playback from the 1-to-1 Messaging or Group Chat conversation by sending and receiving parties.
- R8-3-4-1 When an audio message is opened, the user shall be presented with playback, stop and forward / rewind options to operate the audio player.
- R8-3-4-2 The user shall have the option to easily respond to a received audio message with an audio message from the opened audio message player.
- R8-3-5 Audio Messages shall be saved in the conversation history along with messages and files in a chronological order (as per ordering requirements specified in 1-to-1 Messaging and Group Chat sections).
- R8-3-6 Audio Messages shall be displayed with information on the message's time and date and duration.
- R8-3-6-1 The icon that is used to represent the audio message in the conversation thread shall be differentiated from an icon that is used for other audio files, e.g. music files.
- R8-3-7 In the case of Multi-Device, all requirements in the File Transfer section 7 and in the Multi-Device Messaging section 9 shall apply.
- R8-3-8 Incoming Audio Messages shall be represented in Chat Conversations in accordance with requirements in the File Transfer section 7.
- R8-3-9 Status notifications for incoming Audio Messages shall be supported in accordance with requirements in the File Transfer section 7.

**US8-4 As a user, I want to be able to report suspicious conversations that include Audio Messaging.**

- R8-4-1 All requirements specified under US5-31 shall be applicable for Audio Messaging.

**US8-5 As an RCS Service Provider, I would like to protect my users from suspicious Audio Messaging.**

R8-5-1 All requirements specified under US5-32 shall be applicable for Audio Messaging.

**US8-6 As a user, I want to avoid suspicious Audio Messaging in my inbox.**

R8-6-1 All requirements specified under US5-33 shall be applicable for Audio Messaging.

**US8-7 As a user, I want to be able to send a Reply Message to any of my sent or received Audio Messages.**

R8-7-1 All requirements specified under US5-34 and US6-34 shall be applicable for Audio Messaging.

**US8-8 As a user, I want to be able to receive a Reply Message for the sent or received Audio Message.**

R8-8-1 All requirements specified under US5-35 and US6-35 shall be applicable for Audio Messaging.

**US8-9 As a user, I want to be able to send a Reaction or multiple Reactions to any of my sent or received Audio Messages.**

R8-9-1 All requirements specified under US5-36 and US6-36 shall be applicable for Audio Messaging.

**US8-10 As a user, I want to be able to receive a Reaction or multiple Reactions to any of my sent or received Audio Messages.**

R8-10-1 All requirements specified under US5-37 and US6-37 shall be applicable for Audio Messaging.

**US8-11 As a user, I want to be able to recall an Audio Message that I have sent.**

R8-11-1 All requirements specified under US5-38 shall be applicable for Audio Messaging.

**US8-12 As a user, I want to know that an Audio Message has been recalled.**

R8-12-1 All requirements specified under US5-39 shall be applicable for Audio Messaging.

**US8-13 As a user, I want to edit by replacing an Audio Message that I have sent.**

R8-13-1 All requirements specified under US5-40 shall be applicable for Audio Messaging.

**US8-14 As a user, I want to receive an Audio Message that has been edited by replacing it.**

R8-14-1 All requirements specified under US5-41 shall be applicable for Audio Messaging.

**US8-15 As a user, I want to select and delete single or multiple sent Audio Messages from my device and the recipient's device.**

R8-15-1 All requirements specified under US5-42 shall be applicable for Audio Messaging.

**US8-16 As a user, I want to be able to see when an Audio Message was deleted by the sender.**

R8-16-1 All requirements specified under US5-43 shall be applicable for Audio Messaging.

## **8.3 Technical Information**

### **8.3.1 Overview**

An Audio Message is a specifically formatted file as per section 3.2.7.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] that is recorded on the sender's device. Audio Messages are exchanged with contacts via the File Transfer feature.

Audio Message is a File Transfer specific content type as specified in sections 3.2.5.9.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

As such, Audio Messaging uses the File Transfer requirements and technical procedures, as per section 7, to exchange Audio Messages such as:

- Procedures for handling File Transfer interruptions and failures,
- Codec selection (see section 3.2.5.6 in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07])
- Use of Delivery Notifications
- Rules for Auto-Accept
- Use of a local device blacklist
- Rules for managing shortage of space for local storage

Any contact having the File Transfer capability is seen as being compatible with Audio Messaging.

An Audio Message is identified via its format (section 3.2.7.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]) and shall be displayed accordingly by the UI. A specific icon, pre-embedded in the device, shall be associated to the Audio Message.

The content of the Audio Message can be played directly from the Chat application upon user action as indicated by the File Disposition being set to 'render' (see section 3.2.7.2.2. of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]).

The maximum length of an Audio Message is set to a hard limit of 600 seconds (10 minutes).

### **8.3.2 Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service Requirements**

R8-16-2 Audio Messaging shall be done as described in section 3.2.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and following the File Transfer requirements and technical procedures, as per section 7.

- R8-16-3 As a file can be sent to one or more contacts, requirement R8-1-1 is supported. The recording shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R8-16-4 As Audio Messaging is based on the File Transfer mechanism as per section 7, it inherits from the File Transfer features:
- R8-16-4-1 Store and Forward is one of these features, hence, requirement R8-1-2 is supported.
  - R8-16-4-2 Interruptions in transfer of Audio Messages, hence, requirement R8-1-6 is supported.
- R8-16-5 Requirement R8-1-3 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R8-16-6 Requirement R8-1-4 shall be implemented locally on the device taking the FT MAX SIZE (refer to section A.1.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]) parameter value into consideration.
- R8-16-7 Requirement R8-1-6 and its sub requirements are UI related and shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R8-16-8 Requirement R8-1-7 uses the procedure defined for File Transfer, as per section 7 to exchange Audio Messages to a group of contacts.
- R8-16-9 Requirement R8-1-8 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R8-16-10 Requirement R8-1-9 is supported via the File Transfer corresponding requirement (section 7).
- R8-16-11 Requirement R8-1-10 is supported by the ability to cancel a File Transfer (see section 7).
- R8-16-12 Requirement R8-1-11 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R8-16-13 As an Audio Message is a file, it shall be part of a Chat conversation as required by requirement R8-1-12. The content of the Audio Message can be played directly from the Chat application upon user action. This is indicated by the File Disposition being set to 'render' (see section 3.2.7.2.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]):
- R8-16-13-1 The File Disposition is located in the file-disposition attribute of the file-info element of the main file.
- R8-16-14 Requirement R8-1-13 shall be implemented locally on the devices with a maximum length of either a hard 10 minutes limit or, if shorter, on the duration derived from the FT MAX SIZE parameter.
- R8-16-15 Requirements R8-1-13-1 and R8-1-13-2 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R8-16-16 As an Audio Message is a file:
- R8-16-16-1 Notifications shall be triggered; hence, requirement R8-2-1 is supported.
  - R8-16-16-2 Sorting as per requirement R8-2-3 is supported.

- R8-16-16-3 Action resulting to the selection of a visual notification as per requirement R8-2-4 is supported.
- R8-16-17 Requirement R8-2-2 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R8-16-18 Requirement R8-2-5 is supported with the File Disposition being set to 'render', making the Audio Message playable in a 1-to-1 Chat or Group Chat
- R8-16-19 As an Audio Message is a file:
- R8-16-19-1 It shall comply with the rules of File Transfer Auto-Accept as described in 'section 7', fulfilling R8-2-6.
  - R8-16-19-2 Requirement R8-2-7 uses the Store and Forward mechanism as defined in section 7.
  - R8-16-19-3 Requirement R8-2-8 uses management of local storage space as required in section 7.
- R8-16-20 Requirement R8-2-9 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R8-16-21 Requirement R8-2-10 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R8-16-22 As an Audio Message is a file:
- R8-16-22-1 Deletion as required in section 7, File Transfer, is supported, fulfilling requirement R8-3-1.
  - R8-16-22-2 Storage in the Common Message Store as defined in section 7, is supported, fulfilling requirement R8-3-2.
  - R8-16-22-3 Requirements R8-3-3 and R8-3-7 use Common Message Store features as defined in section 9.
  - R8-16-22-4 Availability of Audio Messages from the Chat and Group Chat conversation follows the one defined for File Transfer as required in section 7, fulfilling requirement R8-3-4. The File Disposition being set to 'render' allows the Audio Message to be played directly from the Chat. Requirements R8-3-4-1 and R8-3-4-2 shall be implemented locally on the device.
  - R8-16-22-5 Requirement R8-3-9 uses status notifications for incoming Audio Messages for incoming File Transfer request as described in section 7.
- R8-16-23 R8-3-5 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R8-16-24 Regarding requirement R8-3-6, the message's time and date information are retrieved from the corresponding elements conveying the File Transfer request as per sections 5, 6 and 7. The duration is retrieved from the <playing-length> element of the File Transfer via HTTP message body as defined in section 3.2.7.2.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R8-16-25 R8-3-6-1 shall be implemented locally on the device via a pre-embedded specific icon associated to the Audio Message.
- R8-16-26 R8-3-8 shall be implemented locally on the device.

- R8-16-27 For the implementation of US8-4 refer to the technical implementation of US5-31.
- R8-16-28 For the implementation of US8-5 refer to the technical implementation of US5-32.
- R8-16-29 For the implementation of US8-6 refer to the technical implementation of US5-33.
- R8-16-30 For the implementation of US8-7 refer to the technical implementation of US5-34 and US6-34.
- R8-16-31 For the implementation of US8-8 refer to the technical implementation of US5-35 and US6-35.
- R8-16-32 For the implementation of US8-9 refer to the technical implementation of US5-36 and US6-36.
- R8-16-33 For the implementation of US8-10 refer to the technical implementation of US5-37 and US6-37.
- R8-16-34 For the implementation of US8-11 refer to the technical implementation of US5-38.
- R8-16-35 For the implementation of US8-12 refer to the technical implementation of US5-39.
- R8-16-36 For the implementation of US8-13 refer to the technical implementation of US5-40.
- R8-16-37 For the implementation of US8-14 refer to the technical implementation of US5-41.
- R8-16-38 For the implementation of US8-15 refer to the technical implementation of US5-42.
- R8-16-39 For the implementation of US8-16 refer to the technical implementation of US5-43.

## 9 Messaging for Multi-Device

### 9.1 Description

Multi-device Messaging allows users to view, receive, send and manage their RCS messages, xMS messages and RCS-based content from devices and interfaces other than the mobile device containing the SIM. Examples of secondary devices include, but are not limited to, non-native interfaces on smartphones containing a SIM other than the primary SIM, SIM-based or SIM-less tablets or laptops. The devices may connect using any kind of data connection (e.g. mobile data, Wi-Fi).

For device federation principles, please consult Section 2 “Device Provisioning”.

## 9.2 User Stories and Feature Requirements

**US9-1 As an RCS user, I shall be able to connect to and access my RCS messaging services from all of my RCS-enabled devices and interfaces.**

- R9-1-1 There shall be one single primary mobile device for the set of multiple devices belonging to a user. The user shall be addressed through the MSISDN associated with that single primary mobile device.
- R9-1-2 The A-Party user shall not be aware that they are communicating with the B party's primary or secondary device or interface.
- R9-1-3 Multi-device features shall be available to all users, including those with only a single interface. For example when an MNO has deployed Multi Device Messaging, backup and restore may be provided to all its RCS users including those with a primary device only.
- R9-1-4 When first connecting to the multi-device service, the user shall be introduced to the concept of multi-device, including the benefits of cloud storage and the ability to access messages, content and contacts from multiple devices.

**US9-2 As an RCS user with multiple RCS-enabled devices and interfaces, I shall have available all the RCS messaging features that my RCS Service Provider offers me on all of my devices or interfaces.**

**As an RCS user with multiple devices, I shall always receive communications on my primary device when connected to at least the cellular network regardless of the connectivity state of the secondary device(s) and interface(s).**

NOTE: For some services this can mean only receiving notifications for the waiting content (e.g. notification of an incoming File Transfer).

R9-2-1 An RCS user with multiple RCS-enabled devices and interfaces shall be able to perform all of the following actions on all of these online devices and interfaces.

- R9-2-1-1 Receive any of the services and any pertaining notifications listed in R9-3-4.
- R9-2-1-2 Reply to any of the services listed in R9-3-4.
- R9-2-1-3 Create and send any of the services listed in R9-3-4.
- R9-2-1-4 Forward, delete and resend any of the services listed in R9-3-4.

R9-2-2 The primary mobile device shall also be able to perform the above actions R9-2-1-1 and R9-2-1-3 when connected to mobile cellular network only (i.e. when not connected to mobile data or Wi-Fi). In this case, it is acceptable that functional limitations of the services apply (e.g. SMS limitations apply to text messages).

NOTE: For some services, this may mean only receiving a notification about the waiting content (e.g. notification of incoming File Transfer).

**US9-3 As an RCS user with multiple RCS-enabled devices I shall have access to all my SMS/ MMS (if offered by the MNO), RCS 1-to-1 Messaging, RCS Group Chat Messages, message states and RCS-related content (including files and events related to services listed in R9-3-4) from any of my devices and interfaces. As a user, I shall be able to manage all of the above messages and content in the same way on every device and interface (i.e. in the same way as on the primary device).**

R9-3-1 A user's complete set of conversation histories shall be stored on a network repository.

R9-3-2 This store shall be used for RCS-enabled devices and interfaces to receive up-to-date message and conversation histories.

R9-3-3 All contents remotely stored shall be kept for an RCS Service Provider - configurable period of time and/or up to a configurable quota size per user.

R9-3-4 A conversation history shall include all events that a user has sent and received during that conversation on any of their devices and/or interfaces. An event can be a message, a piece of content, or a message or content notification associated with any of the following services the user has access to:

R9-3-4-1 SMS,

R9-3-4-2 MMS,

R9-3-4-3 1-to-1 messages,

R9-3-4-4 Group Chat Messages,

R9-3-4-5 Geolocations,

R9-3-4-6 vCards,

R9-3-4-7 Audio Messages,

R9-3-4-8 Files.

R9-3-5 All events belonging to and content associated with the services listed in R9-3-4 shall be made available to all of the user's RCS-enabled devices and interfaces. This applies even when these services and events are being managed by another application on the device.

R9-3-6 An RCS user with multiple RCS-enabled devices shall have the messaging services that are available to them on the primary device also available on their secondary devices and interfaces.

R9-3-7 An RCS user with multiple RCS-enabled devices and/or interfaces shall perceive the reception of events belonging to services listed in R9-3-4 to be real time on any device or interface.

R9-3-8 Events (messages, content, and notifications) shall be made available across devices and interfaces so that, for each conversation, the most recent events are updated first.

R9-3-9 In the same way as on a primary device, when File Transfer content is made available to devices and interfaces, the files themselves shall only be downloaded automatically in full when the Auto-Accept parameter value is set to “on”. When the Auto-Accept parameter is set to “off”, File Transfer events shall be represented by their thumbnails or preview icons, which the user can select in order to trigger the download of that particular file on that device or interface. A “download all” option may be available to trigger the download of all the content of the displayed conversation history on that device

**US9-4 As a user, I want to be notified of new messages and content on all of my RCS devices and interfaces in an appropriate way, so as not to be annoyed by repetitive and irritating notifications.**

R9-4-1 An RCS user with multiple RCS-enabled devices and/or interfaces shall receive notifications of new incoming events belonging to services listed in R9-3-4 on all their registered and connected RCS-enabled devices and interfaces if the user is not currently using the conversation thread associated with the new incoming event on any of their devices at that time.

R9-4-2 An RCS user with multiple RCS-enabled devices and/or interfaces who is using a conversation thread (i.e. not timed out) on one device or interface shall not receive notifications for incoming events belonging to that conversation thread on other devices or interfaces.

NOTE: A user is considered to be “using” a conversation thread when they have performed any of the following actions within an agreed pre-defined timeout:

- Opening the conversation thread (including unlocking the device screen and returning to the conversation thread),
- Making any selection within the conversation thread (including opening the message composer, typing, adding content, accepting a file transfer invitation, opening a received file, sending or deleting a message).

A user is no longer considered to be using the conversation thread when:

- The Messaging conversation thread has been “closed” on that interface (i.e. any other screen is displayed, including the gallery).
- A pre-defined agreed timeout has elapsed after no user activity in that conversation thread. (No user activity means no further input nor navigation within the conversation thread).

A user is not considered to be using a conversation when receiving messages from the other party, placing or accepting a call to another party from the conversation thread, auto-accepting file transfer content, automatic message sending (e.g. SMS fallback, automatic resending), typing/sending/deleting messages directly from a notification without opening the conversation thread (“quick reply”), joining a group chat.

R9-4-3 An RCS user with multiple RCS-enabled devices and/or interfaces opening and responding to a new incoming event belonging to services listed in R9-3-4 on one of their devices/interfaces shall trigger the clearing of notifications for that same message on their other RCS-enabled devices and interfaces (i.e. if the

message is read on one device/interface, it is marked as “read” on other devices and interfaces).

R9-4-4 When an RCS user opens an event or marks it as “read”, the event shall be marked as “read” on all other devices and interfaces.

R9-4-5 When an RCS user (A-Party) sends a file (or File Transfer-based event such as an Audio Message) to another RCS user (B-Party) who has multiple RCS-enabled devices and the File Transfer is sent outside of an existing Chat conversation (session), the notification will arrive on all of the B-Party’s RCS-enabled devices and/or interfaces which are online.

R9-4-6 When an RCS user (A-Party) transfers a file (or File Transfer based event such as an Audio Message) to another RCS user (B-Party) who has multiple RCS-enabled devices and interfaces inside an existing conversation (session), then the preview icon or file shall arrive on the B-Party’s device or interface depending on the Auto-Accept setting (i.e. ON/OFF).

R9-4-7 If an RCS user (A-Party) is using a conversation thread with another RCS user (B-Party) with multiple RCS-enabled devices and the B-Party is using a mobile or cellular-equipped device to chat, it is possible that the B-Party loses their data connectivity. In this case, the conversation shall persist between user A and user B on the B-Party’s device following the rules of Seamless Messaging or Delivery Assurance as applicable.

**US9-5 As a user, I want to make sure my participation in Group Chat conversations is consistent across all my RCS devices and interfaces.**

R9-5-1 An RCS user who has chosen to leave a Group Chat on one of their connected devices or interfaces shall stop receiving any further updates from that Group Chat on their other devices and interfaces.

**US9-6 As a user, I want to make sure that deleted content is handled sensitively and appropriately across all my RCS devices and interfaces.**

R9-6-1 Any events associated with services listed in R9-3-4 that are deleted by a user on any of his RCS-enabled devices or interfaces shall also be deleted from the Common Message Store and their other RCS-enabled devices and interfaces.

R9-6-1-1 When deleting an event, the user may be warned that it will also be deleted from their other devices and interfaces. A “don’t ask again” prompt may be offered.

R9-6-2 Any content that has been deleted from the Common Message Store by the system (e.g. content expiry) shall not be deleted from any of the user’s devices or interfaces.

R9-6-3 Any content deleted or removed from a device or interface that was not explicitly deleted by a user action or consent shall not be deleted from the Common Message Store (nor any other device or interface).

NOTE: SIM swap will not delete locally stored content on the device. Factory reset will not cause deletion on the Common Message Store.

R9-6-4 If a message was deleted by its sender for their recipients, all requirements specified under US5-42 shall be applicable for Multi-Device.

**US9-7 As a user, I want to be able to log in and out of secondary devices and interfaces as I choose. As a user, I want to be able to continue a conversation on a different device or interface from the one I used to start it on.**

R9-7-1 An RCS user with multiple RCS-enabled devices and interfaces shall be able to log out of an identity on a secondary device or interface and another user will be able to log into that device or interface with a different identity.

R9-7-2 An RCS user with multiple RCS-enabled devices or interfaces shall be able to start a Messaging conversation (1-to-1 Messaging and/or xMS) from one of their devices / interfaces and continue it from any of their other devices. / interfaces.

R9-7-3 The user shall be able to continue the conversation on another device or interface by opening the Messaging conversation thread associated with the conversation they would like to pursue on that device / interface.

**US9-8 As an RCS user, I can have multiple conversations active at the same time using different devices and / or interfaces (e.g. I am chatting to Alice using my mobile, whilst at the same time chatting to Bob using my tablet).**

R9-8-1 It shall be possible for an RCS user A with multiple connected RCS-enabled devices and / or interfaces to have multiple conversations with different Contacts at the same time from the same or from different devices / interfaces.

R9-8-2 Multiple RCS app or RCS web-based interfaces for a user shall be able to run on a device at the same time, for the same or different RCS identities.

NOTE: Limitations sometimes apply when using multiple RCS identities on the same device or interface

**US9-9 As an RCS user, I want to be able to change specific multi-device settings on any device, and for some settings to be kept up to date on all my devices and interfaces.**

R9-9-1 A user shall be able to change their RCS Settings as defined in section 18 on any of their devices and interfaces.

**US9-10 As an RCS user, I want Recall Message conversations to be consistent across all my RCS devices and interfaces.**

R9-10-1 All requirements specified under US5-38 shall be applicable for Multi-Device.

**US9-11 As an RCS user, I do not want to see a message that was recalled by its sender on any of my RCS devices and interfaces.**

R9-11-1 All requirements specified under US5-39 shall be applicable for Multi-Device.

R9-11-2 Recalled messages shall be deleted from the Common Message Store.

**US9-12 As a user, I want to make sure that edited content is handled sensitively and appropriately across all my RCS devices and interfaces.**

R9-12-1 All requirements specified under US5-40 and US5-41 shall be applicable for Multi-Device.

- R9-12-2 Any events associated with services listed in R9-3-4 that are edited by a user on any of their RCS-enabled devices or interfaces shall also be edited in the Common Message Store and on their other RCS-enabled devices and interfaces.

## 9.3 Technical Information

### 9.3.1 Overview

In this profile, the multi-device service is limited to messaging service only (i.e. voice and video for multi-device are deferred to next release of the universal profile). The multi-device service offers the following RCS services; 1-to-1 Chat, Standalone Messages, Group Chat, Audio Messaging, Geolocation Push, and File Transfer as defined in this profile. In addition to the supported RCS services, multi-device is using backup, restore, and synchronization features via Common Message Store (CMS) as described in section 4.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The messaging for multi-device technical realisation provided in this section is based on the direct delivery model for CPM session based messaging that is defined in OMA CPM and endorsed by [GSMA PRD-RCC.11] and [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

During a session based chat (i.e. 1-to-1 Chat or Group Chat), all the RCS user's registered and connected devices maintain the same conversation view to the user. When a message is received, it is delivered to all connected and registered devices at the same time. When a message is sent from any of the connected devices, it is sent to all other connected devices with direction indication that it is a sent message. Offline devices with the exception of the primary device which is reachable via cellular, during a session-based chat will not receive any notification. When an offline device comes online (i.e. becomes a registered and connected device) during a session based chat, it will synchronise with CMS to receive missed messages. The primary device, which is only reachable via cellular connectivity, will receive CPM based messages as xMS via network interworking. When primary device is offline, it is unaware of the messages sent by other devices. Devices that missed the CPM session-based conversation, will receive the conversation via CMS synchronisation or via xMS for the primary device only in cellular coverage.

Similar to the single device case, two mechanisms can be used for Capability Discovery; SIP Options and Presence Capability Discovery. The Capability Discovery mechanism shall be configured as mentioned in section 3.

- SIP Options Capability Discovery: Two technical realisations, either without SIP Options Application Server or with SIP Options Application Server as described in section 2.6.1.1.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. A SIP OPTIONS Application Server is recommended to be used for multi-device messaging.
- Presence Capability Discovery: The capabilities of each of the user's devices are announced in a Presence Document that is published by using SIP PUBLISH as defined in section 2.6.1.2.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The Presence Server shall perform aggregation policy based on the rules identified in section 5.5.3.2.1 of [OMA PRS\_TS] and section 6.1.3 of [OMA PDE v1.4].

NOTE: It is assumed that the RCS client when configured for Single or Dual Registration (based on the value of the RCS VOLTE SINGLE REGISTRATION client configuration parameter) maintains the RCS

registration regardless of the user activity. It is for further study whether Dual Registration clients and secondary devices may use alternative delivery transports and consequently adopt more efficient connection models that take user activity into account. In that case, the impact on the technical procedures of this section will need to be assessed.

### 9.3.2 Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service Requirements

- R9-13-1 R9-1-1 shall be realised as described in section 2.10 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and section 2.8 or 2.9 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] for SIM-less devices and as described in [GSMA PRD TS.43] for On-Device Service Activation (ODSA) Entitlement and Configuration for SIM devices. The shared user identity shall be the MSISDN of the primary device, and all the secondary device(s) shall use this identity.
- R9-13-2 For R9-1-2, the device, either primary or secondary, shall announce its unique identity to its home network using sip.instance as in section 2.10.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07], and the home network shall ensure that the device identity is not passed to the other party.
- R9-13-3 For R9-1-3, the multi-device features described in the overview section are available to the user per [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. Multi-device features available to single interface are based on the technical realisation as explained in the appropriate section of single device RCS service in this document. Multi-device and single device shall also support messaging backup and restore via CMS as defined in section of 4.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R9-13-4 For R9-1-4, an introduction message describing the benefits of multi-device features shall be provided by the operator as described in section 2.3.1.2.
- R9-13-5 For R9-2-1 including its sub-requirements multi-device for Chat, Group Chat, Geolocation Push, Audio Messaging, and File Transfer shall be realised based on the direct delivery model to all the registered and connected RCS clients. The RCS client shall use direct delivery procedures as given in the following sections:
- R9-13-5-1 section 8.2.2.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.11] for CPM session invitation
  - R9-13-5-2 section 8.3.2.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.11] for handling CPM session responses and multiple MSRP media streams
  - R9-13-5-3 section 8.6.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.11] for procedures upon receiving MSRP
  - R9-13-5-4 section 8.6.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.11] for procedures upon sending MSRP
- R9-13-6 R9-2-2 can be fulfilled as described in the below two scenarios:
- R9-13-6-1 For the multi-device user to reply a message from a primary device that is not connected to mobile data or Wi-Fi, the primary device shall fall back as described in section 5. The xMS messages shall be stored in the CMS as specified in section 4.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] in order to provide synchronisation capability for other connected and registered multi-device.

- R9-13-6-2 For the multi-device user to receive a message in a primary device that is not connected to mobile data or Wi-Fi, the CPM Participating Function shall perform network interworking and deliver the SMS message to the primary device based on the procedures specified in section 8.3.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.11] for CPM Standalone Messages, and section 8.3.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.11] for CPM Session based messaging. Delivery policies in terminating network CPM Participating Function and interworking results shall follow the procedures specified in section 8.3.6 and section 8.3.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.11].
- R9-13-7 R9-3-1, R9-3-2, R9-3-3, R9-3-4 are realised by the use of Common Message Store (CMS) as realised in section 4.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and the synchronisation of multi-device as described in section 4.1.15.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The storage folder and objects for the RCS services and legacy messages can be technically realised as in section 4.1.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The RCS client and server procedures of CMS can be technically realised as described in section 6 and 7 of [CPM-MSGSTOR-REST].
- R9-13-8 The quota size per user in the CMS is configured per operator policy.
- R9-13-9 R9-3-5 shall be fulfilled as described for R9-3-1, R9-3-2, R9-3-3 and R9-3-4. When these events are being managed by another application on the device, only one RCS application shall be active at time. When the user switches to another application, that application will synchronise with CMS.
- R9-13-10 R9-3-6 shall be fulfilled by the operator authorising the use of equivalent services on the secondary devices. For example, a secondary device may receive incoming xMS as Standalone Messages or via CMS, and may send xMS as Standalone Messages.
- R9-13-11 R9-3-7 shall follow the technical realisation of R9-2-2 and R9-2-1 including their sub-requirements and requirements R9-3-1, R9-3-2, R9-3-3 and R9-3-4. The RCS client shall use a notification channel for receiving updates on the status of messages in the Message Store and/or synchronisation triggers as specified in section 4.1.15.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. When a user opens a conversation thread, the RCS client shall give priority to synchronise that conversation thread.
- R9-13-12 R9-3-8 shall be realised based on section 4.1.15.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R9-13-13 For requirement R9-3-9, the file download procedures apply as per section 4.1.15.3.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The RCS client implementation shall consider the definitions for the download of a File Transfer as per US7-15 and the definitions for the download of a Rich Card as per requirements R15-8-7 and R15-8-36, including the user settings as per US18-8. A Common File Store for File Transfer via HTTP in section 4.1.10 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] shall be required as realisation for File Transfer Contents e.g. copy of the thumbnail and content URL links. A “download all” option can be realised by locally implementation in the device to trigger the download of all the content history for that particular device from the content server.
- R9-13-14 For R9-4-1, the technical realisation for R9-2-1 applies.
- NOTE: Newly registered and connected device may not automatically join the existing CPM session.

- R9-13-15 For R9-4-2, when the user is using the conversation thread on one device, all devices shall follow the display notifications and events in the event reporting framework as specified in section 4.1.13 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] to determine whether there is activity on the other devices. This means that Participating Function shall forward the events from the event reporting framework to other connected devices. In addition, the RCS client shall consider sent messages and istyping notifications as indication of such activity. In case of a user is using a primary device and receiving SMS message (i.e. primary device is not connected to RCS platform), there will be no display notification sent to the Participating Function from this primary device. The other multi-devices belonging to the user may show this message as a new message. When the user is no longer considered to be using the conversation thread, all the devices shall follow the technical realisation of R9-4-1.
- R9-13-16 R9-4-3 shall be fulfilled based on R9-4-2.
- R9-13-17 R9-4-4 is realised as described in the technical realisation for R9-4-3.
- R9-13-18 R9-4-5 and R9-4-6 shall be realised by following section 3.2.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and section 4.1.10 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. Direct delivery model is used to send link to all connected and registered devices as R9-2-1. The multi-device "automatic download" option can be realised using the client configuration parameter FT AUTO ACCEPT per R9-3-9 implementation.
- R9-13-19 For R9-4-7, when B-party RCS client loses the data connectivity, the communication between A party and B-Party (multi-device) shall continue using the fall-back mechanism for the primary device that lost data connection as defined in section 5, via Network Interworking in the B-Party network, the CPM Participating Function shall perform network interworking and deliver xMS message to the primary device that lost data connectivity based on the procedures identified in R9-2-2.
- R9-13-20 R9-5-1 is covered as described in section 3.2.4.2.3.1, section 3.2.4.2.3.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07], and section 8.2.2.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.11]. For offline devices that come back online, the RCS client shall receive an error as specified in section 9.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.11].
- R9-13-21 Devices that are online and participating in the session at the time of RCS client departure will receive a SIP BYE request with a Reason Header filed with the protocol set to SIP and the reason code to 200.
- R9-13-22 There is no technical solution for an indication of the "departed" status to RCS clients in RCS 6.0 via the Common Message Store. Implementations may add a Group State Object to the conversation folder of the Group Chat with an empty value of the attribute "lastfocussessionid".
- R9-13-23 R9-6-1 shall be realised per section 4.1.13 and 4.1.15.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R9-13-24 R9-6-1-1 shall be realised locally on the device (both primary and secondary device(s)).
- R9-13-25 R9-6-2 shall be realised locally on the device (both primary and secondary devices) based on the information from the CMS synchronisation as described in the last paragraph of section 4.1.15.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

- R9-13-26 R9-6-3 shall be realised by the device not setting the '\Deleted' flag for messages that the user did not intend the delete.
- R9-13-27 For the implementation of R9-6-4 refer to the technical implementation of US5-42 and US5-43.
- R9-13-28 R9-7-1 shall be locally implemented in the secondary device.
- R9-13-29 R9-7-2 shall be realised following the procedures specified in section 3.2.2, 3.2.4.2.6 and 3.2.4.2.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and [GSMA PRD-RCC.11]. This requirement also has dependency on R9-1-2.
- R9-13-30 For R9-7-3, this requirement shall follow the technical realisation of R9-2-1, R9-2-2, R9-3-1, R9-3-2, R9-3-3, R9-3-4 and R9-7-4.
- R9-13-31 R9-8-1 shall be realised using the same procedures as a single device case with the additional requirement that all devices shall include the +sip.instance feature tag in the Contact header field with the same instance identifier value used at registration in any non-REGISTER SIP requests and responses. There is also dependency on local implementation on the device to allow a user to participate in more than one chat session at a time.
- R9-13-32 R9-8-2 shall be realised locally on the device. For the primary device, only one RCS client using the common identity shall be active at a time per the procedure in section 2.2.3.
- R9-13-33 R9-9-1 shall be locally implemented in the device. Setting changes are based on per device basis.
- R9-13-34 For the implementation of R9-10-1 refer to the technical implementation of US5-38.
- R9-13-35 For the implementation of R9-11-1 refer to the technical implementation of US5-39.
- R9-13-36 R9-11-2 shall be implemented locally on the device using the procedures referred to in section 9.3.1.
- R9-13-37 For the implementation of R9-12-1 refer to the technical implementation of US5-40 and US5-41.
- R9-13-38 R9-12-2 shall be implemented locally on the device using the procedures referred to in section 9.3.1.

## 10 Green Button Promise for Voice

### 10.1 Description

The Green Button Promise for voice describes the behaviour of the voice calling function on RCS/ Multimedia Telephony devices under various coverage conditions.

This section describes the User Stories and Service Requirements for the Green Button Promise for Voice Call services and all features around that core.

## 10.2 User Stories and Feature Requirements

**US10-1 As a user, I want one single entry point to voice calling independent of the enabling voice service.**

R10-1-1 Any entry point to initiate a voice call from the device shall be a single button independent of the enabling voice service.

R10-1-2 The entry point for voice shall not indicate which voice service will be used to enable the call.

**US10-2 As a user, I want to be able to make and receive voice calls with my mobile device while my device is registered on any cellular network bearer.**

R10-2-1 The voice call from a primary device shall be successful and meet the MNO specific voice call performance criteria (e.g. call drop rates, successful call setup rates).

R10-2-2 When there is end-to-end support of high definition voice codecs, the voice call shall be delivered with high-quality audio.

**US10-3 As a user, I (i.e. user A or B) want to be able to make and receive voice calls with my mobile device in areas without sufficient cellular reception.**

R10-3-1 If enabled by the service provider, voice calls shall be possible through a trusted (preferred) as well as untrusted Wi-Fi connection of the device.

NOTE: "Trusted Wi-Fi" refers to a Wi-Fi connection offered by the RCS Service Provider or via a third party trusted by the RCS Service Provider. "Untrusted Wi-Fi" refers to any other Wi-Fi connection.

R10-3-2 Wi-Fi voice calls from primary devices shall be successful and meet MNO specific Wi-Fi Calling performance criteria (e.g. call drop rates, successful call setup rates).

R10-3-3 When there is end-to-end support of high-definition voice codecs, Wi-Fi voice calls shall be delivered with high-quality audio.

**US10-4 As an RCS Service Provider, I want to configure Wi-Fi Calling on my network.**

R10-4-1 The device shall be configured by the network to enable or to / disable the Wi-Fi Calling service per user.

R10-4-2 In case of concurrent availability of voice services fulfilling same performance criteria, it shall be up to MNO specific implementation which voice call enabler to use.

**US10-5 As an RCS Service Provider, I want the user to be able to turn on or turn off Wi-Fi Calling manually.**

R10-5-1 If Wi-Fi Calling is supported by the RCS Service Provider and Wi-Fi Calling is configured on the device, a Wi-Fi Calling switch in the device settings shall be visible to allow the user to turn on or turn off Wi-Fi Calling.

- R10-5-2 The default position of the Wi-Fi Calling switch shall be based on MNO configuration (ON or OFF).
- R10-5-3 If an RCS Service Provider does not support Wi-Fi Calling, no such Wi-Fi Calling switch shall be shown to the user on the device.
- R10-5-4 The user shall be able to manually deselect a Wi-Fi connection from providing Wi-Fi Calling.
- US10-6 As an RCS Service Provider, I may want to provide emergency call services even if Wi-Fi Calling is being used as the last resort for voice call connectivity.**
- R10-6-1 Emergency call services shall always use a cellular voice call where available (including potential national roaming if required by local regulators).
- R10-6-2 Emergency call services may use the Wi-Fi connection if no cellular connection is available at the moment the emergency call is placed.
- US10-7 As an RCS Service Provider, I may want to allow supplementary services both for voice calls on cellular and over a Wi-Fi connection like Calling Line Identification Presentation (CLIP), Call Waiting (CW), Call Hold, Call Forward Busy (CFB), Call Forward Unreachable and Call Forward No Reply.**
- R10-7-1 Supplementary Services like CLIP, CW, Call Hold, CFB, Call Forward Unreachable and Call Forward No Reply may be offered by an RCS Service Provider during any voice call independent of the actual voice service used.
- US10-8 As a user, I want to use Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) tones during calls both on cellular and over a Wi-Fi connection.**
- R10-8-1 DTMF should be supported during a call over both on cellular and over the Wi-Fi connection in both the sender's and recipient's experience.
- US10-9 As a user, I want to know which connection (Cellular or Wi-Fi) is used for the voice call.**
- R10-9-1 The device shall inform the user in a non-intrusive way (e.g. similar to the network indicator in the notification bar or in the in-call screen) that the Wi-Fi bearer is used or going to be used for any potential outgoing or incoming voice calls.
- R10-9-2 During an on-going call over Wi-Fi, an indication of the connection quality should be displayed to indicate any potential impact of a poor Wi-Fi connection causing a poor voice call quality.
- US10-10 As a user, I want my voice call to continue in case of connectivity change.**
- R10-10-1 The terminal shall support call continuity from 4G or 5G to non-4G or non-5G connectivity situations and vice versa in cases where 4G or 5G connectivity is not available.
- R10-10-1-1 This shall be configurable by the MNO.
- R10-10-2 The terminal shall support call continuity from Wi-Fi to 4G or 5G and vice versa, where 4G or 5G connectivity is available.

R10-10-3 The terminal shall support call continuity from Wi-Fi to non-4G or non-5G connectivity situations and vice versa.

R10-10-3-1 This shall be configurable by the MNO.

**US10-11 As a user not engaged in another ongoing call, I want to have the same options to react to an incoming call independent of the enabling voice service used.**

R10-11-1 It shall be possible for a user to be notified about an incoming voice call in the same way, independent of the actual voice service used. The user shall then be able to:

- a) Reject the incoming call.
- b) Accept the incoming call.

**US10-12 As a user engaged in another ongoing call provided by the network, I want to have the same options to react to an incoming call independent of the enabling voice service used.**

R10-12-1 It shall be possible for a user to be notified about an incoming voice call during another on-going voice call in the same way, independent of the actual voice service used. The user shall then be able to:

- a) Reject the incoming call.
- b) Accept the incoming call and put the on-going one on hold. Once the new call ends, the one on hold shall resume automatically.
- c) Accept the incoming call and terminate the on-going call.

**US10-13 As users in a voice call, we want to be able to mute (and unmute) our own voice (i.e. mute microphone) at any point during the call without interrupting the call.**

R10-13-1 Each user in a Voice Call shall be able to mute (and unmute) their own live audio at any point during the call.

**US10-14 As a user, I want to see each of my voice calls listed in my device's activity and/or call log regardless of the voice service actually used for the call.**

R10-14-1 Calls over Wi-Fi shall be listed in the same way as calls over the cellular network in the same call log view, each visually differentiated whether it was an outgoing, incoming and answered, or incoming but missed call.

R10-14-2 Visual differentiation in the call logs between calls over the cellular network and Wi-Fi calls shall be provided. It shall be up to the MNO to enable or disable the differentiator.

R10-14-2-1 For calls that changed the bearer during a call, the above visual indication shall be provided for the bearer that was used at the time the call was initiated.

## 10.3 Technical Information

### 10.3.1 Overview

The 3rd Generation Partnership Project (3GPP) Multimedia Telephony service has been profiled to offer a voice call service over the following access networks where the

specifications defining those profiles take the access specific differences into account and define the access specific functions:

- LTE coverage as profiled in [GSMA PRD-IR.92],
- EPC-integrated Wi-Fi as profiled in [GSMA PRD-IR.51],
- generic data access for secondary device (and downloaded RCS clients) as profiled in [GSMA PRD-NG.110] and
- NR coverage connected through a 5G Core (5GC) as profiled in [GSMA PRD-NG.114].

The RCS clients are expected to support the common set of procedures and the access specific functions described in [GSMA PRD-IR.92], [GSMA PRD-IR.51], [GSMA PRD-NG.114] and [GSMA PRD-NG.110].

Traditional CS voice services are delivered on 2G/3G networks.

### 10.3.2 Configuration parameters

To provide the required MNO control of the Green Button Promise for Voice behaviour, the following parameter is added to those that are available in [GSMA PRD-IR.51], [GSMA PRD-IR.92], [GSMA PRD-IR.94], [GSMA PRD-NG.110] and [GSMA PRD-RCC.15]:

Configuration parameter	Description	RCS usage
IR51 SWITCH UX	This parameter controls the display of the Wi-Fi switch for voice and conversational video services over EPC-integrated Wi-Fi (i.e. Multimedia Telephony as profiled in [GSMA PRD-IR.51]) and its default position (ON or OFF) when visible.	Optional Parameter It is mandatory and becomes relevant if the configuration parameter <code>Media_type_restriction_policy</code> defined in section B.3 of [GSMA PRD-IR.51] enables Voice and/or Video over EPC-integrated Wi-Fi.

Configuration parameter	Description	RCS usage
CALL LOGS BEARER DIFFERENTIATION	<p>This parameter is applicable when the configuration parameter <code>Media_type_restriction_policy</code> defined in section B.3 of [GSMA PRD-IR.51] enables Voice over EPC-integrated Wi-Fi. It controls the display of call logs bearer differentiation between cellular service (CS call and the Multimedia Telephony voice and conversational video services over a cellular network) and the voice and conversational video services over EPC-integrated Wi-Fi.</p> <p>0 (default), the display of the call logs between cellular service and the Multimedia Telephony voice/conversational video service over EPC-integrated Wi-Fi is not differentiated.</p> <p>1: the display of the call logs for service initiated as cellular service and for service initiated as Multimedia Telephony voice and conversational video over EPC-integrated Wi-Fi is differentiated.</p>	Optional parameter
PROVIDE SECONDARY IP VOICE CALL	This parameter allows to enable or to disable the IP Voice Call Service on secondary devices regardless of the access.	Mandatory Parameter

**Table 18: Additional Configuration Parameters to control Green Button Promise for Voice behaviour**

The IR51 SWITCH UX and CALL LOGS BEARER DIFFERENTIATION parameters in Table 18 are added to the UX tree defined in section 5.3.4 with the following formal definition:

Node: /<x>/UX/IR51SwitchUX

Leaf node that describes whether the Wi-Fi switch for the Multimedia Telephony voice and conversational video services over EPC-integrated Wi-Fi is visible to the user and its default position (OFF or ON).

If not instantiated, the Wi-Fi switch for the Multimedia Telephony voice and conversational video services over EPC-integrated Wi-Fi shall not be displayed to the user.

Status	Occurrence	Format	Min. Access Types
Required	ZeroOrOne	Int	Get, Replace

**Table 19: UX MO sub tree addition parameters (IR51SwitchUX)**

- Values:  
0 (default value) Wi-Fi switch for the Multimedia Telephony voice and conversational

video services over EPC-integrated Wi-Fi is not visible to the user

1: Wi-Fi switch for the Multimedia Telephony voice and conversational video services over EPC-Integrated Wi-Fi is visible to the user with default position set to OFF

2: Wi-Fi switch for the Multimedia Telephony voice and conversational video services over EPC-Integrated Wi-Fi is visible to the user with default position set to ON

- Post-reconfiguration actions: The client shall take the potentially changed value into account for displaying Wi-Fi switch position to the user or not.
- Associated HTTP XML characteristic type: "IR51SwitchUX"

Node: /<x>/UX/callLogsBearerDiffer

Leaf node that describes whether the display of the call logs is differentiated between cellular (CS call and the Multimedia Telephony voice and conversational video services over cellular networks) and the Multimedia Telephony voice and conversational video services over EPC-integrated Wi-Fi.

If not instantiated, the display of the call logs is not differentiated between cellular service and the voice and conversational video services over EPC-integrated Wi-Fi.

Status	Occurrence	Format	Min. Access Types
Required	ZeroOrOne	Bool	Get, Replace

**Table 20: UX MO sub tree addition parameters (callLogsBearerDiffer)**

- Values:
  - 0 (default value): the display of the call logs between cellular service and the Multimedia Telephony voice and conversational video services over EPC-integrated Wi-Fi is not differentiated.
  - 1: the display of the call logs for service initiated as cellular service and for service initiated as Multimedia telephony voice or conversational video over EPC-integrated Wi-Fi is differentiated.
- Post-reconfiguration actions: The client shall take the potentially changed value into account for displaying differentiated call logs between cellular service and the Multimedia Telephony voice and conversational video services over EPC-integrated Wi-Fi to the user or not.
- Associated HTTP XML characteristic type: "callLogsBearerDiffer"

The representation of the parameters in the UX tree and the associated HTTP configuration XML structure with these parameters are shown in section 5.3.4.

The PROVIDE SECONDARY IP VOICE CALL parameter in Table 18 is an additional IMS configuration parameter in the IMS MO. IMS parameters shall be configured as defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.15]. The following formal definition applies:

Node: <x>/secondaryIPVoiceCallAuth

Where <x> corresponds to the <x> node below the Ext node of the IMS sub tree defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.15].

Leaf node that represents the authorisation for user to use IP Voice Call service on a secondary device.

The node shall be instantiated on secondary devices if the rcsDisabledState node is not provided.

Status	Occurrence	Format	Min. Access Types
Required	ZeroOrOne	Bool	Get, Replace

**Table 21: IMS MO sub tree addition parameters (secondaryIPVoiceCallAuth)**

- Values: 0 or 1  
0- Indicates that the IP Voice Call service is disabled on secondary devices  
1- Indicates that the IP Voice Call service is enabled on secondary devices
- Post-reconfiguration actions: The client should be reset and should perform the complete first-time registration procedure following a reconfiguration as described in section 2.3.
- Associated HTTP XML characteristic type: “secondaryIPVoiceCallAuth”

### 10.3.3 Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service Requirements

- R10-15-1 Requirements R10-1-1 and R10-1-2 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R10-15-2 The implementation details to meet the key performance criteria of the voice service defined in Requirement R10-2-1 are left to the discretion of the RCS Service Provider.
- R10-15-3 Requirement R10-2-2 shall be fulfilled based on Real-time media negotiation, transport and codec procedures described in section 3 of [GSMA PRD-IR.92] and in section 3 of [GSMA PRD-NG.114] for connections through an EPC and a 5GC respectively.
- R10-15-4 For requirement R10-3-1, both “trusted Wi-Fi” and “untrusted Wi-Fi” connections shall be implemented based on procedures defined in [GSMA PRD-IR.51].
- R10-15-5 The implementation details to meet the key performance criteria of the voice service defined in requirement R10-3-2 are left to the discretion of the RCS Service Provider.
- R10-15-6 For requirement R10-3-3, section 3 of [GSMA PRD-IR.51] shall apply
- R10-15-7 Requirement R10-4-1 shall be fulfilled by configuring the configuration parameter Media\_type\_restriction\_policy defined in section B.3 of [GSMA PRD-IR.51].
- R10-15-8 Requirement R10-4-2 is fulfilled based on RCS Service Provider policy.
- R10-15-9 Requirements R10-5-1, R10-5-2 and R10-5-3 shall be fulfilled based on the configuration parameters Media\_type\_restriction\_policy defined in section B.3 of [GSMA PRD-IR.51] and IR51 SWITCH UX defined in section 10.3.2.
- R10-15-10 The requirement R10-5-4 shall be implemented locally on the device.

- R10-15-11 For requirements R10-6-1 and R10-6-2 section 5.3 of [GSMA PRD-IR.51] applies.
- R10-15-12 Requirement R10-7-1 shall be fulfilled based on the technical procedures described in section 2.3 of [GSMA PRD-IR.92], section 2.3 of [GSMA PRD-IR.51] and section 2.3 of [GSMA PRD-NG.114]. In addition, Annex A.4 of [GSMA PRD-IR.92] applies.
- R10-15-13 Requirement R10-8-1 shall be fulfilled based on the technical procedures described in section 3.3 of [GSMA PRD-IR.92] and section 3.4 of [GSMA PRD-NG.114].
- R10-15-14 Requirements R10-9-1 and R10-9-2 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R10-15-15 For requirement R10-10-1, section 4.8 of [GSMA PRD-NG.114], Annex A.3.2 of [GSMA PRD-NG.102] and 2.2 of [GSMA PRD-IR.92] apply.
- NOTE: Single Radio Voice Call Continuity (SRVCC) is only defined for moving from LTE to non-LTE radio access. During a voice call, there will not be a handover from non-LTE to LTE access.
- R10-15-16 For requirement R10-10-2, section 2.18 of [GSMA PRD-NG.102] shall apply.
- R10-15-17 For requirement R10-10-3, Annex A.3.1 of [GSMA PRD-NG.102] and Annex A.2 of [GSMA PRD-IR.51] apply.
- R10-15-18 Requirement R10-11-1 shall be implemented locally on the device. For the call termination procedures, for multimedia telephony section 2.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-IR.92], section 2.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-IR.51] and section 2.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-NG.114] shall apply. For CS telephony [3GPP TS 24.008] shall apply.
- R10-15-19 Requirement R10-12-1 shall be implemented locally on the device. For the call establishment and termination procedures, for multimedia telephony section 2.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-IR.92], section 2.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-IR.51] and section 2.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-NG.114] shall apply. For CS telephony [3GPP TS 24.008] applies. For the Communication Hold and the Communication Waiting service, section 2.3 and Annex A.8 of [GSMA PRD-IR.92], section 2.3 of [GSMA PRD-IR.51] and section 2.3 of [GSMA PRD-NG.114] shall apply.
- R10-15-20 Requirement R10-13-1 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R10-15-21 Requirement R10-14-1 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R10-15-22 Requirement R10-14-2 shall be implemented by configuring the CALL LOGS BEARER DIFFERENTIATION parameter defined in section 10.3.2.

## 11 Green Button Promise for IP Video Call Services

### 11.1 Description

IP Video Calling is an important feature to evolve the Operator calling experience. IP Video Calling will offer a sustainable and reliable video calling experience across multiple devices and different bearers triggered by a single video calling 'button'. Widespread reach across

customer locations and use cases will be ensured. This section describes the User Stories and Service Requirements for Green Button Promise for IP Video Call.

NOTE: This section focusses on general behaviour once an IP Video Call has been connected between users and in particular the behaviour of initiating a Video Call “from scratch”, i.e. without being already in the context of an on-going voice call. The behaviour of upgrading an on-going voice call to a video call is described in section 12.6.2 of this document.

## 11.2 User Stories and Feature Requirements

**US11-1 As a user, I (i.e. user A) want to initiate from various call related entry points (e.g. contact card, call logs) a lip sync IP Video Call to a contact (i.e. user B).**

R11-1-1 From any call related entry point on a device, a user should be able to initiate an IP Video Call to a contact whenever such a call is possible.

R11-1-2 The IP Video Call shall offer lip sync experience.

R11-1-3 If there are multiple video call services available, the service that provides the higher voice quality (stability and audio quality) should prevail.

R11-1-3-1 The RCS Service Provider preference for IP Video Call shall precede the requirement to improve voice quality.

R11-1-4 Any entry point to initiate an IP Video Call from the device shall be a single button independent of the enabling video call service.

NOTE: CS Video Call is not offered as part of this one-button experience.

R11-1-5 The entry point to initiate an IP Video Call shall not indicate the enabling IP Video Call service.

**US11-2 As an RCS Service Provider, I want to configure the availability of the IP Video Call service.**

R11-2-1 The RCS Service Provider shall be able to configure the availability and preference of the IP Video Call service.

**US11-3 As a user, I (i.e. user A or B) want to make and receive IP Video Calls with my mobile device in areas without sufficient cellular reception.**

R11-3-1 The availability of IP Video Call over Wi-Fi shall be subject to US11-2.

**US11-4 As an RCS Service Provider, I want the IP Video Calls to be available over Wi-Fi.**

R11-4-1 The support for Wi-Fi Video Calling shall be linked with the availability and configuration settings for Wi-Fi (Voice) Calling as defined in ‘Green Button Promise for Voice’, section 10.

**US11-5 As a user, I (i.e. user A) want to know if I can IP Video Call user B.**

R11-5-1 The IP Video Call service shall follow procedures described in section 3, Capability Discovery and Service Availability.

R11-5-2 If the A-Party device does not provide a camera (hardware limitation), the IP Video Call service is not available.

**US11-6 As a user receiving an incoming IP Video Call, I (i.e. user B) want to decide whether to:**

**a) Reject the entire call, or**

**b) Accept the call with/without transmitting my camera view.**

R11-6-1 The recipient shall be able to accept or reject an incoming IP Video Call.

R11-6-1-1 In an incoming call screen or incoming call notification of a 1-to-1 IP Video Call, the RCS client shall display the contact icon and contact name if available, otherwise display the MSISDN of the caller.

R11-6-1-2 When an IP Video Call is received, the recipient's "live video" shall be off by default. The user may enable their camera view before accepting the call.

R11-6-1-3 The client shall use an audio New Incoming Event Notification for IP Video Calls that is different (e.g. ringing) from incoming Messages or File Transfer audio New Incoming Event Notification.

R11-6-2 If the receiving device does not provide a camera (hardware limitation), an IP Video Call capability shall never be reported for capability exchange or service availability updates.

R11-6-3 When an IP Video Call is accepted, the audio part should be played either via a connected headset (if connected) or via the external loudspeaker (if no headset connected).

**US11-7 As a user receiving an incoming IP Video Call, I (i.e. user B) want to have the incoming IP Video Call differentiated from an incoming voice call.**

R11-7-1 The incoming call screen shall show to the user that the incoming call is an IP Video Call.

R11-7-2 The B-Party shall be informed of any IP Video Calls they have missed. The notification shall clearly show that the missed call is an IP Video Call.

**US11-8 As a user in an IP Video Call, I want my video call to continue in case of connectivity change.**

R11-8-1 If connectivity changes from 4G or 5G to non-4G or non-5G (i.e. still on cellular connectivity), IP Video Call continuity shall be maintained. If it is not possible to maintain the video call, the call should continue as a Voice Call.

NOTE 1: Existing flows for initiating and accepting "live video" shall be followed as specified in section 12.

NOTE 2: When downgrading IP Video Call to a Voice Call all Voice Call requirements are applicable as described in section 10, Green Button Promise for Voice.

R11-8-2 The terminal shall support video call continuity from Wi-Fi to 4G or 5G and vice versa, where 4G or 5G coverage is available.

**US11-9 As an RCS Service Provider, I want the best possible quality of video available to the user throughout the IP Video Call for the radio bearer the user is on.**

R11-9-1 An IP Video Call shall be delivered at the highest video quality that the radio bearer allows and that is supported by the clients unless changed by the user in RCS Settings.

R11-9-2 The quality of the IP Video Call shall be adapted to the currently available bandwidth (e.g. by changing radio conditions) and use bitrates lower than the maximum negotiated when the IP Video Call was initiated.

R11-9-3 void

**US11-10 As users in an IP Video Call with insufficient bandwidth, I want to be made aware of when the video stream is interrupted until bandwidth is improved and the video transmission is continued.**

R11-10-1 When connectivity during an IP Video Call is insufficient to deliver a decent video stream, the video stream displayed to the user shall be interrupted and a visual indication shall be provided that connectivity is insufficient and the video continues when connectivity conditions are improved.

NOTE 1: Preferably a visual icon is used instead of an "error message".

NOTE 2: The criteria to decide whether the video quality is acceptable is left to the implementation.

**US11-11 As users in an IP Video Call, we want to stop (and restart) the "live video" while the call is connecting or at any point during the call without interrupting the call, i.e. *audio* is maintained during the call.**

R11-11-1 Each user in an IP Video Call shall be able to stop (and restart) transmitting their own "live video" view or downgrade the video call to audio only at any point during the call.

R11-11-2 If a user stops sharing the own camera view, an in-call screen shall be displayed clearly indicating how the user can share their camera again.

R11-11-3 Stopping the transfer of the camera view by one or even by both users shall not interrupt the transmission of audio, so that the call continues as voice call.

**US11-12 As users in an IP Video Call, we want to mute (and unmute) the own voice (i.e. mute microphone) while the call is connecting or at any point during the call without interrupting the call, i.e. *video* is maintained during the call.**

R11-12-1 Each user in an IP Video Call shall be able to mute (and unmute) their own live audio while the call is connecting or at any point during the call.

**US11-13 As users in an IP video call, when we rotate (i.e. user A / B) our devices the correct video orientation is displayed based on the orientation of each device.**

R11-13-1 The device shall handle the different orientation permutations depending on how the device is rotated during an IP Video Call.

R11-13-2 When rotating the device, the video's aspect ratio shall be maintained.

**US11-14 As users in an IP Video Call, we (i.e. user A / B) want to toggle between Front and Rear Camera without interruption when the device supports two cameras.**

- R11-14-1 The user shall be able to toggle the camera (i.e. Front / Rear Camera) which is sending the transmitted IP video signal if the device supports two cameras, at any time before the call is connected and during the call.
- R11-14-2 If the device supports two cameras, the user shall be able to toggle between the Front and Rear Camera at any time (starting from call setup). The Front Camera shall be activated by default when the video transmission is started.

**US11-15 As a user, I want to know which connection (Cellular or Wi-Fi) is used for the IP Video Call.**

- R11-15-1 The device shall inform the user in a non-intrusive way (e.g. similar to the network indicator in the notification bar or in the in-call screen) that the Wi-Fi bearer is used or going to be used for any potential outgoing or incoming IP Video Calls.
- R11-15-2 The indication to show that a Wi-Fi bearer is used or going to be used for the IP Video Call should be similar to or consistent with the one used for indicating when a Wi-Fi bearer is used or is going to be used for voice calling.
- R11-15-3 During an on-going IP Video Call over Wi-Fi, an indication of the connection quality should be displayed to indicate any potential impact of a poor Wi-Fi connection causing a poor video and voice call quality.

NOTE: The criteria to decide whether the video and voice quality is acceptable is left to the implementation.

**US11-16 As an RCS Service Provider, I may want to allow supplementary services during IP Video Calls when another (voice/video) call comes in like CLIP, CW, Call Hold, CFB, Call Forward Unreachable, and Call Forward No Reply**

- R11-16-1 Supplementary Services like CLIP, CW, Call Hold, CFB, Call Forward Unreachable, and Call Forward No Reply may be offered by an RCS Service Provider during an IP Video Call.

**US11-17 As a user, I want to see my (initiated and received) IP Video Calls in my call logs similar to any other voice call.**

- R11-17-1 The IP Video Call must be displayed in the single (voice AND video) call log interface (per contact or global call log).
- R11-17-2 In that single log of the user's device, an IP Video Call shall be differentiated with a specific visual reference from a voice call.
- R11-17-3 Similar to voice call events, video call events (i.e. not added in-call) shall be differentiated between outgoing and incoming, and for incoming whether it was an answered, unanswered or missed video call.
- R11-17-4 Visual differentiation in the call logs between an IP Video Call over cellular and over Wi-Fi shall be provided. It shall be up to the MNO to enable or disable the differentiator.

R11-17-4-1 For calls that changed the bearer during a call, the above visual indication shall be provided for the bearer that was used at the time the call was initiated.

**US11-18 As a user, I want to hear and see the live audio and video of users in the IP Video Calls**

R11-18-1 The RCS client shall allow the user to hear the live audio of all users who transmit their live audio.

R11-18-2 The RCS client shall allow the user to see the live video of all users who transmit their live video.

R11-18-2-1 For bandwidth reasons, the RCS Service Provider may choose to only transmit a subset of the live videos of all users by default. The RCS client shall allow the user to see any live video even if not initially transmitted by the RCS Service Provider.

**11.3 Technical Information**

**11.3.1 Overview**

The IP Video Call service shall be realised based on profiles of the 3GPP Multimedia Telephony service for following access networks:

- LTE through an EPC, technical enabler as profiled in [GSMA PRD-IR.94],
- NR through a 5GC, technical enabler as profiled in [GSMA PRD-NG.114]
- EPC-integrated Wi-Fi, technical enabler as profiled in [GSMA PRD-IR.51] and
- Generic IP access profiled as IP Video Call service for secondary devices in [GSMA PRD-NG.110].

**11.3.2 Configuration parameters**

To provide the required MNO control of the Green Button Promise for Video behaviour, the following parameter is added to those that are available in [GSMA PRD-IR.51], [GSMA PRD-IR.92], [GSMA PRD-IR.92], [GSMA PRD-NG.110] and [GSMA PRD-RCC.15]:

Configuration parameter	Description	RCS usage
PROVIDE SECONDARY IP VIDEO CALL	This parameter allows to enable or to disable the IP Video Call Service on secondary devices.	Mandatory Parameter

**Table 22: Additional Configuration Parameters to control Green Button Promise for Video behaviour**

The PROVIDE SECONDARY IP VIDEO CALL parameter in Table 22 is an additional IMS configuration parameter in the IMS MO. IMS parameters shall be configured as defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.15]. The following formal definition applies:

Node: <x>/secondaryIPVideoCallAuth

Where <x> corresponds to the <x> node below the Ext node of the IMS sub tree defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.15].

Leaf node that represents the authorisation for user to use the IP Video Call service on a secondary device (or via a downloadable app on a primary device).

The node shall be instantiated on secondary devices if the rcsDisabledState node is not provided.

Status	Occurrence	Format	Min. Access Types
Required	ZeroOrOne	Bool	Get, Replace

**Table 23: IMS MO sub tree addition parameters (secondaryIPVideoCallAuth)**

- Values: 0 or 1  
 0- Indicates that the IP Video Call service is disabled on secondary devices  
 1- Indicates that the IP Video Call service is enabled on secondary devices
- Post-reconfiguration actions: The client should be reset and should perform the complete first-time registration procedure following a reconfiguration as described in section 2.3.
- Associated HTTP XML characteristic type: “secondaryIPVideoCallAuth”

### 11.3.3 Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service Requirements

- R11-19-1 Requirement R11-1-1 shall be implemented locally on the device based on the technical enablers described in section 11.3.1 of this document.
- R11-19-2 Requirement R11-1-2 is fulfilled based on used technical enablers (as per section 11.3.1 of this document).
- R11-19-3 Requirement R11-1-3 is fulfilled based on the used technical enablers for video (as per section 11.3.1 of this document). Requirement R11-1-3-1 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R11-19-4 Requirements R11-1-4 and R11-1-5 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R11-19-5 Requirement R11-2-1 shall be enabled using the configuration parameter MIVC TECHNOLOGY as defined in section A.1.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R11-19-6 For requirement R11-3-1, both “trusted Wi-Fi” and “untrusted Wi-Fi” connections shall be implemented based on procedures defined in [GSMA PRD-IR.51].
- R11-19-7 For ViLTE, requirement R11-4-1 is fulfilled based on the configuration parameter Media\_type\_restriction\_policy defined in section B.3 of [GSMA PRD-IR.51]. For RCS Video Chat, requirement R11-4-1 is fulfilled locally on the device.
- R11-19-8 For requirement R11-5-1, section 3.3 of this document shall apply.
- R11-19-9 Requirement R11-5-2 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R11-19-10 Requirement R11-6-1 shall be implemented locally on the device. For the conversational video service over an EPC, section 2.2.2 of [GSMA PRD-IR.94] shall be considered. For the conversational video service over a 5GC section

2.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-NG.114] shall be considered. For the IP Video Call service on secondary devices, [GSMA PRD-NG.110] shall be considered.

R11-19-11 Requirements R11-6-2 and R11-6-3 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R11-19-12 Requirements R11-7-1 and R11-7-2 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R11-19-13 For requirement R11-8-1, section 4.8 of [GSMA PRD-NG.114] and Annex A.3.2 of [GSMA PRD-NG.102] apply.

R11-19-14 For requirement R11-8-2, section 2.18 of [GSMA PRD-NG.102] shall apply.

R11-19-15 Requirement R11-9-1 shall be fulfilled based on section 3 of [GSMA PRD-IR.94], sections 2.4 and 3 of [GSMA PRD-IR.51], section 3.3 of [GSMA PRD-NG.114] and section 2 of [GSMA PRD-NG.110].

R11-19-16 For requirement R11-9-2, for the conversational video service over an EPC section 3.3 of [GSMA PRD-IR.94] shall apply. For the conversational video service over a 5GC section 3.3 of [GSMA PRD-NG.114] shall apply. For IP Video Call on secondary devices, section 2 of [GSMA PRD-NG.110] shall apply. For RCS Video Chat, section 3.7.5.4.8.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] shall apply.

R11-19-17 void

R11-19-18 Requirement R11-10-1 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R11-19-19 void

R11-19-20 Requirements R11-11-1 and R11-11-3 shall be implemented locally on the device. For conversational video through an EPC over a cellular network, it shall be fulfilled based on section 2.2.2 of [GSMA PRD-IR.94]. For conversational video over EPC-integrated Wi-Fi, proceed as described in section 2.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-IR.51]. For conversational video through a 5GC, it shall be fulfilled based on section 2.2.4.2 of [GSMA PRD-NG.114]. For IP Video Call on secondary devices, section 2.2.5 of [GSMA PRD-NG.110] applies. For RCS Video Chat, section 3.7.5.4.8.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] shall apply.

R11-19-21 Requirement R11-11-2 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R11-19-22 Requirement R11-12-1 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R11-19-23 For requirement R11-13-1, for conversational video over a cellular network through an EPC section 2.4.2 of [GSMA PRD-IR.94] shall apply. For the conversational video service over EPC-integrated Wi-Fi, section 2.4.4 of [GSMA PRD-IR.51] shall apply. For the conversational video service through a 5GC, sections 3.3.2.1 and 3.3.3 of [GSMA PRD-NG.114] shall apply. For the IP Video Call on secondary devices, section 2 of [GSMA PRD-NG.110] applies. For RCS Video Chat, section 3.7.5.4.8.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] shall apply.

R11-19-24 Requirement R11-13-2 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R11-19-25 Requirements R11-14-1 and R11-14-2 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R11-19-26 Requirements R11-15-1, R11-15-2 and R11-15-3 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R11-19-27 For requirement US11-16, section 2.3 of [GSMA PRD-IR.94] shall be taken into consideration for conversational video over a cellular network through an EPC and section 2.3 of [GSMA PRD-IR.51] for the conversational video service over EPC-integrated Wi-Fi. For conversational video through a 5GC, section 2.3 of [GSMA PRD-NG.114] shall be taken into consideration. For IP Video Call on secondary devices, section 2 of [GSMA PRD-NG.110] shall be taken into consideration.

R11-19-28 Requirements R11-17-1, R11-17-2 and R11-17-3 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R11-19-29 Requirement R11-17-4 shall be implemented by configuring the CALL LOGS BEARER DIFFERENTIATION parameter defined in section 10.3.2.

R11-19-30 Requirements R11-18-1, and R11-18-2 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R11-19-31 Requirement R11-18-2-1 shall be implemented locally on the device and aided by procedures in section 3.7.5.4.8.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

## 12 Enriched Calling

### 12.1 Description

The Enriched Calling service evolves the current voice call experience throughout all phases of a voice call: before, during and after the voice call. For video calls, this section defines a pre-call experience.

Enriched Voice Calling covers the following functional areas:

- **Pre-call experience:** Enrichment of the voice or video call before the call is started. A calling user can “compose” and share content that the called party sees when receiving the call.
- **In-call experience:** Enrichment of the voice call during the voice call. Either party can share content during a voice call.
- **Post call experience:** Enrichment in case a voice call could not be connected. A calling party can “compose” additional information that will be included with the missed call information on called party’s device when a call remains unanswered.

These features are to be provided only with Voice Services as described in “Green Button Promise for Voice”, section 10 of this document and with Video Services as described in “Green Button Promise for Video”, section 11 of this document.

### 12.2 General

**US12-1 As an MNO, I want to select the enriched calling functional areas I offer to my customers.**

R12-1-1 The MNO shall be able to provide Enriched Calling Pre-call features.

R12-1-2 The MNO shall be able to provide Enriched Calling In-call features.

R12-1-3 The MNO shall be able to provide Enriched Calling Post-call features.

NOTE: The Enriched Calling functional areas (as listed above) can be provided by the MNO independently of each other as required.

### 12.3 Technical Information for the General Requirements

R12-1-4 For the RCS Service Provider to enable the Enriched Calling Pre-Call features, they shall set the value of the COMPOSER AUTH configuration parameter (see section 2.1.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.20]) to 1, 2 or 3, depending on the Call Composer services that are enabled.

R12-1-5 In order for the RCS Service Provider to enable Enriched Calling In-call features they shall configure each service separately:

R12-1-5-1 For “Live Video”, in order the RCS Service Provider to enable end to end IR.94/IR.51 conversational video call, it shall set:

- For the conversational video service over LTE and NR, the value of the configuration parameter Media\_type\_restriction\_policy defined in section C.3 of [GSMA PRD-IR.94] and section C.3 of [GSMA PRD-NG.114] to enable the service over an EPC and/or a 5GC. This will enable both “Live Video” experience and initiating a Video Call “from scratch” experience.
- For the conversational video service over EPC-integrated Wi-Fi, the value of the configuration parameter Media\_type\_restriction\_policy defined in section C.3 of [GSMA PRD-IR.94] and section B.3 of [GSMA PRD-IR.51] to enable Video over EPC-integrated Wi-Fi. This will enable both “Live Video” experience and initiating a Video Call “from scratch” experience.

R12-1-5-2 For sharing any file, in order the RCS Service Provider to enable RCS File Transfer service it shall set correctly the values of the FT HTTP CS URI, FT HTTP CS USER and FT HTTP CS PWD parameters (see sections A.1.4, A.2.1 and A.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]). This will enable both in-call and outside of a call File Transfer experience.

R12-1-5-3 For exchanging messages, in order the RCS Service Provider to enable 1-to-1 messaging it shall enable one of the acceptable options of messaging technologies as specified in section 5.3. This will enable both in-call and outside of a call messaging experience.

R12-1-5-4 For Location Push, in order the RCS Service Provider to enable RCS Geolocation Push service it shall set the PROVIDE GEOLOC PUSH parameter (see sections A.1.7 and A.2.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]) to 1. This will enable both in-call and outside of a call RCS Geolocation Push service. When the messaging service is used to carry the location information, the RCS Service Provider shall enable one of the acceptable options of messaging technologies as specified in section 5.3. This will enable both in-call and outside of a call messaging for sending location information experience.

R12-1-5-5 For live sketch on an image, in order the RCS Service Provider to enable Shared Sketch service it shall set the SHARED SKETCH AUTH parameter (see section 2.1.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.20]) to 1. This will enable in-call experience.

R12-1-5-6 For live sketch on a map, in order the RCS Service Provider to enable Shared Map service it shall set the SHARED MAP AUTH parameter (see section 2.1.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.20]) to 1. This will enable in-call experience.

R12-1-6 In order for the RCS Service Provider to enable the Enriched Calling Post-Call features they shall set the value of the POST CALL AUTH configuration parameter (see section 2.1.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.20]) to 1

## 12.4 User Stories and Feature Requirements for the Enriched Pre-call experience

This section describes the requirements for the Pre-call Call Composer. For all user stories and requirements listed below, it is assumed that the A-Party is Enriched Calling enabled and online (unless otherwise specified). It is acknowledged that the detailed UX design will vary across implementations. The Enriched Calling UI should conform to the native device design approach to present a consistent experience to users.

**US12-2 As a user (A-Party), I want to be able to place a voice or video call without the need for sharing pre-call content.**

R12-2-1 All voice or video call entry points remain the same (i.e. no additional enriched calling content sharing steps are required to make a non-enriched call).

**US12-3 As a user (B-Party), I want to receive and immediately accept or reject voice or video calls when Pre-Call content is available.**

R12-3-1 The incoming call entry point remain the same (i.e. no additional enriched calling content sharing steps are required) to accept or reject any incoming call with a single selection, irrespective of any pre-call content being available on the incoming call screen.

**US12-4 As a user (A-Party), I want to provide the B-Party with additional enriched calling content.**

R12-4-1 The A-Party shall have the option to share Pre-call content with B-Party.

R12-4-2 The sharing of Pre-call content shall be available for 1-to-1 voice calls.

R12-4-3 The sharing of Pre-call content shall be available for 1-to-1 IP Video Calls.

R12-4-4 For available Enriched Calling capable contacts, the following service entry points for Pre-call services are offered:

R12-4-4-1 The dialler shall offer access to pre-call features for Enriched Calling capable contacts stored in the address book.

R12-4-4-2 The dialler shall offer access to pre-call features when the user manually enters entering an Enriched Calling capable number.

- R12-4-4-3 The address book (e.g. contact card, quick contact view) shall offer access to pre-call features.
- R12-4-4-4 The call log, when selecting a specific call event shall offer access to pre-call features.
- R12-4-4-5 The 1-to-1 Messaging conversation view may offer access to pre-call features.
- R12-4-5 The following Pre-call content share shall be supported:
- R12-4-5-1 Important Call Indicator: an indicator that identifies to the B-Party that the voice or video call is of high importance.
- R12-4-5-2 Pre-call Subject: a message defined by the A-Party, either entered as free text (limited to 1 to 60 characters), or selected from a list of pre-defined subjects.
- NOTE: Emoji's (as defined in Annex A.2 of this document) are supported in the Pre-call Subject.
- R12-4-5-3 Pre-call Image: an existing image selected from the device gallery, or a new picture taken with the device camera.
- R12-4-5-4 Pre-call Location: the current Location of the A-Party.  
NOTE: The A-Party location is sent as co-ordinates (latitude and longitude), and it is up to the B-Party device to determine how to represent these co-ordinates (e.g. as location map and/or text).
- R12-4-6 The A-Party should only be able to share pre-call content if they have the Calling Line Identification Restriction (CLIR) supplementary service disabled. If CLIR is enabled when the user accesses, or attempts to access, the Call Composer, they should be notified (e.g. via a dialog) about the need to reveal their mobile number and, ideally, be provided with a one-click mechanism to disable the CLIR service.
- NOTE: If Pre-call content is shared without conveying the A-Party's Calling Line Identification, the content is not displayed on B-party side.
- R12-4-7 After selecting the Pre-call content, the A-Party shall be able to preview and remove or change the selected content before pressing the voice call button.
- R12-4-8 The A-Party shall be able to edit the Pre-call Location before placing the call to a more accurate position in a geographical map or textual address location.
- R12-4-9 The user shall have the option to edit the Pre-call Image before placing the call, incl. options to crop and rotate the image. Access to these editing features shall be implemented in a way that allows straightforward selection and sending of a pre-call picture without extra clicks.
- R12-4-10 The Pre-call Image shall be automatically downsized to reflect a target file size of approximately 80KB to ensure timely delivery to the B-Party device.
- R12-4-11 All Pre-call content should be displayed on the A-Party outgoing call screen after pressing the voice call button.

R12-4-12 void

R12-4-13 Any Pre-call Image and Subject content shared by the A-party shall be made available on the A-party device for easy selection during a later Pre-call use.

**US12-5 As a user (B-Party), I want to view content for an incoming call before answering the call.**

R12-5-1 All content shared by the A-Party when the call button was pressed shall be presented to the B-Party on their incoming call screen.

NOTE: Pre-call content is also expected to be displayed if the device is in a 'locked screen' state.

R12-5-2 Any pre-call content shall not introduce any delay in the display of the incoming call screen on the B-Party device, nor on the B-Party's ability to accept or reject the call.

R12-5-3 Any pre-call content shall not obscure any important control or display elements on the B-Party incoming call screen, incl. accept and reject call buttons, or caller name and/ or number.

R12-5-4 If the B-Party is already engaged in any kind of call (voice call, enriched voice call, video call), and has the Call Waiting service enabled, an incoming call that includes the Important Call indicator shall have this indicator displayed on B-Party screen. The availability of other content (i.e. Pre-call Subject, Image, and/or Location) shall also be indicated. If applicable, the B-Party shall have the option to maximize the incoming call notification to view this additional content before accepting or rejecting the call.

NOTE: Standard call handling controls (accept, reject etc.) shall continue to be available in all states.

R12-5-5 The Important Call Indicator shall be represented graphically and/or textually, in a similar way other important events are represented in the device so the users clearly understand it is an important call.

R12-5-6 The Important Call Indicator shall not cause the B-Party device to ring if the device has been set to silent mode.

R12-5-7 Pre-call Images shall be displayed on the B-Party incoming call screen in the same aspect ratio as the original image, and any automatic cropping of the image shall be avoided.

R12-5-8 If a missed call notification is triggered on the B-Party device, the Important Call indicator and the Call Subject shall be visible in this notification.

**US12-6 void**

**US12-7 As a user (B-Party), I want to be able to maximise the incoming call screen, when it is minimized, to see any Pre-call content.**

R12-7-1 If the B-Party incoming call indication is minimised, the Important Call Indicator and Subject shall still be displayed in addition to the usual information that is provided for incoming calls without the user having to expand the notification.

R12-7-2 If the B-Party incoming call indication is minimised, an indication of the availability of other content (i.e. Image, and/or Location) shall be provided. The B-Party shall have the option to maximize the incoming call indication to view this additional content before accepting or rejecting the call.

**US12-8 As a user (A-Party and B-Party), while in a call, I want to see Pre-call content on my in-call screen, if no other content (e.g. via In-call Services) has replaced this Pre-call Content during the call.**

R12-8-1 Any Pre-call Image and/or Location shared by the A-Party shall be visible on both the A-Party and B-Party in-call screens, unless replaced by other content during the call.

NOTE: The displayed Location may appear differently on A- and B-Party device.

## 12.5 Technical Information for the Enriched Pre-call experience

### 12.5.1 Overview

The Pre-call experience is implemented by the Call composer service, described in section 3.3.2.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and 2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.20].

[GSMA PRD-RCC.20] is applicable for the implementation of Enriched Pre-call experience with the following updates:

- The configuration parameters of [GSMA PRD-RCC.20] are implemented as defined in Annex C.

### 12.5.2 Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service Requirements

R12-9-1 Requirements R12-2-1, R12-3-1, R12-4-1, R12-4-2, R12-4-3, R12-4-4-1 to R12-4-4-5, R12-4-5-1 to R12-4-5-4 shall be implemented locally on the device. In addition, client configuration and capability discovery as described in section 3 and sections 2.1 and 2.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.20] shall be supported.

R12-9-2 Requirement R12-4-6 shall be implemented locally on the device. In addition, the device needs to support the ability to check the status of network based supplementary services.

R12-9-3 Requirements R12-4-7, R12-4-8, R12-4-9 and R12-4-10 shall be implemented locally on the device. In addition, the call composer procedures as described in section 2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.20] shall be supported.

R12-9-4 Requirement R12-4-11 and R12-4-13 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R12-9-5 Requirements R12-5-1 and R12-5-2 shall be implemented as described in section 2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.20].

R12-9-6 Requirements R12-5-3 and R12-5-4 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R12-9-7 Requirements R12-5-5, R12-5-6, R12-5-7, R12-5-8 shall be implemented locally on the device. In addition, the call composer procedures as described in section 2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.20] shall be supported.

- R12-9-8 Requirements R12-7-1, R12-7-2, R12-8-1 shall be implemented locally on the device.

## 12.6 User Stories and Feature Requirements for the Enriched In-call experience

### 12.6.1 General Requirements

**US12-10 As a user during a voice call, I want to use enhanced functionality that allows me to have a more meaningful and engaging (i.e. “richer”) conversation with the person I am on the call with.**

- R12-10-1 All In-Call Services shall be made accessible from the in-call screen that is by definition only shown during an ongoing call.

- R12-10-2 All In-Call Services shall be delivered in a 1-to-1 voice call.

- R12-10-3 All In-Call Services shall be supported independently of the enabling MNO voice service (e.g. CS / Multimedia Telephony).

NOTE: Subject to minimum data bandwidth and round trip time requirements.

- R12-10-4 When a participant of the call puts the call “On Hold”, any entry point to In-call Services shall be unavailable.

### 12.6.2 “Live Video”

“Live Video” will offer users the experience to add their camera view to an ongoing voice call across different bearers triggered by a single button to “add video”. This section describes the User Stories and Service Requirements for the “Live Video” services.

**US12-11 As a user in a voice call, I (i.e. A-Party) want to have the ability share my “live video” (i.e. the camera view) from my in-call screen with the other participant of the call (i.e. B-Party) whenever it is possible. While sharing, the video is delivered as a real-time stream to the recipient’s screen, the voice call is not interrupted when enabling video.**

- R12-11-1 During an ongoing voice call there shall be the option for both users to share “live video” with the other party if a “live video” share is supported end-to-end.

NOTE: The term ‘A-Party’ references the initiator of the “live video”, not the initiator of the voice call (i.e. any participant of the voice call can initiate a “live video” during a call).

- R12-11-2 The entry point to add “live video” to an ongoing voice call shall be a single button independent of the enabling “live video” service.

- R12-11-3 If a “live video” share is added during an ongoing voice call, the voice call shall continue with no degradation of the reliability of the voice call.

- R12-11-4 If “live video” can be delivered by multiple technical enablers, the one that provides the best end-to-end lip sync experience shall prevail.

- R12-11-5 Using “live video” shall be configurable by the MNO over supported bearers (4G, 5G and Wi-Fi).

- R12-11-6 If the underlying voice call is terminated, the “live video” shall be terminated as well.
- R12-11-7 The user shall not be able to record the transmitted “live video” (i.e. both receiving and sending “live video”).
- R12-11-8 There shall be no option to stream a previously recorded video to the other conversation party

**US12-12 As a user, when receiving a “share live video” request, I (i.e. B-Party) want to decide whether to:**

- a) Decline the incoming “live video” request and continue with a voice call,**
- b) Accept the incoming “live video” request without sending my camera view, or**
- c) Accept the incoming “live video” request and sending also my camera view.**

- R12-12-1 The recipient (B-Party) shall be able to reject an incoming “live video” request and the voice call shall continue.
- R12-12-2 The sender (A-Party) shall be notified accordingly about the selection of the recipient (B-Party) i.e. accepting or rejecting the “live video” service.
- R12-12-3 If the recipient sends back a “live video”, then the stream shall be shown directly on the originator’s device without options to accept or reject.
- R12-12-4 Upon acceptance of user A’s video stream, the camera view is streamed to the recipient (user B) and displayed on the recipient’s screen.
- R12-12-5 An audio signal played on the recipient’s (i.e. B-Party) side may accompany any reception of an incoming “live video” request.

**US12-13 As a B-Party user accepting an incoming “live video” request, I (i.e. B-Party) want the incoming voice to play automatically through a connected headset. If there is no headset connected, then the voice is played on my external loudspeaker.**

- R12-13-1 When an incoming “live video” is accepted, the audio part shall be played either via a connected headset (if connected) or via the external loudspeaker (if no headset connected).

**US12-14 As either user sharing video, when I (i.e. A / B-Party) rotate my device, I want the correct video orientation to be displayed on both ends.**

- R12-14-1 The device shall handle the different orientation permutations depending on how the device is rotated during a “live video” to ensure the incoming video is always displayed in the right orientation (e.g. not upside down).

**US12-15 As a user sharing “live video” from my camera, I (i.e. A / B-Party) want to toggle between Front and Rear Camera and upon selection video is changed without interruption (if the device supports two cameras).**

- R12-15-1 The user shall be able to toggle between transmitting cameras (i.e. Front / Rear Camera) when the device supports two cameras.

R12-15-2 If the device supports two cameras, the Front Camera shall be active by default for transmission of the “live video”.

**US12-16 As a user in a voice call sharing “live video”, when I (i.e. A / B-Party) put the call in background, I want to have the ability to view the main video streamed.**

R12-16-1 When the call is in background and sharing two ways “live video”, then video received should be displayed in a non-intrusive way (i.e. small video frame in a corner of the screen).

R12-16-2 When the call is in background and only one way “live video” is shared, then the video shared shall be displayed in a non-intrusive way (i.e. small video frame in a corner of the screen).

R12-16-3 When “live video” in background, the user shall be able to place the video window to prevent be on top of other important parts of the UI from the app in foreground.

R12-16-4 It shall be possible to easily put the video from background to foreground again. (i.e. by clicking on the video window)

**US12-17 As a user sharing “live video”, I (i.e. A / B-Party) want to stop sharing video at any point during the call without interrupting the underlying voice call.**

R12-17-1 A user shall be able to terminate either its own and/or a received “live video” at any point during the call (i.e. three options (1) to stop own, (2) to stop received, and (3) to stop the complete “live video”) without degradation of the reliability of the underlying voice call.

**US12-18 As users sharing “live video” (both one and two-way), we want the best possible quality of video available to us throughout the “live video” for the bearer we use.**

R12-18-1 The quality of the “live video” stream shall be adapted to the currently available bandwidth (e.g. by changing radio conditions) and use bitrates lower than the maximum negotiated when the “live video” was initiated.

R12-18-2 When possible, the quality of the “live video” stream shall be adapted to the currently available bandwidth and use bitrates higher than the rate negotiated when the “live video” was initiated.

**US12-19 As a user sharing “live video”, I want my “live video” stream to continue in case of connectivity changes.**

R12-19-1 The terminal shall support continuity of the “live video” stream in a seamless manner when network conditions allow.

R12-19-2 If the “live video” needs to be suspended due to connectivity issues, the call shall continue as a Voice Call. “live video” shall automatically resume once sufficient connectivity is available (while the call is still ongoing).

R12-19-2-1 If the “live video” cannot resume despite improved (and sufficient) connectivity, the user shall be able to manually (re-) start “live video”.

NOTE: Once the call completely dropped (either by total connectivity loss or user interaction), no automatic re-establishment of “live video” or voice call is expected.

**US12-20 As a user, I want to see (in my call logs) an indication if a “live video” initiated by me or the other party during the call event.**

R12-20-1 Both A-Party and B-Party call logs should identify that a “live video” event occurred during the call.

R12-20-2 Live video content shared during a call is not stored or accessible after the call for either party.

### **12.6.3 Share any file during call**

The functionality to share any file during a call is based on the File Transfer mechanism. File sharing during a call therefore happens within the context and user flows of the ongoing voice or video call.

**US12-21 As a user, I (i.e. A-Party) want to share any file from my in-call screen with the other participant (i.e. B-Party) during the voice call whenever it is possible.**

NOTE: The terms A-Party and B-Party reference the initiator and the recipient of the file sharing, not the initiator or recipient of the voice call (i.e. any participant of the voice call can share a file during a call).

R12-21-1 File Transfer shall be possible during an ongoing voice call while the voice call continues seamlessly on the same bearer.

NOTE 1: This includes the case where other in-call services are also in progress.

NOTE 2: The transmission of ‘Live Video’ needs to be stopped by the user to initiate / accept an incoming file share.

R12-21-2 When sharing files with the other participant of the call, the same logic as defined in File Transfer, section 7 of this document, shall apply.

R12-21-3 Receiving a file from the other participant of the voice call shall be possible directly from the in-call screen without ending the voice call.

NOTE: This includes the case where other in-call services are also in progress.

R12-21-4 The support of file types and file sizes shall follow the behaviour described in requirement R7-1-5.

R12-21-5 The default resize setting for picture sharing shall be “resized / reduced” to facilitate a quick transfer experience during a call.

R12-21-6 The default resize setting for video sharing shall be “resized / reduced” to facilitate a quick transfer experience during a call.

R12-21-7 An ongoing File Transfer shall be completed even if the voice call was terminated. After completion, a notification shall be displayed that the file is now accessible from the call logs or Messaging conversation thread.

- R12-21-8 Any file shared during a voice call, with the other participant of the call, shall be accessible during the voice call (until dismissed by the user).
- R12-21-9 For pictures, the same format supported in File Transfer shall be supported for display in the in-call screen.
- R12-21-10 While a shared file is displayed, the user shall have easy access to standard in-call features (e.g. toggle loudspeaker, mute, etc.).
- R12-21-11 Any file shared during a voice call shall be easily displayed to the B-Party, with no more than one click (i.e. receiving a video --> B-Party shows in in-call screen a badge in the sharing/messaging in-call icon --> one click is needed to access the Messaging conversation with the A-party with the thumbnail displayed).
- R12-21-12 It shall be possible to open a full-screen file viewer application from the displayed file / preview of the file for further user interaction with the file (e.g. save, edit, share, etc.) for the duration of the ongoing call.

#### 12.6.4 Exchanging messages

Exchanging messages during a call is based on the available messaging functionality but is a simple way to share something written in an ongoing voice call situation. This experience is especially meant to offer the option to the calling parties to exchange or confirm something in written format (e.g. a name, an address, a number etc.).

##### **US12-22 As a user while in a voice call, I (i.e. A-Party or B-Party) want to send messages to the other call party.**

- R12-22-1 Sending and receiving messages shall be possible during an ongoing voice call while the call shall continue seamlessly on the same bearer.
- NOTE: This includes the case where other in-call services are also in progress.
- R12-22-2 When sending messages to the other participant of the call, the same logic to determine the messaging service as described in '1-to-1 Messaging' (section 5) shall apply.
- R12-22-3 Sending messages to the other participant of the call shall be possible directly from the in-call screen.
- R12-22-4 Any messages exchanged during a call shall be available to the user after the call similar to the experience of Messaging outside a call as defined in '1-to-1 Messaging' (section 5).

#### 12.6.5 Location Push

Location Push as In-Call Service describes the functionality to allow sending a location or position to the other contact while in a call.

##### **US12-23 As a user while in a voice call, I (i.e. A-Party / B-Party) want to send "my location" or a "position" from my in-call screen to the other participant of the call.**

- R12-23-1 Location Push shall be possible during an ongoing voice call while the call shall continue seamlessly on the same bearer.

- R12-23-2 When sending Location Push to the other participant in the call, the same logic as defined in US5-23 shall apply.
- R12-23-3 Selecting and sending Location Push to the other participant of the call shall be possible without ending the call.
- R12-23-4 Location Push received from the other participant of the call shall be automatically accepted (based on File Transfer configuration) by the B-Party.
- R12-23-5 Once accepted and transferred the location or position shall be displayed on the B-Party's in-call screen as a map (pre-) view and / or the actual address of the location.
- R12-23-6 An audio signal played on the recipient's side may accompany any reception of an incoming Location Push / Location Push request.
- R12-23-7 It shall be possible to open a full screen map viewer application from the displayed location for further user interaction with the map (e.g. zoom, move map view, find route) during the call.

## **12.6.6 Enriched Calling In-call sharing with Non-Enriched Calling enabled contacts**

***US12-24 As a user, I want to use In-call Services even with contacts who are not Enriched Calling enabled.***

- R12-24-1 When sharing files with the other participant of the call, the same logic as defined in File Transfer (section 7) shall apply when the B-Party is not Enriched Calling enabled.
- R12-24-2 When sending a Location Push to the other participant of the call, the same logic as defined in US5-23 shall apply when the B-Party is not Enriched Calling enabled.
- R12-24-3 When sending a message to the other participant of the call, the same logic as defined in 1-to-1 Messaging (Section 5) shall apply when the B-Party is not Enriched Calling enabled.

## **12.7 Technical Information for the Enriched In-call experience**

### **12.7.1 Overview**

Based on the requirements, the in-call services are constituted of the following main services:

- "Live Video": In line with the requirements in sections 10 and 11 of this document, in case the voice call is an end-to-end Multimedia Telephony voice call and the video service is available, "Live" Video shall be implemented as an end-to-end Multimedia Telephony conversational video call based on procedures described in [GSMA PRD-IR.94], [GSMA PRD-IR.51] and [GSMA PRD-NG.114], and on the procedures in [GSMA PRD-NG.110] for secondary devices.
- Sharing any file during a call: Implemented as described in section 7 of this document.

- Exchanging messages: Implemented via the services described in section 5 of this document.
- Location Push: Implemented as described in section 3.2.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

The RCS client shall indicate support for the listed services based on Capability Exchange mechanism described in section 3.

NOTE: There is one exception to be considered; if the device is in a Multimedia Telephony voice call, the availability of the upgrade to video call (implemented through Multimedia Telephony conversational video) shall rely on the contact header negotiation during the call establishment (SIP INVITE request and response).

## 12.7.2 Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service Requirements

### 12.7.2.1 General Requirements

- R12-25-1 Requirements R12-10-1 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R12-25-2 For requirement R12-10-2, section 2.9 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.20] shall be taken into consideration. The RCS client shall initiate in call services while being in a one to one call.
- R12-25-3 For requirement R12-10-3, section 12.7.1 of this document shall be taken into consideration. The in-call services that are supported for the different voice calling services shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R12-25-4 Requirements R12-10-4 shall be implemented locally on the device.

### 12.7.2.2 Live Video

- R12-25-5 Requirement R12-11-1 shall be implemented locally on the device based on clarifications provided in section 12.7.1 of this document.
- R12-25-6 Requirement R12-11-2 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R12-25-7 For requirement R12-11-3, in case conversational video over an EPC is added, section 2.4 of [GSMA PRD-IR.94] shall apply. In case conversational video over a 5GC is added, section 2.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-NG.114] shall apply.
- R12-25-8 Requirement R12-11-4 is in line with the service prioritisation described in section 12.7.1 of this document under the bullet of "Live Video".
- R12-25-9 For requirement R12-11-5, the Multimedia Telephony conversational video service is available under Evolved UMTS (Universal Mobile Telecommunications System) Terrestrial Radio Access Network (E-UTRAN)/EPC-integrated Wi-Fi/NR coverage and is enabled through the configuration parameter `Media_type_restriction_policy` defined in section C.3 of [GSMA PRD-IR.94] and section C.3 of [GSMA PRD-NG.114].
- R12-25-10 For requirement R12-11-6, Multimedia Telephony voice call termination will result to video service termination.

- R12-25-11 Requirements R12-11-7 and R12-11-8 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R12-25-12 For requirement R12-12-1, section 2.2.2 of [GSMA PRD-IR.94] and section 2.2.4.2 of [GSMA PRD-NG.114] shall apply.
- R12-25-13 Requirement R12-12-2 shall be implemented locally on the device based on the SIP INVITE response.
- R12-25-14 Requirements R12-12-3, R12-12-4 and R12-12-5 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R12-25-15 Requirement R12-13-1 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R12-25-16 For requirement R12-14-1, for the conversational video service over cellular access through an EPC section 2.4.2 of [GSMA PRD-IR.94] shall apply. For the conversational video service over EPC-integrated Wi-Fi, section 2.4.4 of [GSMA PRD-IR.51] shall apply. For the conversational video service through a 5GC, section 3.3.2.1 and 3.3.3 of [GSMA PRD-NG.114] shall apply.
- R12-25-17 Requirements R12-15-1 and R12-15-2 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R12-25-18 Requirement R12-16-1, R12-16-2, R12-16-3 and R12-16-4 shall be implemented locally on the device
- R12-25-19 For requirement R12-17-1, section 2.2.2 of [GSMA PRD-IR.94] shall apply for conversational video through an EPC. Section 2.2.4.2 of [GSMA PRD-NG.114] shall apply for conversational video through a 5GC.
- R12-25-20 For requirement R12-19-1 handover procedures defined in [GSMA PRD-IR.51], [GSMA PRD-IR.92], [GSMA PRD-IR.94] and [GSMA PRD-NG.114] shall be taken into consideration.
- R12-25-21 Requirement R12-19-2 and its sub-requirement shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R12-25-22 For requirement R12-19-2-1, in case of loss of the conversational video service over an EPC section 2.4 of [GSMA PRD-IR.94] shall apply. In case of loss of the conversational video through a 5GC section 4.6 of [GSMA PRD-NG.114] shall apply.
- R12-25-23 Requirement R12-20-1 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R12-25-24 Requirement R12-20-2 shall be implemented locally on the device.

### **12.7.2.3 Share any file during call**

- R12-25-25 The realisation of requirement R12-21-1 shall be implemented as defined in section 12.7.1 of this document (sharing any file during a call bullet).
- R12-25-26 Requirement R12-21-2 shall be implemented as defined in section 7.3.

R12-25-27 Requirement R12-21-3 shall be implemented locally on the device. It is required for the RCS client to be able to identify whether the file transfer is received from the other party in the call and if so to display the file transfer accordingly.

R12-25-28 Requirements R12-21-4 shall follow the procedures described in section 7.3.

R12-25-29 Requirement R12-21-5 and R12-21-6 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R12-25-30 Requirement R12-21-7 shall be implemented based on the procedures defined in section 12.7.1 of this document (sharing any file during a call bullet). The service continuation is not related to the status of the voice call. The display of the notification shall be implemented locally on the device.

R12-25-31 Requirements R12-21-8, R12-21-9, R12-21-10 and R12-21-11 shall be implemented locally on the device.

#### **12.7.2.4 Exchanging messages**

R12-25-32 Requirements R12-22-1 and R12-22-2 shall be implemented locally on the device. Sending and receiving of messages during the call shall follow the same methods and procedures as described in section 5.3.

R12-25-33 Requirements R12-22-3 and R12-22-4 shall be implemented locally on the device.

#### **12.7.2.5 Location push**

R12-25-34 Requirement R12-23-1 shall be implemented locally on the device. Sending and receiving of location push information during the call shall follow section 12.7.1 of this document (location push bullet).

R12-25-35 For requirement R12-23-2, as per section 2.9.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.20] an RCS Chat Message is used to convey the location information during a voice call. For Geolocation Push fallback scenarios during a voice call, the procedures described in section 5.3 shall apply.

R12-25-36 Requirements R12-23-3 to R12-23-7 shall be implemented locally on the device.

#### **12.7.2.6 Enriched Calling In-Call Sharing with Non-Enriched Calling enabled contacts**

R12-25-37 Requirement R12-24-1 shall be implemented as defined in section 7.3

R12-25-38 Requirement R12-24-2 shall be implemented as defined in sections 5.3 and 7.3.

R12-25-39 Requirement R12-24-3 shall be implemented as defined in section 5.3

### **12.8 User Stories and Feature Requirements for Interactive In-call experience**

NOTE: in this section, the 'A-Party' requesting a live sketch sharing may be either the caller or the recipient of the ongoing voice call. Similarly, the 'B-Party'

receiving a request to a live sketch sharing may be either the caller or the call recipient.

### 12.8.1 Live Sketch Sharing

**US12-26 As a user (A-Party or B-Party), I want to be able to participate in a live sketch sharing at any time during an on-going voice call.**

R12-26-1 Both parties shall be able to participate in a live sketch sharing at any time during an on-going 1-to-1 voice call.

NOTE 1: Applies even if other in-call services are also in progress.

NOTE 2: A “live video” needs to be stopped by the user to initiate or accept an incoming live sketch sharing request.

NOTE 3: Both parties may be prevented from initiating a new live sketch sharing if they are already participating in a live sketch sharing.

R12-26-2 The on-going voice call shall continue seamlessly on the same bearer when a live sketch sharing is in progress.

**US12-27 As a user (A-Party), I want to be able to request a live sketch sharing with the other calling party at any time during an on-going voice call.**

R12-27-1 During an ongoing voice call, either party shall be able to request a live sketch sharing with the other party in the call directly from the in-call screen.

NOTE: As long as no other live sketch sharing is currently in progress.

R12-27-2 Either party shall not be able to request a live sketch sharing when the other party is not Enriched Calling enabled or if either party does not have data connectivity during the voice call.

R12-27-3 When a participant of the call puts the call On Hold, any entry point to Interactive In-call services shall be disabled.

**US12-28 As a user (A-Party) having requested the other party to a live sketch sharing, I want to see the status of the live sketch sharing request.**

R12-28-1 It shall be made clear to the A-Party that a request has been sent but is not yet accepted (or rejected).

R12-28-2 The A-Party shall be notified if the request to the live sketch sharing has timed out before B-Party accepts or rejects the request.

R12-28-3 The A-Party shall be notified if the request to the live sketch sharing was rejected by the B-Party.

R12-28-4 The A-Party should be able to re-initiate the request to a live sketch sharing to the B-Party if the previous request failed for any reason, or if it timed out or if rejected by B-Party.

**US12-29 As a user (A-Party) having requested the other party to a live sketch sharing, I want to be able to cancel the request to a live sketch sharing before B-Party acceptance.**

R12-29-1 The A-Party should be able to cancel an initiated request to a live sketch sharing before the B-Party has accepted (or rejected) it.

R12-29-2 The B-Party shall be notified if the request to the live sketch sharing is cancelled by the A-Party before they have accepted (or rejected) it.

R12-29-3 The request to a live sketch sharing shall be cancelled automatically if the call ends before the B-Party has accepted (or rejected) it.

NOTE: No separate notification that the request to a live sketch sharing has been cancelled is required in this case.

**US12-30 As a user (A-Party) having requested the other party to a live sketch sharing, I want the request to time out if the B-Party fails to respond.**

R12-30-1 The request to a live sketch sharing should be automatically dismissed or declined if the B-Party has not accepted (or rejected) it after a pre-defined timeout period.

R12-30-2 Both parties shall be notified if the request to a live sketch sharing times out before the B-Party has accepted (or rejected) it.

**US12-31 As a user (B-Party) having been requested to a live sketch sharing, I want to be able to see the request to the live sketch sharing.**

R12-31-1 An incoming request to a live sketch sharing shall trigger an on-screen display indication which requires a response on the B-Party's device, which shall be visible to the B-Party whether or not the in-call screen is currently displayed on their device.

R12-31-2 B-party can accept or reject a request to a live sketch sharing from A-Party.

R12-31-3 An audio signal played on the B-Party's device may accompany the incoming request to a live sketch sharing.

**US12-32 As a user (B-Party) having been requested to a live sketch sharing, I want to be able to accept the request to the live sketch sharing.**

R12-32-1 The B-Party shall be able to accept the live sketch sharing directly from the live sketch sharing request.

R12-32-2 When B-Party accepts the request to the live sketch sharing both A- and B-Party's live sketch screen shall open automatically including the pre-defined background.

**US12-33 As a user (B-Party) having been requested to a live sketch sharing, I want to be able to decline the request to the live sketch sharing.**

R12-33-1 The B-Party shall be able to decline the request to the live sketch sharing.

**US12-34 As a user (A-Party or B-Party) in an on-going voice call with an ongoing live sketch sharing, I want to be able to edit the sketch.**

- R12-34-1 During a live sketch sharing, both parties shall be able to edit the sketch, and view any edits they have made in real time.
- R12-34-2 During a live sketch sharing, both parties shall be able to view any edits made to the sketch by the other party in as near real-time as possible.
- R12-34-3 Editing a live sketch shall allow actions like changing the sketch background, drawing lines on the sketch background itself and changes to the drawings (e.g. changing line colour and line thickness, erasing lines etc.).

**US12-35 As a user (A-Party or B-Party) in an on-going voice call with an ongoing live sketch sharing, I want to be able to move between the main in-call screen and the sketch screen at any time.**

- R12-35-1 While a sketch is open, it shall be easy for the user to use the standard in-call features and controls (e.g. end call, toggle loudspeaker, mute, etc.) without ending the shared sketch session.
- R12-35-2 Either party shall be able to switch directly between the sketch and the in-call screens at any time without ending the shared sketch session.

**US12-36 As a user (A-Party or B-Party) in an ongoing live sketch sharing during a voice call, I want the incoming voice automatically on a connected headset. If there is no headset connected, then I want the voice to be played on my external loudspeaker.**

- R12-36-1 During an ongoing live sketch sharing, the audio part of the ongoing voice call should be played either via a connected headset (if connected) or via the external loudspeaker (if no headset connected).

**US12-37 As a user (A-Party or B-Party) in an on-going voice call with an ongoing sketch sharing, I want to be able to end the live sketch sharing at any time.**

- R12-37-1 Either party shall be able to end the live sketch sharing at any time.
- R12-37-2 Either party shall be able to end the live sketch sharing directly from their live sketch screen.
- R12-37-3 Either party may be able to end the live sketch sharing directly from their in-call screen.
- R12-37-4 The live sketch sharing shall end when the associated voice call ends.

NOTE: Live sketch sharing will not end when the user presses the device back or home keys in the live sketch screen.

**US12-38 As a user (A-Party or B-Party) in an on-going voice call previously engaged in a live sketch sharing which has ended, I want to be informed that the sketch ended.**

- R12-38-1 Both parties shall be made aware when the live sketch sharing has ended.

**US12-39 As a user engaged in a shared sketch, I want the final sketch to be saved on my device.**

R12-39-1 The sketch shall be automatically saved to both parties' devices when the session ends.

NOTE 1: Sketch can be saved as a 'flat' image, without separately editable background and drawing layers.

NOTE 2: In case of using an image as background, the original image will not be overwritten by the image modified during the live sketch sharing session.

## **12.8.2 Specific Requirements for a live sketch on an image**

**US12-40 As a user (A-Party and B-Party) in an on-going voice call, I want to be able to share a live sketch on an image.**

R12-40-1 An entry point for a live sketch on an image should be provided on the in-call screen.

**US12-41 As a user (A-Party or B-Party) in an on-going voice call with an ongoing live sketch sharing, I want to be able to edit the sketch background.**

R12-41-1 Either party shall be able to change the live sketch background image and/or colour at any time during the live sketch.

R12-41-2 Any change to the live sketch background shall be shown in real-time on both parties' devices.

R12-41-3 Either party shall be able to select an existing image from the device gallery as the live sketch background.

R12-41-4 Either party shall be able to take a new picture from the device camera to use as the live sketch background.

R12-41-5 Either party should be able to select a live sketch background from a selection of pre-defined template backgrounds.

**US12-42 As a user (i.e. A / B-Party) in an on-going voice call with a live sketch open, I want to be able to zoom and move the background image.**

R12-42-1 Both parties should be able to change the scale of the image (zoom in/out), independent of the image being viewed by the other party.

R12-42-2 Both parties should be able to move around the image, independent of the image being viewed by the other party.

NOTE: These changes to the image are not visible to the other party.

**US12-43 As a user (i.e. A / B-Party) in an on-going voice call with an open live sketch sharing, I want to be able to change the line thickness.**

R12-43-1 The default line thickness and colour initially assigned to the both parties when first opening the live sketch should be the thickness and colour they last selected in any previous sketch session (if applicable).

- R12-43-2 Either party shall be able to change the thickness of any lines that they draw at any time during the live sketch session (irrespective of any line thicknesses set on initial default).

### 12.8.3 Specific Requirements for a live sketch on a map

**US12-44 As a user (A-Party and B-Party) in an on-going voice call, I want to be able to share a live sketch on a map.**

- R12-44-1 A separate entry point for a live sketch on a map should be provided on the in-call screen (i.e. defaulting to a map background).
- R12-44-2 The A-Party's current location should be set as the default location for any new live sketch on a map for both parties.

**US12-45 As a user (i.e. A / B-Party) in an on-going voice call with an ongoing live sketch on a map, I want to be able to interact with the background map.**

- R12-45-1 Both parties shall be able to change the scale of the map, independent of the map being viewed by the other party.
- R12-45-2 Both parties shall be able to move the map location, independent of the map being viewed by the other party.

NOTE: These changes to the map are not visible to the other party.

**US12-46 As a user (A-Party and B-Party) in an on-going voice call with an ongoing live sketch on a map, I want to know if the other party has made any edits that I cannot currently see on my map view.**

- R12-46-1 If the other party has edited a part of the map that the current party is not viewing, then the current party should be made aware that this is occurring.
- R12-46-2 If the other party has edited a part of the map that the current party is not viewing, then the current party should be able to view all the edits easily on their screen when desired.

**US12-47 As a user (A-Party and B-Party) in an on-going voice call with an ongoing live sketch on a map, I want some additional map-based controls.**

- R12-47-1 Both parties should be able to see each other's locations on the map
- R12-47-2 Both parties should be able to easily move the map to their location at any time.
- R12-47-3 Both parties should be able to easily move the map to the other party location at any time.
- R12-47-4 Both parties should be able to easily move the map to display both locations at any time.

NOTE: If location is disabled on either party's device, the marker for their location will not be shown on the map.

- R12-47-5 Both parties should be able to send a location marker to the other party, with this marker being visible on both parties' sketches.

- R12-47-6 Both parties should be able to easily move the map to display all locations at any time.

## 12.9 Technical Information for Interactive In-call services

### 12.9.1 Overview

The Interactive In-Call Experiences Shared Sketch and Shared Map shall be implemented by the RCS client as described in section 12.8 of this document. The technical implementation shall follow the procedures as described in sections 2.9.7, 2.9.8 and 2.9.10 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.20]. The protocol to use is described in section 2.9.10 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.20].

### 12.9.2 Shared Sketch

- R12-48-1 Requirements R12-26-1, R12-27-1, R12-27-2, R12-28-2, R12-28-3, R12-28-4, R12-29-1, R12-29-2, R12-31-2, R12-32-2, R12-33-1, R12-34-1, R12-34-2 shall be implemented locally on the device. In addition, the procedures as described in sections 2.9.7, 2.9.8 and 2.9.10 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.20] shall be supported.
- R12-48-2 Requirements R12-26-2, R12-27-3, R12-28-1, R12-29-3, R12-30-1, R12-30-2, R12-31-1, R12-31-3, R12-32-1, R12-34-3, R12-35-1, R12-35-2, R12-36-1, R12-37-1 to R12-37-4, R12-38-1, R12-39-1 shall be implemented locally on the device.

### 12.9.3 Specific Shared Image Sketch Requirements

- R12-48-3 Requirements R12-40-1 and R12-41-1 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R12-48-4 Requirement R12-41-2 shall be implemented locally on the device. In addition, the procedures as described in [GSMA PRD-RCC.20] section 2.9.7, 2.9.8 and 2.9.10 shall be supported.
- R12-48-5 Requirements R12-41-3, R12-41-4, R12-41-5 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R12-48-6 Requirements R12-42-1, R12-42-2, R12-43-1 and R12-43-2 shall be implemented locally on the device.

### 12.9.4 Specific Shared Map Sketch Requirements

- R12-48-7 Requirements R12-44-2, R12-46-1, R12-46-2, R12-47-1 and R12-47-5 shall be implemented locally on the device. In addition, the procedures as described in [GSMA PRD-RCC.20] section 2.9.7, 2.9.8 and 2.9.10 shall be supported.
- R12-48-8 Requirements R12-44-1, R12-45-1, R12-45-2, R12-47-2, R12-47-3, R12-47-4 and R12-47-6 shall be implemented locally on the device.

## 12.10 User Stories and Feature Requirements for the Enriched Post-call experience

This section describes the use case where a user (A-Party) can add additional information after an unanswered / unsuccessful call to the callee (B-Party). This information updates the

existing missed call notification on the B-Party side with an enhanced version that not only provides the missed call information but also provides the B-Party with a reason why the A-Party placed the call.

**US12-49 As a user (A-Party), I want to be presented with on-screen options after an unanswered call so that I can add a reason for the call.**

NOTE: An 'unanswered' call is any call attempt that has not been completed as a connection between the A-Party and the B-Party, e.g., but not limited to, B-Party did not answer the call, B-Party rejected the call, or A-Party cancelled the call before B-Party accepted it. A call connected to the B-Party voicemail system is treated as an answered call (as is Call Forwarding).

R12-49-1 If a call was not answered by the B-Party, the A-Party shall have the option to EITHER:

- Write and send a Post-call Note to the B-Party (limited to 1 to 60 characters) OR
- Record and send a Post-call Voice Message (limited to 10 minutes long) to the B-Party

NOTE: Emoji's are supported in Post-call Notes.

R12-49-2 Pre-defined Post-call Notes should be available for the user.

R12-49-3 The Pre-call Subject shall be presented as default Post-call Note.

R12-49-4 The implementation of pre-defined Post-call Notes on the device may offer some or all of the following features:

- The device may store and display previously entered user-defined Post-call Notes.
- An auto-complete function may be available that lists matching existing Post-call Notes while the user is typing.
- The user may be able to select a Post-call Notes from a list of pre-defined and/or previously used notes.
- The user shall have an ability to edit any pre-defined or previously entered and stored Post-call Notes.

R12-49-5 If the B-Party is not connected to data when the call attempt ended, the sending of post-call content shall follow the 1-to-1 Messaging (Section 5) logic.

**US12-50 As a user (B-Party), I want to see an updated and enriched missed call indication on my device if the caller (A-Party) added a reason after the call was not answered by me.**

R12-50-1 Post-call Notes or Voice Messages shall update the existing standard missed call indication on the B-Party's device.

R12-50-2 If no standard missed call indication is displayed on the B-Party's device because the B-Party rejected the call, any Post-call Note or Voice Message shall be displayed in a new indication. It should be made clear to the user that this new indication is for a rejected call.

- R12-50-3 If the standard missed call indication has already been dismissed by the B-Party, the Post-call Note or Voice Message shall display a new indication. It shall be made clear to the user that this new indication does not represent an additional new missed call.
- R12-50-4 The B-Party shall be able to read the Post-call Note from the associated indication, either directly or by expanding the indication.
- R12-50-5 The B-Party shall be able to play the Post-call Voice Message from the associated indication, either directly or by expanding the indication.
- R12-50-6 If the initial call was already enriched with a Pre-call Subject by the A-Party (using the Pre-call options), the Post-call Note may replace the initial Pre-call Subject displayed in the indication.

### **12.10.1 Enriched Calling Post-call experience with Non-Enriched Calling enabled contacts**

***US12-51 As a user, I want to be able to send a Post-call Note or Voice Message to contacts who are not Enriched Calling enabled.***

- R12-51-1 In case the B-Party is not Enriched Calling enabled then
- A written Post-call Note shall be sent as defined in 1-to-1 Messaging (section 5).
  - A recorded Post-call Voice Message shall be sent as defined in 'Audio Messaging' (Section 8).
- NOTE 1: Post-call Notes can be sent to non-RCS contacts (leveraging on SMS) and to non-Enriched Calling capable RCS contacts (leveraging on 1-to-1 Messaging)
- NOTE 2: Post-call Voice Messages can be sent to non-Enriched Calling capable RCS contacts (leveraging on Audio Messaging). Post-call Voice Messages cannot be sent to non-RCS contacts.

## **12.11 Technical Information for the Enriched Post-call experience**

### **12.11.1 Overview**

The Enriched Post-call experience shall be implemented by the RCS client as described in section 12.10 in this document. The technical realisation of the Post-call experience is described in section 2.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.20].

### **12.11.2 User Stories and Feature Requirements for the Enriched Post-call experience**

- R12-52-1 Requirement R12-49-1 shall be implemented locally on the device. The technical implementation of sending the Post-call Note or Post-call Voice message shall be implemented as described in section 2.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.20].

- R12-52-2 Requirements R12-49-2, R12-49-3 and R12-49-4 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R12-52-3 Requirement R12-49-5 shall be implemented as described in section 2.5.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.20].
- R12-52-4 Requirements R12-50-1 to R12-50-6 shall be implemented locally on the device.

### **12.11.3 Enriched Calling Post-Call experience with Non-Enriched Calling enabled contacts**

- R12-52-5 Requirement R12-51-1 shall be implemented as described in section 2.5.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.20].

### **12.12 User Stories and Feature Requirements for Enriched Call content in Logs and media contact centric view**

This section describes how the standard logs implementations are extended to include additional Enriched Calling content shared either pre-, during, or post-call. It is acknowledged that the detailed UX design will vary across implementations.

#### ***US12-53 As a user (A-Party and B-Party), I want to be able to see my calling activity with the other party in the Messaging conversation threads.***

- R12-53-1 The following rich content shall be available in the Messaging conversation thread for both parties:
- Post Call note
  - Post Call voice note
  - Messages exchanged
  - Files shared (including sketches stored as pictures)
  - Location shared during the call
- R12-53-2 Any enriched content that was shared by a user (A-Party and B-Party) shall be available in the Messaging conversation thread on A-Party's device.
- R12-53-3 Any enriched content that was shared by a user (A-Party and B-Party) shall be available in the Messaging conversation thread on B-Party's device if the A-Party is a known contact in B-party's contact list.
- R12-53-4 Post-call enriched content shared with B-Party shall be notified to B-Party as a new 1-to-1 message.
- R12-53-5 Pre-call and In-call enriched content shared with a B-Party shall not be notified to the B-Party as a new message, (if added to the Messaging conversation thread). The content shall be there but automatically flagged as "read" on the B-Party's device.
- R12-53-6 The Messaging conversation thread shall identify content received from the B-party using Enriched Calling features as call content (in contrast to messaging content).

R12-53-7 Any Enriched Calling content shall be stored in the B-Party's Messaging conversation thread only if the associated content was presented on the device.

**US12-54 As a user (A-Party and B-Party), I want to be able to see my calling activity with the user in the Call log.**

R12-54-1 The following rich content shall be available in the enriched call log entry for both parties:

- Important flag
- Post Call note or in his absence Subject
- Post Call voice note
- Location shared in pre-call
- Indicators for:
  - Messages exchanged
  - Files shared (including sketches stored as pictures)
  - Location shared during the call

R12-54-2 The following rich In-call content should be available in the enriched call log entry for both parties:

- Messages exchanged
- Files shared (including sketches stored as pictures)
- Location shared during the call

R12-54-3 Rich content that was added in a call (missed call, received call, ongoing call or rejected call) by the A-Party shall be available in the call log on A-Party's device, as part of the enriched call log entry for the respective event.

R12-54-4 Enriched Calling content that was presented on the B-Party's device (miss call, received call, ongoing call or rejected call) shall be available in the call log.

**US12-55 As a user (A-Party or B-Party), I want to have access to content that was shared with a contact within a contact centric view.**

R12-55-1 Specific files shared or exchanged with a contact shall be available to both parties in a contact centric view (e.g. a gallery view).

R12-55-2 The following rich content shall be available in the contact centric view for both parties:

- Files shared in that call
- Sketches stored as pictures during that call

		Call Log	Messaging conversation thread	Contact centric view
Pre- Call	Subject	Shall	Should	
	Importance	Shall	Should	
	Pre-Location	Shall	Should	
	Pre-Image	Shall(1)	Shall	Shall
In- Call	Files	Shall(1)	Shall	Shall
	Location	Shall(1)	Shall	
	Notes	Shall(1)	Shall	
	Sketches	Shall(1)	Shall	Shall
Post- Call	Note	Shall	Shall	
	Voice note	Shall	Shall	
Messaging	Messages		Shall	
	Files		Shall	Shall
	Location		Shall	

**Table 24: Overview of the Enriched Call content representations**

NOTE: <sup>(1)</sup> Content itself is not mandatory but indicator to the content is mandatory

### 12.12.1 Technical Information for Enriched Call Logs experience

- R12-56-1 Enriched content in Logs and media contact centric view shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R12-56-2 For the Post-Call cases described in R12-49-5, the receiving RCS client will not be able to distinguish whether the sender sent a Post-Call note or message and therefore the event will not be included in the call log.
- R12-56-3 Additionally, the receiving RCS client will not be able to distinguish whether the sender sent a Post-Call audio or file transfer audio message and therefore the event will not be included in the call log.

## 13 Void

void

## 14 Void

void

## 15 Messaging as a Platform: Chatbots

### 15.1 Introduction

Offering RCS as a delivery channel for businesses to communicate with their staff, existing and potential customer base and M2M or IOT applications presents a huge opportunity to extend existing A2P (Application to Person) and P2A (Person to Application) monetisation of Operator Messaging Services and add new revenue streams for mobile operators, Aggregators, application providers, Chatbot Platforms and businesses alike.

Messaging as a Platform (“Maap”) will enable a variety of interactive services that can be categorised in different ways. A2P and P2A messaging is already available to businesses (using SMS) and represents a lucrative business for mobile operators and third party aggregators.

A major aspect in the evolution of Messaging as a Platform concerns providing an enhanced verified and therefore safer user experience enabling businesses to build and maintain trusted relationships with customers. Therefore, the present version of the Universal Profile focusses on Chatbots to describe requirements for such an enhanced interaction. This area describes the main ways innovation can be made available in the messaging client to support the exciting, safe and trusted new services that customers want to use.

**NOTE:** In the wider technology industry the term ‘Chatbot’ is referred to a conversational entity as such while in this document the use of the term Chatbot specifically refers to a conversational entity interacted with via RCS-based services. xMS services might be supported by a Chatbot but these use cases are not in scope of this document.

Overview of major functional changes in this section compared to Universal Profile 2.0 and its subversions:

- Extended Chatbot Information
- Introduction of a Copy Suggested Action
- Introduction of a more flexible and secure Deep Link format based on the rcs.me domain
- Unsubscribing from a Chatbot

### 15.2 Chatbots

This section focusses on RCS-enabled Chatbots and sets the requirements that enable a frictionless journey for end-users. Chatbots that are not RCS enabled are out of scope.

**US15-1 As a user, I want to use secure and easy-to-use Chatbots that provide value-added services.**

R15-1-1 Users shall have the ability for a richer communication with Businesses (including 3rd parties and MNOs) through Chatbots beyond just plain voice calls and SMS/MMS.

R15-1-1-1 Users shall not be able to block or unsubscribe from “Critical Chatbots” which are verified by special MNO endorsement.

- R15-1-2 Chatbots shall be identified by a Service ID which is globally unique across MNOs, RCS Service Providers and Chatbot Platforms.
- R15-1-3 The namespace of these Service IDs shall be expandable to accommodate a potential growth of Chatbots and Chatbot platforms.
- R15-1-4 Chatbots shall have Chatbot Profile Information that is accessible from within the Messaging conversation view with that Chatbot. The Chatbot Profile Information shall consist of following elements:
- R15-1-4-1 an alphanumeric Service Name that identifies the Chatbot in the list of conversations and within a conversation (mandatory).
  - R15-1-4-2 a non-animated thumbnail picture as Service Icon that identifies the Chatbot in the list of conversations and within a conversation (mandatory);
  - R15-1-4-3 an alphanumeric Service Description up to 500 characters to explain the purpose of the Chatbot (optional);
  - R15-1-4-4 Call-back Telephone Numbers e.g. for customer services(optional);
  - R15-1-4-5 a Theme Colour applied in the conversation view of the user with the Chatbot (e.g. colour for message bubbles and conversation header) (optional);
- NOTE: Future specifications are expected to include a more extended support of colour schemes.
- R15-1-4-6 Service Websites (e.g. to provide user information and customer services detail) (optional);
  - R15-1-4-7 a link to Chatbot-specific Terms & Conditions (mandatory);
    - R15-1-4-7-1* the RCS client shall display a link to the Chatbot-specific Terms of Service;
    - R15-1-4-7-2* if available, the RCS client shall display a link to the Chatbot-specific Privacy Policy;
  - R15-1-4-8 Service Email Addresses (e.g. for customer services) (optional);
  - R15-1-4-9 SMS (long or short code) numbers (optional);
  - R15-1-4-10 a Background image applied in the Chatbot information page (mandatory).
- NOTE: When both Theme Colour and Background Image are available, it is up to the device to decide how to handle it.
- R15-1-4-11 a Chatbot provider's name which is different from the Service Name (optional).
  - R15-1-4-12 an Address (e.g. for business location) (optional).
  - R15-1-4-13 a Category which can be used to filter the Chatbot list (optional).

- R15-1-4-14 Custom labels shall be displayed for Call-back Telephone Numbers, Service Websites, Service Email addresses and SMS numbers [R15-1-4-4, R15-1-4-6, R15-1-4-8, R15-1-4-9], to inform users of their scope and purpose e.g. customer services, technical support etc.
- R15-1-4-15 a verification indicator to inform users that the Chatbot has been verified and authenticated by a Verification Authority (see R15-2-16).
- R15-1-5 The Chatbot Profile Information shall be made accessible from within the messaging implementation, e.g. in the Chatbot Conversation History.
- R15-1-6 Updates to the Chatbot Profile Information by the Chatbot Provider shall become visible when the user opens the conversation with the Chatbot (or shortly after).
- R15-1-7 void
- R15-1-8 Conversations with Chatbots shall be visually differentiated to the users from conversations with (personal) contacts.
- R15-1-9 MNOs shall be able to manage Critical Chatbots for their subscribers.
- R15-1-9-1 There shall be a specific verification indicator only used for Critical Chatbots that helps the user to understand that a Critical Chatbot cannot be blocked or unsubscribed from.
- NOTE: This information is neither defined nor managed by the Chatbot itself.
- NOTE: It is expected that Critical Chatbots are always Verified Chatbots.
- R15-1-10 If a Chatbot is temporarily unavailable, and the user attempts to contact that Chatbot, the user should be informed appropriately.
- R15-1-10-1 There shall be technical means provided that prevent the message to be identified as spoofing (as the originator of the message indicated to the user is the Chatbot, but it comes from somewhere else).
- R15-1-10-2 The message content shall be defined by each Chatbot individually for their users during onboarding procedures or later.
- R15-1-11 If the Chatbot restricts its availability to customers of a given MNO, users shall be directed to the Chatbot fallback experience if available or notified by a message after for example scanning a Chatbot QR code or clicking on a deep link.

**US15-2 As a user, I want to use only secure Chatbot services that respect my data privacy needs.**

#### **Anonymization Service Configuration and generic requirements**

- R15-2-1 The RCS Service Provider shall be able to configure the availability of the anonymization feature for their subscribers. If the RCS Service Provider decides to offer anonymization, by default, conversations with Chatbots are in 'anonymous mode' (i.e. the user's MSISDN is not used as an identifier towards the Chatbot but instead the user is identified by a unique and anonymous 'token').

- R15-2-1-1 The anonymization shall be performed either by the RCS Service Provider or by the Chatbot Platform, depending on commercial setup between the two.
- R15-2-1-2 The 'token' shall be unique per Chatbot for any given conversation and not be re-used to represent that same user towards other Chatbots.
- R15-2-1-3 No tokenizing shall be required when the user has agreed to share their MSISDN with the Chatbot ('public mode').

NOTE: In 'anonymous mode', the first message has to be sent by the user to the Chatbot (P2A, Person to Application). It is not possible to start a communication in anonymous mode with the Chatbot sending the very first anonymous message (A2P).

### **User Control of anonymization mode**

- R15-2-2 The user shall be able to control the sharing of the user's identity (MSISDN) via explicit consent on a per Chatbot basis:
  - R15-2-2-1 The user shall be able to decide whether to share their MSISDN as the identifier for the communication with a Chatbot ('public mode') or an anonymous user identity ('anonymous mode'). Either the anonymized token or the MSISDN is shared as an identifier for that user in their communication with a Chatbot.
  - R15-2-2-2 The UI implementation shall inform the user whether they are in 'anonymous mode' or in 'public mode' for the current communication with the Chatbot in each conversation.

### **Conversations in anonymous mode**

- R15-2-3 If the conversation between a user and any given Chatbot is in 'anonymous mode', then all messages sent by the user to the Chatbot shall not use the user's MSISDN but the anonymous token to identify the user towards that Chatbot.
  - R15-2-3-1 The UI implementation shall inform the user that they are not sharing their MSISDN within the conversation view.
  - R15-2-3-2 The Chatbot shall be able to send messages to the user's token, and the user shall be able to send messages to the Chatbot in which the token is used to represent the user towards the Chatbot.
  - R15-2-3-3 While in anonymous mode, Network Fallback to SMS (NFS) shall never be used.
  - R15-2-3-4 Re-send messages as SMS from the Chatbot to the user shall not be possible in 'anonymous mode'.
  - R15-2-3-5 A user shall not be able to send SMS messages to the Chatbot while the communication is in anonymous mode, as anonymization for SMS is not available.
    - R15-2-3-5-1 The UI shall avoid (unintentional) sending of SMS messages from the user to the Chatbot.

- R15-2-3-6 Message Status Notifications shall be shared with the Chatbot or MaaP Application as specified in section 5. In this case, the token shall be used as the identifier of the user towards the Chatbot.
- R15-2-3-7 All requirements specified under US5-29 and US5-30 shall be available for conversations with a Chatbot in anonymous mode.
- R15-2-4 If the communication with a selected Chatbot is in 'anonymous mode', then the user shall have the option to reset the anonymous token on manual selection (similar to a "delete cookies" in the Internet ecosystem).
- R15-2-4-1 The Chatbot shall not be able to identify that user or associate that user with any previous user activity, preferences or behaviour from the time before changing the anonymous user token.
- R15-2-4-2 Potential messages from the Chatbot to the previous anonymized token shall not be delivered to the user and the Chatbot shall be informed about this (an 'unknown user error' message).
- R15-2-4-3 When the user selects to reset the token, they shall have to confirm that selection of any previously received Suggested Actions and Suggested Replies may no longer work as expected and potential leakage of privacy relevant user details.
- NOTE: The expected Chatbot behaviour after a change of the anonymous user token is identical to the Chatbot behaviour when a new user starts a conversation with that Chatbot, including, but not limited to, any welcome messages or acceptance of terms and conditions.

### **Conversations in public mode**

- R15-2-5 If any given Chatbot conversation is in 'public mode', then the user's MSISDN shall be used as the identifier for that user towards the Chatbot.
- R15-2-5-1 The UI implementation shall inform the user that they are sharing their MSISDN within the conversation.
- R15-2-5-2 Message Status Notifications shall be shared with the Chatbot or MaaP application as specified in section 5.
- R15-2-5-3 Suggested Actions, Suggested Chip Lists and Suggested Replies shall be visible and selectable.
- R15-2-5-4 void
- R15-2-5-5 Messages sent and received from the Chatbot using the defined (long or short code) SMS number in R15-1-4-9 shall be displayed within the same conversation as messages exchanged with the Chatbot's Service ID.
- R15-2-5-6 When using xMS as the messaging service to send messages from the user to a Chatbot, the communication shall be in public mode.
- R15-2-5-7 All requirements specified under US5-29 and US5-30 shall be available for conversations with a Chatbot in public mode.

### **Transition from 'anonymous mode' to 'public mode'**

- R15-2-6 When the user selects to change from 'anonymous mode' to 'public mode', then the user shall be made aware that their MSISDN is shared from now on with the Chatbot.
- R15-2-7 When a user leaves the 'anonymous mode', then the user's MSISDN shall be used to represent the user in that conversation.
- R15-2-8 In any case, the user shall be informed appropriately and shall be requested to provide their explicit consent to share their MSISDN. If not agreed by the user, the conversation shall stay in anonymous mode.
- R15-2-8-1 In some cases, it might be required by the Chatbot logic that the user needs to be known by their MSISDN. In that case, the user shall be able to link their MSISDN to the conversation history.
- R15-2-8-1-1* If the last known anonymous identity is linked to the MSISDN, the user shall be appropriately informed and provide their explicit consent to link the conversation history (under the last 'token' that was used) with their MSISDN. If not agreed by the user, the history of the Chatbot conversation is not linked to the user's MSISDN.
- R15-2-8-1-2* In order to fulfil local regulation, the information that explains to the user the impact of linking their MSISDN with their previous conversation shall be provided by the operator configuration.
- R15-2-8-1-3* If the last known anonymous identity is linked to the MSISDN, then the anonymous identity shall be invalidated.
- R15-2-9 The validity of any Suggested Actions, Suggested Replies or Suggested Chip Lists from messages previously received in anonymous mode shall be up to the UI implementation; (see section "Representation of 'anonymous mode' and 'public mode' on UI level).
- Implementations using the single threaded view may grey out these Suggested Actions, Suggested Replies or Suggested Chip Lists (not selectable).
  - Implementations using the two-threaded view may want to keep these Suggested Actions, Suggested Replies or Suggested Chip Lists active and selectable.

#### **Transition from 'public mode' to 'anonymous mode'**

- R15-2-10 When a user changes a conversation with a Chatbot from 'public mode' to 'anonymous mode', then a 'token' shall be used to represent the user in all further messages or RCS events sent towards this Chatbot (until the user decides to share their MSISDN again). It shall not be possible for the third party (e.g. Chatbot) to derive the MSISDN from the token.
- R15-2-10-1 The Chatbot shall consider the anonymous conversation as a new conversation without any link to the content of the previous conversation in public mode.
- R15-2-10-2 The behaviour of any Suggested Actions, Suggested Replies or Suggested Chip Lists from the previous conversation shall be defined by the UI implementation.

- Implementations using the single threaded view may grey out these Suggested Actions, Suggested Replies or Suggested Chip Lists (not selectable).
- Implementations using the two-threaded view may want to keep these Suggested Actions, Suggested Replies or Suggested Chip Lists active and selectable.

### **Control of sharing user data**

R15-2-11 The user shall be able to control the sharing of the user's privacy relevant information as detailed below on a per Chatbot conversation basis:

R15-2-11-1 Device Status (that includes device model, operating system version, messaging client identifier and version, and remaining battery charge in minutes). The user needs to agree for any one-time share.

R15-2-11-2 The user's location information. The user needs to agree for any one-time share.

R15-2-11-3 The sending of "Displayed" notifications for received messages from any given Chatbot conversation. At any point in time, either 'Displayed' Message Status Notifications are provided or not; (see US18-17 and subsequent requirements R18-17-5-3).

*R15-2-11-3-1* To make changes on this setting, the user shall be guided to the setting for this Chatbot to allow sharing of the requested information with this Chatbot.

*R15-2-11-3-2* The user shall be able to easily return to the conversation irrespectively of whether the privacy setting has been changed or not.

R15-2-11-4 If the user has restricted sharing of information (as described in R15-2-11 and subsequent requirements R15-2-11-1 to R15-2-11-3-2), but this information is essentially needed to perform a Suggested Action or requested action / function, the Chatbot shall have the opportunity to ask the user to make a specific personal information available.

*R15-2-11-4-1* For features delivered by a one-time information sending from the messaging application to the Chatbot (as described in R15-2-11-1 and R15-2-11-2), the user shall have the option to select sharing of that information by selection of a (by the Chatbot) Suggested Action or Suggested Reply or by selection of the function from the device menu (if provided).

R15-2-12 At any point in time, the user shall be able to modify the sharing of each item of their personal data with permanent relevance on a per Chatbot conversation basis.

R15-2-12-1 The UI shall avoid the situation where preferences with permanent relevance are configured once and "hidden away" in obscure, easy to forget settings or 'Terms and Conditions' pages.

### **Anonymization in a Multi Device Setup**

R15-2-13 If the user uses multiple devices (as described in section 9), then all messages and RCS events the user has exchanged with any given Chatbot shall appear on the primary and any secondary device.

R15-2-14 The user manages each device separately for sharing the MSISDN or anonymization. This means no alignment of this setting across devices is required.

### **Representation of ‘anonymous mode’ and ‘public mode’ on UI level**

R15-2-15 It shall be up to the UI implementation to make the use of ‘anonymous mode’ and ‘public mode’ easy and straightforward for the user. This includes the representation of the two modes in one combined conversation thread or two separated conversation threads with any given Chatbot.

R15-2-15-1 If an implementation uses one conversation thread for communication with any given Chatbot, then:

*R15-2-15-1-1* The communication of the user with the Chatbot shall be set either to ‘anonymous mode’ or to ‘public mode’.

*R15-2-15-1-2* If the conversation is currently in anonymous mode, and the Chatbot or MaaP Application sends a message to that user directed to their MSISDN, then

- the message shall be received within the conversation, and
- any Suggested Actions, Suggested Replies or Suggested Chip Lists shall be displayed but cannot be selected (Suggested Actions and / or Suggested Replies shall be greyed out as they are not selectable), and
- Message Status Notifications shall be reported back to the Chatbot or MaaP Application, and
- the user shall be informed that if they want to answer to that message they should deactivate the ‘anonymous mode’ and share their MSISDN for privacy reasons.

R15-2-15-2 If an implementation uses two conversation threads to represent the communication between the Chatbot and the user, then

*R15-2-15-2-1* one conversation thread for anonymous mode and one conversation thread for public mode shall be used (the UI may differentiate between the two conversation threads using tabs).

*R15-2-15-2-2* the user may “switch between the two modes” implicitly by selection of the conversation.

*R15-2-15-2-3* a given conversation thread shall only be in one mode - either anonymous or public, not both.

*R15-2-15-2-4* two conversation threads with a Chatbot shall only be shown if the user has one anonymous conversation and one public conversation with that Chatbot.

*R15-2-15-2-5* it shall be obvious for the user to be aware at any time in which conversation they are at any given point in time.

*R15-2-15-2-6* changing from one mode to the other shall be performed by switching the conversation threads.

### **Chatbot identity verification**

R15-2-16 It shall be possible to ensure users about the real identity of Chatbots, to avoid Chatbots spoofing an identity that they are not (e.g. by using a popular brand name or icon associated with a party they are not).

R15-2-16-1 It shall be possible for the user to communicate to a selection of verified and unverified Chatbots at any time.

NOTE: It is assumed that there is a high motivation for Chatbots to approach Verification Authorities to be verified.

R15-2-16-2 Chatbots with a valid Verification for subscribers of any given MNO shall be visually distinguished with a verification indicator from unverified Chatbots so users can be certain whether they can trust that they are chatting with the party they intend.

*R15-2-16-2-1* This verification indicator shall be intuitive for the user and in a prominent position.

*R15-2-16-2-2* The verification indicator shall be visible at least in the following places:

- Chatbot Directory or catalogue offered by MNOs

NOTE: there maybe 3rd parties not using the visual differentiation outside the circle of influence of this specification.

- List of conversations in the messaging application.
- Open conversation with a Chatbot.
- UI that displays the Chatbot Profile Information.

*R15-2-16-2-3* If available and on user request (e.g. by clicking the verification indicator), the user shall be able to see the Verification Authority that has verified the Chatbot including the timestamp for when verification was performed.

*R15-2-16-2-4* If available, a Verification Authority logo shall be displayed in a way that is easily discoverable by the user.

*R15-2-16-2-5* The Chatbot Verification shall ensure that the party in control of the Chatbot is eligible to use the chosen brand icon, Chatbot Service Name and Chatbot Service ID.

*R15-2-16-2-6* Any change of the Chatbot brand icon, the Chatbot service name and the Chatbot Service ID shall require a renewal of the verification. Changes in other areas of the Chatbot Information shall not require renewal of the verification.

*R15-2-16-2-7* The verification status shall have a validity period and shall have to be renewed after expiry if representation of the trust mark is still required.

*R15-2-16-2-8* A user shall see a Chatbot as verified if at least one valid verification is available for that Chatbot. A verification shall be invalid for subscribers of a given MNO if:

- The validity of the verification of the Chatbot has expired.
- The Verification Authority that has verified the Chatbot is not accepted by that MNO.
- The verified content in the Chatbot info has been altered after verification.
- The verification mechanism appears to be corrupted or manipulated.

NOTE: The Verified Chatbot status of a Chatbot does not imply anything about the validity of any of the content that the Chatbot may send.

*R15-2-16-2-9* For a Verified Chatbot, MNOs shall be able to recognise the date and time that verification was performed by the Verification Authority.

*R15-2-16-2-10* A Verification Authority should provide the means to enable a Chatbot Platform to obtain the verification signature and status of newly verified Chatbots and manage their lifecycle using automated integration methods.

*R15-2-16-3* The user shall be made aware by non-intrusive UI information whenever the Chatbot Profile Information of any given Chatbot has no valid verification for the subscribers of any given MNO.

NOTE: It is expected that the list of MNO trusted verification authorities does not frequently change (after a ramp-up period).

*R15-2-16-3-1* Any update of the verification status in the Chatbot Directory or search and the list of Chat conversations may not be visible before the Chatbot Information on the device has been updated.

*R15-2-16-3-2* Updates on the Verification Status of a Chatbot, reflected by the trust mark, shall be performed when retrieving the Chatbot Information.

*R15-2-16-3-3* A delay between removing the verified status by the operator and all RCS clients no longer showing the trust mark is acceptable. If, for removal processes, timers are involved, then these timers shall be configurable by the RCS Service Provider.

NOTE: It is agreed to be acceptable that the removal of the trust mark is limited to screen refresh, i.e. if the RCS client displays a UI with the trust mark on and the user does not interact with the UI, then the trust mark may be up on display for longer than the configured period.

NOTE: The requirements as described in R15-5-4 to R15-5-7 (blocking of selected Chatbots or Chatbot Platforms in cases of Spam) are applicable for situations of doubtful verifications as well.

NOTE: It will be very easy and straightforward for Chatbots to find a Verification Authority and go through the process of Chatbot Profile Information verification.

R15-2-16-4 It shall be possible that Chatbots are verified by multiple Verification Authorities.

*R15-2-16-4-1* It shall be up to the MNO to specify a set of Verification Authorities to whom the MNO grants the authority to verify Chatbots for the MNO's subscribers.

*R15-2-16-4-2* MNOs should be able to determine that the credentials that they use to verify verification signatures, were issued by one of their chosen Verification Authorities.

R15-2-16-5 Critical Chatbots shall represent a specific verification indicator only used for Critical Chatbots that helps the user to understand that a Critical Chatbot cannot be blocked or unsubscribed from.

R15-2-17 void

*US15-3* void

*US15-4* **As a user, I want to safely discover and connect with a variety of relevant Chatbots that will help me complete tasks more efficiently than ever before, do more from my messaging application, and/or enrich my Messaging conversations with others.**

R15-4-1 A Chatbot shall be able to limit its own discoverability and availability to specific operator network(s), language(s) and / or countries.

R15-4-2 A Chatbot Platform shall be able to limit the discoverability of its Chatbots towards users of specific operator network(s), language(s) and/or countries.

R15-4-3 The user shall be able to enhance the Chatbot search service by disclosing additional information during their search.

R15-4-3-1 The user shall have the option to enrich the search by disclosing additional information:

- preferred language(s) (default is the language the device is set to (e.g. for display of features and menus), the user shall be able to edit or add other languages they prefer for Chatbot search).
- current location of the device.

R15-4-3-2 If allowed by the user and RCS Service Provider, every search of the user shall be enriched by adding the MSISDN.

NOTE: If the RCS Service Provider has not enabled sharing the MSISDN, this enrichment is not available.

- R15-4-4 All Chatbot Platforms shall maintain a published list of their available Chatbots that can be retrieved, parsed and displayed with their meta-data by any Chatbot discovery method.
- R15-4-5 Messaging implementations shall support a Chatbot search for discovery of Chatbots.
- R15-4-6 void
- R15-4-7 The service shall allow RCS Service Providers to set an address of a managed Chatbot Directory that can offer access to selected Chatbots for their users.
- R15-4-8 A Chatbot search shall be able to search based on Chatbot identifier (i.e. Service ID) and/or any of the Chatbot profile information listed in section 15.
- R15-4-9 Chatbot search results or directory entries shall display at a minimum for each Chatbot found, the Chatbot identifier (Service ID), the service name and the service logo (if available).
- R15-4-10 The user shall be able to initiate a conversation with a Chatbot from the results of any Chatbot search or from a list of Chatbots present in a directory by selecting the chosen Chatbot.

NOTE: All requirements for users starting a new conversation with a Chatbot apply.

- R15-4-11 The RCS client shall enable a Chatbot conversation to be invoked by a user scanning a QR code, entering a (SMS) short or long code linked to a Chatbot, or clicking on a link shared through any online channel e.g. web page, email, Chatbot .

R15-4-11-1 If the user invokes a Chatbot from a deep link and the user already has an existing conversation with this Chatbot, then the ongoing conversation shall be opened within the currently active RCS client and the latest messages exchanged shall be displayed. Otherwise, if there is no existing conversation with that Chatbot on the user's device, then a new conversation shall be created and opened within the currently active RCS client.

*R15-4-11-1-1* Chatbot deep links may use a common domain, rcs.me, to enable a single deep link for all users that is independent from the RCS Service Provider.

*R15-4-11-1-2* The RCS client shall support rcs.me deep links.

*R15-4-11-1-3* The RCS client shall only open conversations with a Chatbot after validating the deep link.

*R15-4-11-1-4* If validation fails, the RCS client shall be directed to a fallback experience (see R15-4-11-3).

*R15-4-11-1-5* A business might launch the same Chatbot on different Chatbot Platforms in accordance with RCS Service Provider policy. Therefore, rcs.me deep links shall direct users to the Chatbot available via the Chatbot Platform relevant to them.

R15-4-11-2 If the Chatbot is invoked, this action shall trigger a Chatbot Welcome Message (which may contain text, Rich Cards and Suggested Actions or Suggested Replies) defined by the Chatbot, delivered by the Chatbot Platform to the user.

*R15-4-11-2-1* An rcs.me deep link may include information to enable a contextual Chatbot Welcome Message. For example, an rcs.me deep link could contain information that indicates the location, such as a store or website, of the deep link.

*R15-4-11-2-2* In processing an rcs.me deep link with contextual information, and before any request is made to the Chatbot Platform, the RCS client shall obtain appropriate user consent, with instructions on how to opt-out, in accordance with applicable laws and Chatbot Platform terms and conditions for businesses.

*R15-4-11-2-3* If the Chatbot Welcome Message is not contextual, it shall only be shown for new conversations.

*R15-4-11-2-4* If the Chatbot Welcome Message cannot be retrieved, the RCS client may notify the user of the error but shall, nonetheless, consider the deep linking successful and allow the user to exchange messages with this Chatbot.

R15-4-11-3 The website or mobile application entry point for an rcs.me deep link shall be able to specify an alternative fallback communication mechanism to support:

*R15-4-11-3-1* Devices which are not RCS capable. In this case the device launches the browser, where the rcs.me domain may redirect the user to an alternate URL fallback defined by the Chatbot.

*R15-4-11-3-2* Devices which are RCS capable, but not RCS enabled. In this case the RCS client shall offer users a URL fallback if available, delivered by the Chatbot Platform.

NOTE: the fallback URL can be a xMS fallback experience if specified by the Chatbot.

*R15-4-11-3-3* Devices which are RCS enabled but the Chatbot is unavailable. If a Chatbot is not available e.g. not launched by the user's RCS Service Provider, the user may see a URL fallback, defined by the Chatbot or Chatbot Platform, delivered by the Chatbot Platform.

R15-4-11-4 If an alternative fallback communication has not been defined for the rcs.me deep link:

*R15-4-11-4-1* If the device is RCS enabled, a user-friendly message may be delivered by the Chatbot Platform.

*R15-4-11-4-2* If the device is not RCS enabled, an RCS client shall display an error message.

R15-4-11-5 If the RCS client is enabled but has no data connection, the application shall display a user-friendly error message.

- R15-4-12 It shall be possible for a Chatbot invocation link that could be displayed on a webpage to be embedded in a QR code, such that the Chatbot is invoked (with the same requirements as in R15-4-11) when the QR code is scanned and the link is opened.
- R15-4-13 It shall be possible to start an RCS conversation by entering a unique Chatbot identifier in the 'to' field of the chat composer. Supported formats for the 'to' field shall be, but not limited to:
- Telephone number (long or short format)
  - email address format
  - Service ID
- R15-4-13-1 If the user enters anything else, a search function may be used to identify available Chatbots matching the user input.
- R15-4-14 Any entry point for the Chatbot conversation shall be able to display two parameters. The parameters are text label and data which define a Suggested Reply (see R15-8-4-5) displayed to the user in the conversation with that Chatbot.
- R15-4-15 When the user starts a new Chatbot conversation, the messaging implementation shall display a Chatbot-specific introduction that does not impede or obscure the Messaging conversation thread. Both the introduction and the Messaging conversation shall be visible.
- R15-4-15-1 void
- R15-4-15-2 This introduction shall contain information about the Chatbot including Service Name (as per R15-1-4-1), Service Icon (as per R15-1-4-2) and Service Description (as per R15-1-4-3) (if available).
- R15-4-15-3 If no Suggested Replies, Suggested Actions or pre-filled messages have been configured, then a button shall also be visible which when being tapped by the user triggers the sending of the first message from the user to the Chatbot. The label of this button shall indicate that pressing this button will "start the conversation".
- R15-4-15-4 void
- R15-4-16 In case the user wants to open a conversation with a Chatbot that is not available to the user, then the user shall be informed accordingly.
- R15-4-17 A Chatbot shall be able to initiate conversations with mobile users directly, provided that the user has authorised the Chatbot to do so and the Chatbot is authorised to communicate with that specific user, e.g. via any 'offline channels' between businesses and customers they have a relationship with.
- R15-4-18 void
- R15-4-19 void
- R15-4-20 void

R15-4-21 A Chatbot Gallery entry point shall be available for users to find within one click from their messaging client

NOTE: The Chatbot Gallery is a place for users to discover new content and brands that are available to interact with via an RCS conversation.

R15-4-21-1 The contents of the Chatbot Gallery shall be controlled by the MNO and shall provide a selection of Chatbots for the users to start conversations with.

R15-4-21-2 The Chatbot Gallery shall provide the selection of Chatbots for the users to start conversations with.

R15-4-21-3 Chatbot conversations may be started by the website using either deep links or a native interface provided by the messaging application.

R15-4-21-4 The exchange of user identifiable information shall follow R15-4-3.

R15-4-21-5 The user shall be able to navigate easily between their Messaging conversation threads and the Chatbot Gallery.

**US15-5 As a user, I want to avoid spam and be able to unsubscribe from Chatbot messages.**

R15-5-1 A user shall only receive messages from authorized Chatbots (i.e. Chatbots that have the user's consent to contact the user based on their MSISDN or have been contacted by the user in the first place).

R15-5-2 A user shall be able to block/unblock individual Chatbots locally on the device.

R15-5-2-1 The user shall not be able to block "Critical Chatbots".

R15-5-2-2 The blocking feature shall not be available to users on the UI in case of Critical Chatbots (it shall only be available for other Chatbots or contacts).

NOTE: Blocking a Chatbot is expected not to display any Operator Messages on the user's device, including RCS messages and xMS messages.

R15-5-3 A user shall be able to report a Chatbot for various types of inappropriate behaviour to the MNO/RCS Service Provider and Chatbot Platform from within the Chatbot conversation.

R15-5-3-1 A user shall be able to report a Chatbot for "Spam", e.g. in cases where the Chatbot continuously sends unsolicited messages.

R15-5-3-2 A user shall be able to report a Chatbot for "Fraud", e.g. in cases where the user has paid for goods which were not delivered.

R15-5-3-3 A user shall be able to report a Chatbot for "Inappropriate Content", e.g. in cases where the user has received inappropriate content from a Chatbot.

R15-5-3-4 A user shall be able to report a Chatbot for "Other" inappropriate behaviour for cases that are perceived inappropriate by the users but do not fall in one of the above-mentioned three categories.

- R15-5-3-5 Users shall have the option to enter a reason for reporting inappropriate behaviour in a free text field and / or attach selected messages exchanged with that Chatbot for explanation.
- R15-5-3-6 The implementation shall ensure that the user understands that the report function as described in R15-5-3-1 to R15-5-3-4 does not replace any complaints of the user towards the Chatbot, e.g. in cases where the user expects the Chatbot to reimburse payments of undelivered goods etc.
- R15-5-4 The service shall facilitate an MNO and/or RCS Service Provider to block/unblock Chatbots that have been frequently reported for inappropriate behaviour on their network.
- R15-5-5 The service shall facilitate an RCS Service Provider to block/unblock all Chatbots published by a specific Chatbot provider.
- R15-5-6 Blocking a Chatbot by an MNO or RCS Service Provider shall prevent future discoverability of that Chatbot by the user and prevent the exchange (sending and receiving) of all messages, files etc. with that Chatbot.
- NOTE: Blocking a Chatbot is expected not to display any Operator Messages on the user's device, including RCS messages and xMS messages.
- R15-5-7 If a user tries to message a Chatbot that was blocked by an MNO or RCS Service Provider, an MNO / RCS Service Provider configurable user-friendly "error message" shall be displayed to indicate that the Chatbot is not available.
- R15-5-8 The reported information shall be made available to the MNO and the Chatbot Platform Provider in a format that can easily be monitored in a database software so that the above-mentioned countermeasures can be triggered in an efficient and effective way.
- R15-5-9 If a Chatbot has been blocked, users shall still be able to see the Chatbot Information that likely contains other ways to get in touch, e.g. Telephone number or email address.
- R15-5-10 The user shall be able to unsubscribe from and (re)subscribe to a Chatbot from within the RCS client.
- R15-5-10-1 The RCS client shall support a Chatbot unsubscribe option for users that is easily discoverable. For example, an unsubscribe option may be positioned 1 click away from the Chatbot conversation screen.
- R15-5-10-2 There shall be at least one affordance in the RCS client, and always available to the user, to unsubscribe.
- R15-5-10-3 Additional affordance and their appearance patterns should be defined by the RCS client.
- R15-5-10-4 Unsubscribe means users will unsubscribe from all message traffic categories from a given Chatbot except those that are exempt, specifically:
- R15-5-10-4-1* Authentication traffic defined in R15-7-2-6,
- R15-5-10-4-2* Service request traffic defined in R15-7-2-5,

*R15-5-10-4-3*User acknowledgement traffic defined in R15-7-2-7.

R15-5-10-5 When a user chooses to unsubscribe from a Chatbot, the RCS client shall send an unsubscribe message to the Chatbot, which is not visible to the user.

*R15-5-10-5-1*Once sent, the RCS client shall provide a visual acknowledgement to the user.

R15-5-10-6 The RCS client shall support the following Chatbot unsubscribe reasons:

*R15-5-10-6-1*“Not signed up”, e.g. in cases where the Chatbot sends messages without prior user consent.

*R15-5-10-6-2*“No longer interested”, e.g. in cases where the messages from the Chatbot are no longer relevant for the user.

*R15-5-10-6-3*“Too many messages”, e.g. in cases where the Chatbot sends too many messages.

*R15-5-10-6-4*“Other” for cases where the user wants to unsubscribe for a reason different from the above-mentioned categories.

*R15-5-10-6-5*Users shall have the option to enter a reason for unsubscribing in a free text field, in cases where “Other” is selected.

R15-5-10-7 The Chatbot Platform or the RCS client may define additional reasons to unsubscribe.

R15-5-10-8 The RCS client may display a (re)subscribe functionality that is easily discoverable by the end user for Chatbots that have been previously unsubscribed from by the user.

NOTE: (Re)subscribe means users will subscribe to all message traffic categories.

NOTE: If the user sends a message to the Chatbot after an unsubscribe event, the Chatbot can respond, acknowledging the user message and provide options to, for example, re-subscribe.

R15-5-10-9 When a user chooses to subscribe the RCS client should send a new subscription request to the Chatbot.

NOTE: The Chatbot can acknowledge this request, confirming the subscription scope and status.

R15-5-10-10 Once the user unsubscribes from a Chatbot, the Chatbot conversation thread shall not be deleted from the RCS client.

NOTE: If a user has (re)subscribed to a Chatbot via a different channel e.g. retail store, website or some other means, it is the Chatbot owner’s responsibility to comply with the user request to subscribe.

R15-5-10-11 If the sending of a subscription request (as per R15-5-10-9) or of an unsubscribe message (as per R15-5-10-5) to the Chatbot fails, the client shall notify the user that their request has not been processed.

**US15-6 As a user, I want to be able to pay for goods and services offered to me by Chatbots.**

- R15-6-1 A Chatbot shall be able to propose one or more payment options to a user during a conversational exchange in order for the user to complete purchase of goods or services.
- R15-6-2 The payment options proposed to the user shall include carrier billing (e.g. via add to bill API or RCS premium event charging) where available and other third party payment services that the Chatbot would like to offer.
- R15-6-3 The Chatbot may also offer the option to complete payment within the conversation thread, in which case it shall be able to request specific payment information from the user (e.g. credit card details).
- R15-6-4 Any payment information transmitted via the Chatbot conversation shall be adequately secured and in line with the current industry requirements for payment security (e.g. credit card numbers, cvv, etc.).
- R15-6-5 Traffic associated with making payments (via carrier billing, third party service or direct settlement as described in R15-6-3) shall be labelled and identifiable as such.

**US15-7 As an MNO, I want to be able to monitor and track the interactions between my customers and the Chatbot services.**

- R15-7-1 Technical means shall be provided that allow MNOs and Chatbot Platforms to measure all RCS-based events exchanged in each direction per Chatbot on a per user basis (i.e. completed with the Chatbot's unique Service ID and the user's MSISDN or identifier) per RCS Service (including 1-to-1 Messaging, Geo-Location Push, Audio Messaging, File Transfer).
- R15-7-2 Technical means shall be provided to label and differentiate the traffic into the following categories
  - R15-7-2-1 Traffic that confirms a monetary transaction between user and Chatbot and its value (i.e. payment category of traffic). This category includes referrals to third-party websites for completion of transactions.
- NOTE: Transmitting the monetary value is based on bi-lateral agreements between Chatbot provider and MNO.
- NOTE: Carrier billing requirements are out of scope of this document.
- R15-7-2-2 Traffic that contains advertising (i.e. advertising category of traffic).
- R15-7-2-3 Traffic that delivers premium value content (i.e. messages or files containing content that needs to be paid for by the user e.g. via his mobile bill) and its value.
- R15-7-2-4 Traffic belonging to subscriptions.
- R15-7-2-5 Traffic supporting service requests which are triggered by a specific user journey and have explicit user consent from users (e.g. receive information or transaction confirmation).

R15-7-2-6 Traffic supporting authentication (e.g. OTP and 2FA messages)

R15-7-2-7 Traffic supporting acknowledgement in response to user requests.

NOTE: Consistent with the respective RCS Service Provider policies, all Chatbots (businesses) are expected to send an “acknowledgement” message when:

- Users send explicit unsubscribe requests. If the business cannot fulfil this request via messaging, the Chatbot can direct users to the relevant website or account management tool that enables users to change their user preferences.
- Users modify consent and communication preferences over a different channel (e.g. web, telephone, Chatbots).

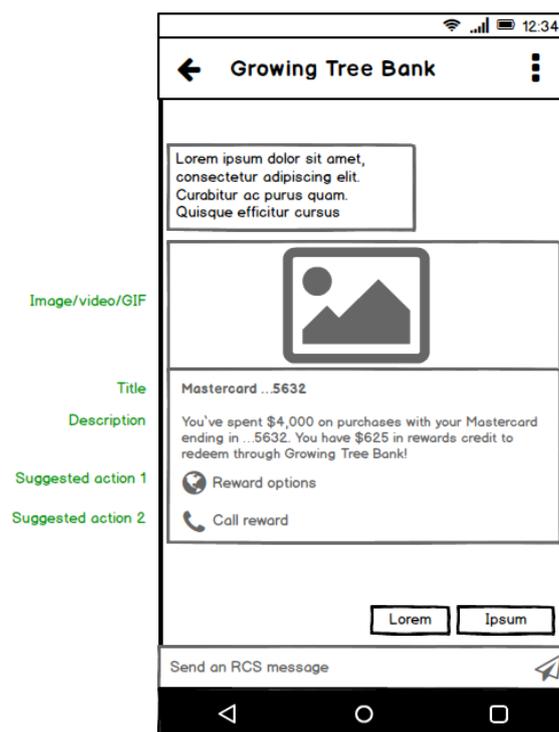
Acknowledgement messages can provide information on how to manage their communications preferences (e.g. how to resubscribe or change the method of delivery for service or account related messages).

**US15-8 As a user, I want to enjoy the benefits of rich Chatbot communication features.**

R15-8-1 The MNO shall have the ability to define and control the set of RCS services available to the Chatbot platform.

R15-8-1-1 If an operator doesn't offer certain RCS services to a Chatbot / Chatbot Platform, then that Chatbot / Chatbots on that platform shall not be able to offer those services to a user (e.g. if the MNO or RCS Service Provider does not allow “Geolocation Push” for that Chatbot Platform, any Suggested Reply would not contain an action to share location).

R15-8-2 xMS may be available in a conversation with a Chatbot in both directions when conditions allow and when the conversation is not in anonymous mode (i.e. the SMS number is known by each party) and shall be displayed in the same conversation window.



**Figure 6: UX example for static Rich Card / Suggested Chip List**

R15-8-3 A Chatbot shall be able to send a Static Rich Card that provides a single 'message bubble' with a static layout and a style that integrates interactive content abilities.

NOTE: Static Rich Cards cannot be updated once sent by the Chatbot. Any later content update must be processed and sent as a new Static Rich Card.

R15-8-4 The static layout and interactive content abilities of the 'message bubble' shall be based on a set of defined templates as defined in R15-8-24 and following requirements supporting the following elements, each of which is optional to compose a Static Rich Card:

R15-8-4-1 Text field(s), such as title, sub-title, description;

NOTE: It is up to the RCS client implementation how the text in each field is styled

R15-8-4-2 Image(s) (not animated);

R15-8-4-3 Video(s);

R15-8-4-4 Audio(s);

NOTE: It is highly recommended that if allowed by user settings (see US18-21), RCS client implementations consider a (muted) auto-play experience for videos when the Static Rich Card is displayed in the conversation view.

R15-8-4-5 Suggested Replies which render with a non-empty text label and, when tapped, shall send a reply to the Chatbot consisting of the text as well as data if needed by the Chatbot – not seen by user – indicating which Suggested Reply was tapped;

NOTE: This data might be used by the Chatbot to differentiate between Suggested Replies with the same text but associated with different Chatbot messages.

R15-8-4-6 Suggested Actions, which shall render with a Contextual Icon and a non-empty text label and be distinguishable to Suggested Replies, when tapped, shall be able to trigger one of the following:

*R15-8-4-6-1* Open a web URL (which shall be used to open either an integrated webview, the default web browser or an associated application, if installed on the device);

*R15-8-4-6-2* Initiate a voice call to a defined destination (i.e. open dialler with number prefilled by the Chatbot). If the conversation is in anonymous mode, then the call shall be set up without presenting the user's MSISDN (i.e. CLIR active). If this cannot be ensured, the option to set up a call shall not be available if the conversation is in anonymous mode;

*R15-8-4-6-3* Compose an Enriched Call to a defined destination (i.e. open Enriched Calling Call Composer with destination and call title, prefilled by the Chatbot). (This Suggested Action shall only be offered if the required capabilities are confirmed);

*R15-8-4-6-4* Initiate a video call to a defined destination (i.e. open video dialler with destination prefilled by the Chatbot). (This Suggested Action shall only be offered if the required capabilities are confirmed);

*R15-8-4-6-5* Initiate the recording and sending of an audio or video message to a defined destination (i.e. open audio or video message recording interface with number prefilled by the Chatbot);

*R15-8-4-6-6* Send a message to a defined destination (i.e. open messaging interface to number prefilled by the Chatbot with content prefilled by the Chatbot but editable by the user);

*R15-8-4-6-7* Send a geolocation push back to the Chatbot (i.e. open the location chooser UI);

*R15-8-4-6-8* Open the user's default mapping app to a position indicated by either latitude-longitude coordinates or a mapping search query;

*R15-8-4-6-9* Open the user's default calendar app to the new event page, with start time, end time, title, and description pre-filled;

*R15-8-4-6-10* Send a response to a request to the user to grant a permission about sharing specific pieces of personal information with the Chatbot (according to R15-2-2, e.g. MSISDN, device specifics, user's location, enabling sending of "displayed" notifications etc.). The user shall be informed that such an acceptance of the request will change his privacy settings towards that Chatbot and have therefore an impact on his future sharing. The change will be permanent until further changes are made again by the user.

- R15-8-4-6-11* When the user's MSISDN is not set to "share" with the Chatbot, then any Suggested Actions matching R15-8-4-6-3 to R15-8-4-6-6 shall not be presented to the user.
- R15-8-4-6-12* When the user's location is not set to "share" with the Chatbot, then any Suggested Actions matching R15-8-4-6-7 shall not be presented to the user.
- R15-8-4-6-13* Copy a business defined text e.g. voucher code, OTP to the device clipboard.
- R15-8-4-7 The RCS client shall use a default Contextual Icon to visually represent each type of Suggested Action as listed in the R15-8-4-6.
- R15-8-4-7-1* For each type of Suggested Action, the RCS client shall consistently use a default Contextual Icon. The choice of the icon is left to client implementation.
- R15-8-4-7-2* The RCS client shall replace the Contextual Icon for the Suggested Action to open a web URL (see R15-8-4-6-1) with the icon of the associated application, if installed on the device.
- R15-8-5 When the user taps on a Suggested Action, an event shall be sent to the Chatbot indicating that the user has done so and exactly which Suggested Action was tapped.
- R15-8-6 Static Rich Cards may be grouped together and displayed in scrollable "carousel" format containing up to twelve Static Rich Cards.
- R15-8-7 Limitations configured by the RCS Service Provider for automatic download of files shall be applied also when receiving a Static Rich Card.
- R15-8-8 A Chatbot shall be able to send a Suggested Chip List that provides the user with quick interaction options.
- R15-8-9 A Suggested Chip List shall be conceptually associated with a message from the Chatbot, and this association is specified by the Chatbot.
- R15-8-9-1* A Suggested Chip List must not be shown by default unless the associated Chatbot message is the most recent message within the conversation.
- NOTE: Suggested Replies in the rich card are expected not to disappear after the next user input.
- R15-8-9-2* An RCS client implementation may offer the user a mechanism to view the Suggested Chip List associated with a message that is not the most recent within a conversation, but this must not be the default UI.
- R15-8-9-3* A Chatbot shall not send a Suggested Chip List without an associated message.
- R15-8-10 A Suggested Chip List may contain:
- R15-8-10-1* Suggested Replies, as defined in R15-8-4-5;
- R15-8-10-2* Suggested Actions, as defined in R15-8-4-6.

- R15-8-11 A Suggested Chip List shall not contain more than eleven Suggested Replies and/or Suggested Actions combined.
- R15-8-12 Chips (i.e. Suggested Replies and Actions) shall always be displayed in the order in which the Chatbot provided them in the Suggested Chip List.
- R15-8-13 A Chatbot shall be able to specify a set of Suggested Replies (as per R15-8-4-5) and Suggested Actions (as per R15-8-4-6) that constitute a Persistent Menu.
- R15-8-13-1 Persistent Menu shall be only used in a 1-to-1 conversation between a user and a Chatbot.
- R15-8-13-2 Persistent Menu can contain up to three levels of hierarchy—i.e. top level, one level deep, two levels deep—which are specified by the Chatbot.
- R15-8-13-2-1* While navigating the Persistent Menu, the user shall have a means to navigate to the previous level of hierarchy—e.g. from one level deep to top level—provided the user is not within the top level already.
- R15-8-13-3 Each level of hierarchy shall contain at most five items, where each item is a Suggested Action or Suggested Reply, or a menu item to navigate to a deeper level of the hierarchy.
- R15-8-13-4 At any point within a conversation with a Chatbot, the Persistent Menu shall be displayed on user action / request and the user is able to select one of the Suggested Actions or Suggested Replies, or a menu item to navigate to a deeper level of the hierarchy.
- R15-8-13-5 If the Persistent Menu is presented to the user, the user shall have the option to make the Persistent Menu disappear.
- R15-8-13-6 A Chatbot's Persistent Menu shall be the same for all users interacting with that Chatbot.
- R15-8-13-7 Updates to the Persistent Menu shall be applied when changes were made by the Chatbot provider and the user opens the conversation with the Chatbot.
- R15-8-14 Both a Chatbot provider and the user shall receive the following states for their sent messages, file transfers, and Static Rich Cards:
- R15-8-14-1 Pending;
- R15-8-14-2 Sent;
- R15-8-14-3 Delivered;
- R15-8-14-4 Displayed (if enabled for that conversation);
- NOTE: Displayed status might not be supported by all networks.
- R15-8-14-5 Failed.

R15-8-15 If a Static Rich Card cannot be successfully delivered as the recipient is offline, the RCS Service Provider shall store the RCS event and deliver once the user is back online (i.e. 'Store & Forward').

R15-8-16 void

R15-8-16-1 void

R15-8-16-2 void

R15-8-16-3 The Chatbot shall be able to remove any RCS event, including, but not limited to Rich Cards, that was previously sent by this Chatbot at any time before the RCS event has been delivered to the recipient's device.

NOTE: In contrast to P2P messaging, this is valid whether the terminating network supports NFS or not.

R15-8-16-4 The network shall notify the Chatbot of successful removal of RCS event from the network store & forward.

R15-8-16-5 CFS shall never be used to re-send messages via SMS in conversations with Chatbots.

R15-8-17 When a new message from a Chatbot is received and the conversation with the Chatbot is not in front view, a notification of this incoming event shall be displayed (same as for P2P events). The notification shall use the logo and service name from the Chatbot provider (as in the conversation thread), even if it is not stored within the Messaging implementation.

R15-8-18 The notification sound from an incoming Chatbot event should be configurable to distinguish it from P2P event notifications (see R18-6-3).

R15-8-19 A user should be able to mute notifications per individual Chatbot conversation (see R18-6-4).

R15-8-20 void

R15-8-21 void

R15-8-22 void

R15-8-23 void

### **Static Rich Cards**

R15-8-24 There shall be one type of static rich cards: general purpose cards.

R15-8-25 void

NOTE: Domain-specific cards are not in scope of this Universal Profile. This document focuses exclusively on general purpose cards.

R15-8-26 General purpose cards shall be comprised of generic fields—e.g. image, title text, description text—with a generic layout according to a Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) (if provided).

### **Persistence**

R15-8-27 General purpose cards shall be persistent. They do not disappear like Suggested Actions and Suggested Replies in a Suggested Chip List.

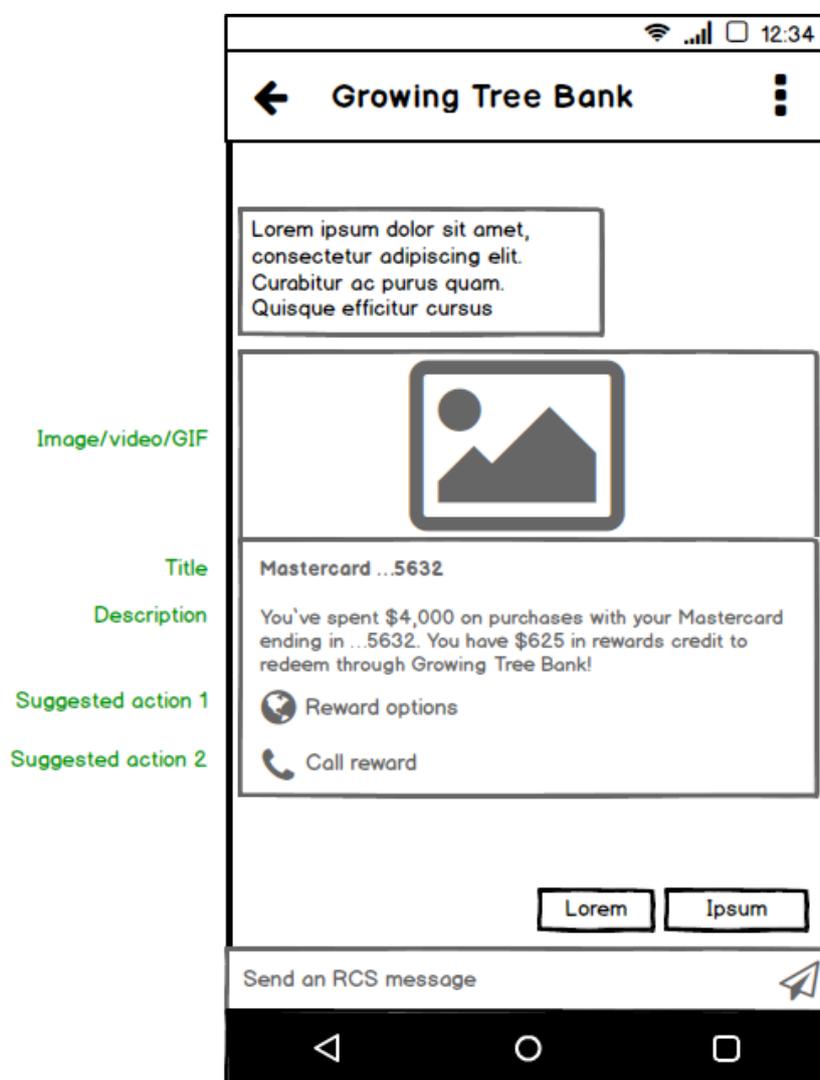
**Fields**

R15-8-28 A general purpose card shall contain the following generic fields, which should be laid out in this relative order:

1. Media: image, GIF, video, or audio file
2. Title text
3. Description text
4. List of Suggested Replies and Suggested Actions

R15-8-28-1 Each of these fields shall be optional, although at least one of fields 1-3 must be included to form a viable general purpose card. The layout order of the fields cannot be changed (with the exception of the horizontal standalone card, discussed below).

NOTE: Here is an example of a standalone general purpose card:



**Figure 7: Standalone Rich Card example**

**Carousels**

R15-8-29 It shall be possible to send multiple general purpose cards as a carousel in a single message. (The max number is discussed below.)

R15-8-29-1 The cards are sent simultaneously—as part of the same message—and in the order that the RCS client should render them in. The carousel can be scrolled horizontally.

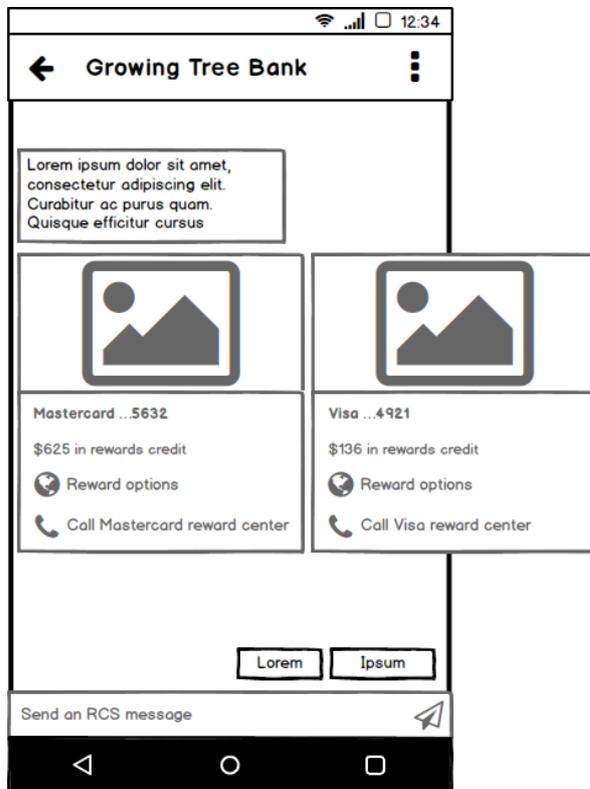


Figure 8: Rich Card Carousel example

### Dimensions & Layout

#### - Standalone Card Width

R15-8-30 A general purpose card that is not part of a carousel should expand in width to the smaller of either:

- $\langle \text{width of the device in portrait mode} \rangle - \langle \text{width of the margins on either side of a card} \rangle$
- MAX\_STANDALONE\_CARD\_WIDTH

NOTE: The MAX\_STANDALONE\_CARD\_WIDTH ensures that cards do not stretch too widely on tablets and desktop.

**Recommendation:** MAX\_STANDALONE\_CARD\_WIDTH = 480 DP

NOTE: The width of a standalone card will always be the same in both portrait and landscape mode for a given device.

#### - Carousel Card Width

R15-8-31 For general purpose cards that are part of a carousel, the developer chooses whether the cards in that carousel should have SMALL\_WIDTH: 120 DP or MEDIUM\_WIDTH: 232 DP.

NOTE: **Recommendation:**

- SMALL\_WIDTH: 120 DP
- MEDIUM\_WIDTH: 232 DP

NOTE: For example:

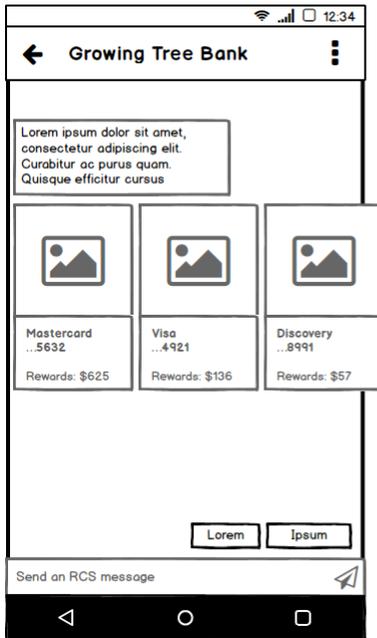


Figure 9: SMALL\_WIDTH

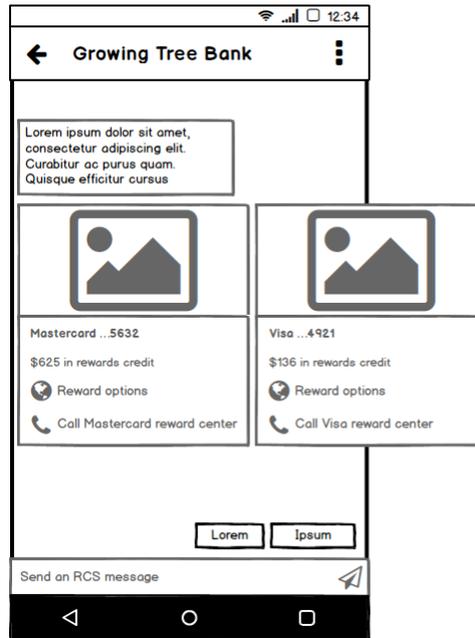


Figure 10: MEDIUM\_WIDTH

**- Height**

R15-8-32 Standalone cards have a MIN\_CARD\_HEIGHT and MAX\_CARD\_HEIGHT.

NOTE: **Recommendation:**

- MIN\_CARD\_HEIGHT: 112 DP
- MAX\_CARD\_HEIGHT: 344 DP

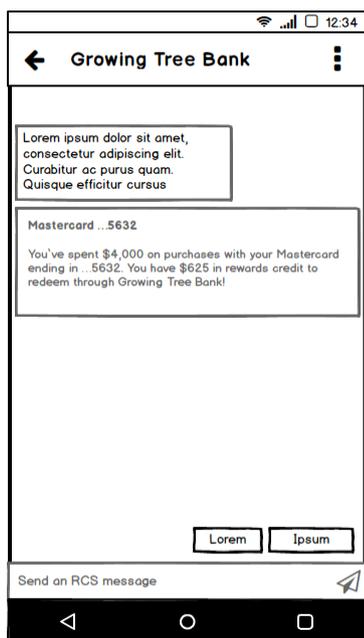


Figure 11: MIN\_CARD\_HEIGHT

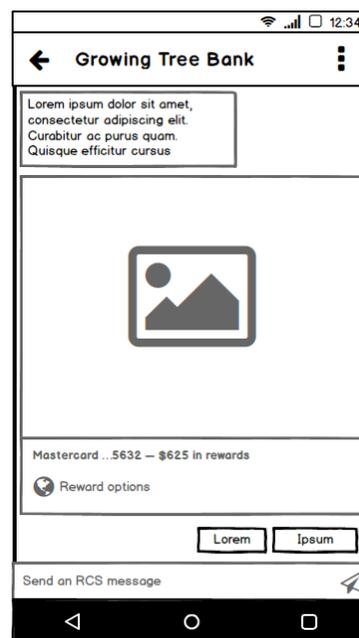


Figure 12: MAX\_CARD\_HEIGHT

R15-8-33 MEDIUM\_WIDTH carousel cards shall have the same min and max heights as standalone cards. SMALL\_WIDTH carousel cards have the same min height but a smaller max height: MAX\_SMALL\_WIDTH\_CARD\_HEIGHT.

NOTE: Recommendation: MAX\_SMALL\_WIDTH\_CARD\_HEIGHT = 224 DP.

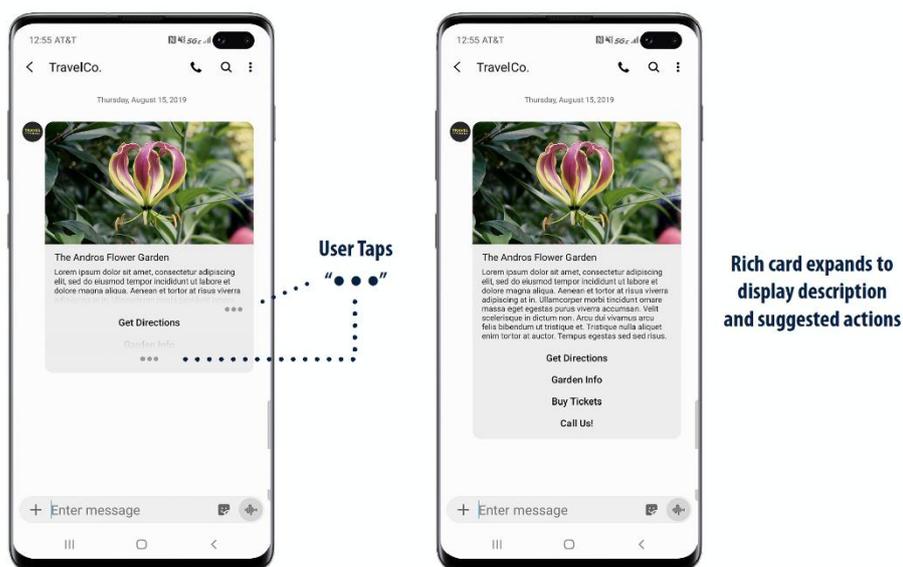
R15-8-34 If the fields of a card are not large enough to fill the MIN\_CARD\_HEIGHT, then the card shall be expanded with white space at the bottom.

R15-8-35 If a card will exceed the MAX\_CARD\_HEIGHT, then the fields shall be truncated in the following order until it will not exceed MAX\_CARD\_HEIGHT: (3) description → (2) title → (4) Suggested Replies and Suggested Actions (starting from the end of the list).

R15-8-35-1 The user shall be presented with an option to view the truncated fields.

Example below to illustrate the expansion of the truncated description and

### Suggested Actions



**Figure 13: Example of Rich Card with truncated fields**

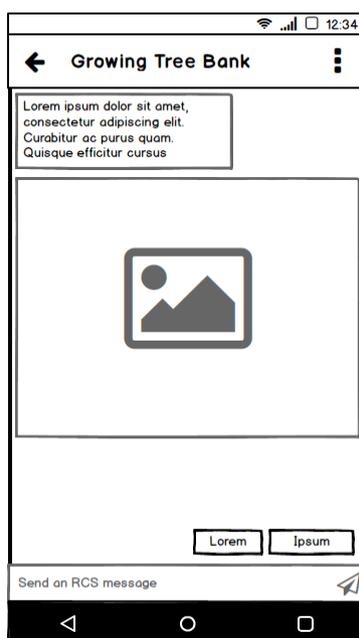
**NOTE:** The expansion of the truncated fields may result in exceeding the `MAX_CARD_HEIGHT` and therefore the card shall be expanded beyond the `MAX_CARD_HEIGHT` to show all the truncated fields based on the users selection to expand the content.

### Media

**R15-8-36** A media file—image, GIF, video, or audio file —shall extend to the edges of the card on all sides, except for the bottom when there are other specified fields.

**NOTE:** Auto-Download of Media Elements in Rich Cards and Carousels will follow the user settings for File Transfer Auto Download as specified in US18-8 and subsequent requirements and operator configuration.

**R15-8-37** If a card contains a media file and no other fields, then the media shall extend to all edges:



**Figure 14: Example of Standalone Rich Card containing only media**

R15-8-38 When the media is an animated GIF, the file will automatically animate either in a single or continuous loop depending on the asset attributes.

### Media Heights

R15-8-39 For a standalone card or MEDIUM\_WIDTH carousel card, the developer shall be able to choose one of three heights for the media:

1. SHORT\_HEIGHT
2. MEDIUM\_HEIGHT
3. TALL\_HEIGHT

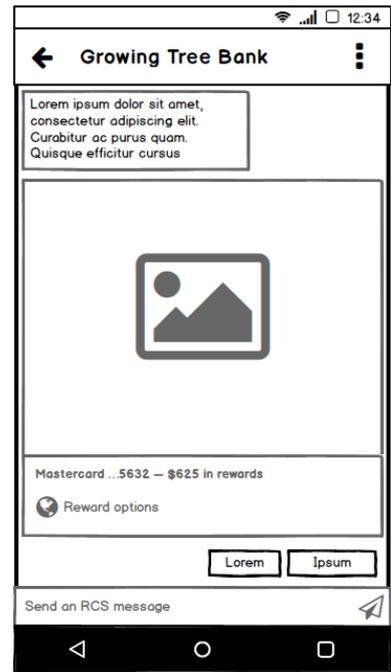
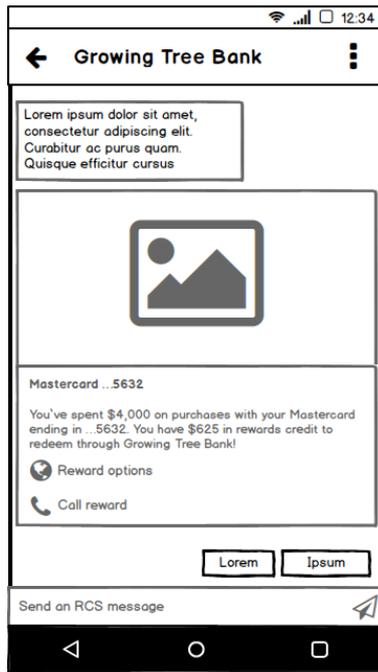
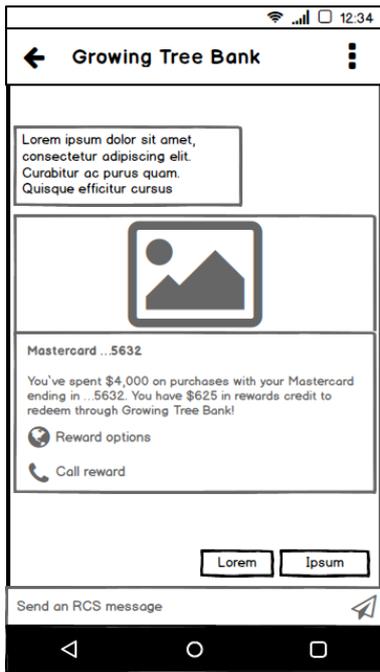
NOTE: Recommendation:

- SHORT\_HEIGHT = 112 DP & ASPECT RATIO = 3:1
- MEDIUM\_HEIGHT = 168 DP & ASPECT RATIO = 1.56:1
- TALL\_HEIGHT = 264 DP & ASPECT RATIO = 9:10
- Media designed for TALL\_HEIGHT can be used with all media heights and the media shall be cropped as follows if using the aspect ratio provided:



**Figure 15: Illustration for Media Height**

R15-8-40 For a SMALL\_WIDTH carousel card, the developer shall be able to choose only SHORT\_HEIGHT and MEDIUM\_HEIGHT



**Figure 16: SHORT\_HEIGHT    Figure 17: MEDIUM\_HEIGHT    Figure 18: TALL\_HEIGHT**

**NOTE:** Elements in the middle of the image should be the most important as the top and bottom of the image are subject to cropping across various circumstances and therefore healthy margins should exist around all sides.

### **Title Text**

R15-8-41 The title text shall wrap if it exceeds the width of the card. There shall not be any line or character limit for the title text, although it may be truncated due to max card height constraints.

R15-8-41-1 The text in the title field can be bold, in italics, underlined or simple text which is set by the Chatbot.

R15-8-41-2 The Title text should be left aligned and displayed on a single line (this is flipped to the right aligned for right-to-left languages).

R15-8-41-3 The user shall be given the option to view any truncated text.

### **Description Text**

R15-8-42 The description text shall wrap if it exceeds the width of the card. There shall not be any limit to how many lines of description text. However, this is the first field to be truncated if the card exceeds the maximum total height.

R15-8-42-1 The text in the description field can be bold, in italics, underlined or simple text which is set by the Chatbot.

R15-8-42-2 The description text should be left aligned (this is flipped to the right aligned for right-to-left languages).

R15-8-42-3 If the description field is being truncated, then the following shall be made available to the user

*R15-8-42-3-1* The first line of the truncated description field shall always be visible to the user.

*R15-8-42-3-2* The user shall be given the option to view any truncated text.

### **Suggested Replies and Suggested Actions**

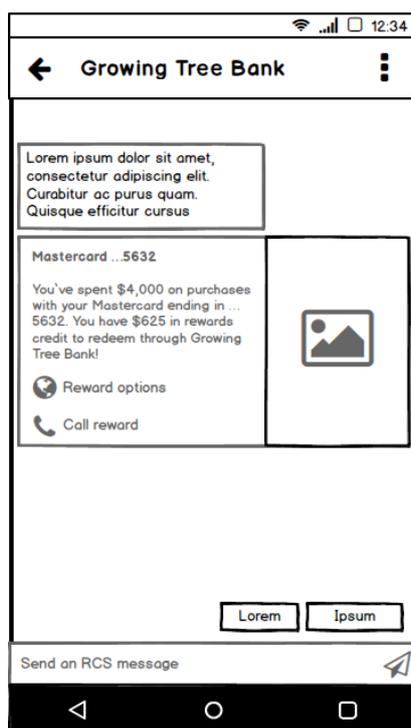
R15-8-43 Suggested Replies and Suggested Actions shall be stacked. The text label for a given Suggested Reply or Suggested Action is truncated after a maximum of 25 characters.

R15-8-43-1 At most 4 combined Suggested Replies and Suggested Actions shall be possible to be included in a single card. However, it is highly unlikely that 4 Suggested Replies and Suggested Actions can be rendered given max card height constraints and the truncation logic described above.

R15-8-43-2 The user shall be given the option to view any truncated Suggested Actions and Suggested Replies.

### **Horizontal Standalone Cards**

R15-8-44 A standalone card can choose to have its media file on the right side (this is flipped to the left side for right-to-left languages):



**Figure 19: Example of Horizontal Standalone Rich Card**

R15-8-44-1 In these cards, the displayed image width should be the smaller value of either

- HORIZONTAL\_LAYOUT\_MEDIA\_WIDTH or
- Dynamic based on the height of the media object chosen by the developer with an Aspect Ratio as defined in R15-8-44-2

NOTE: Recommendation: HORIZONTAL\_LAYOUT\_MEDIA\_WIDTH = 128 DP.

*R15-8-44-1-1* The developer shall be able to choose all the media heights required in R15-8-39.

R15-8-44-2 Media Aspect Ratio for Horizontal Rich Cards:

*R15-8-44-2-1* Media objects that respect an aspect ratio of 1 : 2.5 shall be represented without distortion or cut off areas.

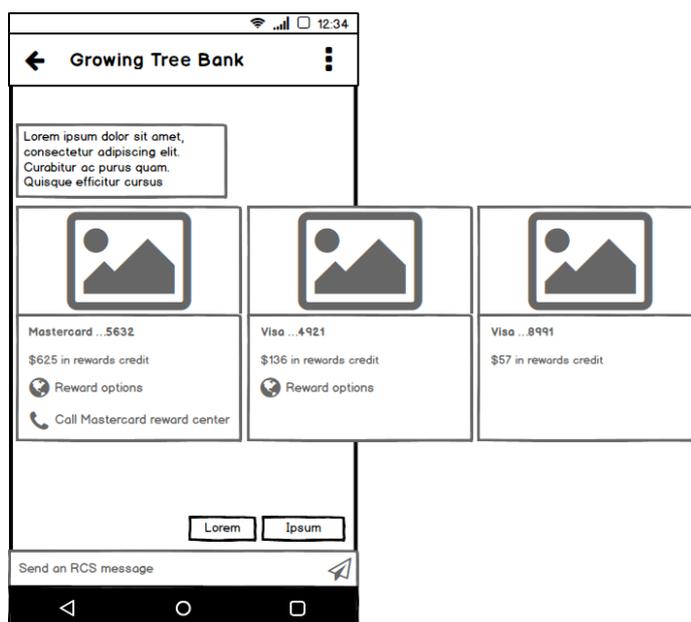
R15-8-44-3 The Height of the horizontal rich card is dynamic based on the media object with a MAX Height = 264 DP

NOTE: Elements in the middle of the image are the most important as the left and right of the image are subject to cropping across various circumstances and therefore healthy margins should exist around all sides.

## Carousels

R15-8-45 There shall be at least 2 and up to 12 cards within a carousel. If more than 12 cards are sent within the same message, the RCS client shall either ignore the additional cards or it can choose to load them on an asynchronous basis, e.g. when the user begins scrolling.

R15-8-45-1 Within a carousel, the fields within all cards must be vertically aligned. This is accomplished through the following rules:



**Figure 20: Example of Rich Card Carousel**

*R15-8-45-1-1* All media files within the cards shall have the same height

*R15-8-45-1-2* All title fields within the cards shall have the same height, which is the height of the largest title text field. Title fields with fewer lines are padded with whitespace below the text to match the height of the largest title field.

*R15-8-45-1-3* Description fields and Suggested Actions shall follow the same logic as title fields for height matching

## Interactions

R15-8-46 Tapping a Suggested action within a card shall have the same effect as tapping a Suggested Action within a Suggested Chip List, i.e. the action is taken and an interaction call-back is sent to the Chatbot for the purpose of analytics. There is no residual indication of selection in the UI.

R15-8-47 Tapping a Suggested Reply within a card shall have a similar but different effect as tapping a Suggested Reply within a Suggested Chip List. The similarity is that, when tapped, the user sends the Suggested Reply text to the conversation, and invisible postback data is sent to the Chatbot along with the text. The difference is that, once a Suggested Reply is tapped in a Suggested Chip List, the Suggested Chip List disappears because it is no longer associated with the last message in the conversation; whereas when a Suggested Reply is tapped in a rich card, the Suggested replies and Suggested Actions in the rich card do not disappear.

R15-8-48 Tapping any media element of a carousel (e.g. image/GIF, as in R15-8-28, point 1) shall open the carousel in full-screen mode.

- R15-8-48-1 The user shall have the option to return to the conversation by tap on the usual “back” function of the device operating system at any time.
- R15-8-48-2 The carousel in full screen view shall present the last centred Rich Card as seen before in the conversation view.
- R15-8-48-3 All Rich Cards of the carousel shall present Suggested Actions and Suggested Replies as defined by the developer. These Suggested Actions and Suggested Replies are selectable by the user and will perform the selected function upon selection.
- R15-8-48-4 If the media element of a Rich Card contains options to be selected by the user (e.g. enlarge picture, play animated gif, play video, play audio), these shall be presented to the user as a Suggested Action.
- R15-8-48-5 Standard device rotation features (if allowed by the user) shall be applied if the user turns the device, e.g. from portrait view to landscape view.
- R15-8-48-6 Standard zoom in / zoom out shall function for Rich Card media elements as usual in other native media applications (e.g. media gallery) of the device.
- R15-8-48-7 The user shall be able to use download and share functionalities for media objects which are delivered with a Rich Card of a carousel.
- R15-8-48-8 The user shall be able to browse the carousel elements using the standard device control functions, e.g. by horizontal swipe.
- R15-8-49 Tapping a video or audio shall file play the file.
- R15-8-49-1 An RCS client may provide an affordance to play a video or audio file inline vs. full screen.

## Style

- R15-8-50 If a cascading Style Sheet (CSS) has been provided, the RCS client shall show the General purpose Rich Card to the user with the applicable style.
- R15-8-50-1 Style elements in Rich Cards controlled by CSS shall be:
1. Colour and font of title text
  2. Colour and font of description text
  3. Colour and font of Suggested Actions and Suggested Replies
  4. Background colour
  5. Background image
- NOTE: If user settings prevent auto-download of the Background Image, it may not be presentable to the user.
- NOTE: If both background image and Background colour are specified for any Rich Card, then the image is on top of the colour. The colour is only visible if the image and the Rich Card have a different aspect ratio.
- R15-8-50-2 The specified style of a General purpose card can either be sent as generic CSS template (to be used for all Rich Cards sent by that Chatbot) or as

attached to a single Rich Card (which does not influence the appearance of any other Rich Card sent by that Chatbot).

R15-8-50-3 If both Chatbot specified style and Rich Card specified style are found for a General purpose card, the RCS client shall show the General purpose cards to the user with the Rich Card specified style.

NOTE: The CSS can be defined and applied by the Chatbot, the Chatbot Platform or the MNO.

R15-8-50-4 All general purpose cards that are part of a carousel shall have the same style.

R15-8-50-5 Suggested Chip Lists shall not be affected in their representation to the user by CSS.

### **US15-9 As a user I want to use most features whilst still remaining within the Messaging application**

R15-9-1 Upon the selection of a Suggested Action button containing a URL to be opened in a "webview", an integrated "webview" shall be displayed that renders the interactive content, so that I can seamlessly return to the conversation.

R15-9-1-1 As a user, I want to know that, when I open a "webview", I am still within the messaging environment. This shall be achieved by the RCS client, either by a half or three-quarters screen overlay with the Chatbot conversation remaining visible but masked underneath, or a full screen overlay with the Chatbot conversation labelled within the status bar.

R15-9-1-2 The "webview" shall be scrollable if its content exceeds the size of the screen overlay.

R15-9-1-3 The keyboard when invoked will reside over the "webview" screen overlay and the selected input field shall remain visible and in focus.

R15-9-1-4 The "webview" shall support the standard features and functionalities of the default web browser, including e.g. back/forward buttons, share button and history provided they do not compromise the device security.

R15-9-1-5 It shall be possible to handover parameters (e.g., but not limited to, credentials) between the Chatbot conversation and the integrated "webview", and vice versa.

R15-9-1-6 The "webview" shall allow the user to seamlessly return to the conversation, e.g. with the selection of a 'close' icon.

R15-9-1-7 It shall be possible for the rendered application within the screen overlay to automatically close the "webview" itself.

R15-9-1-8 The "webview" must be closed to return to the Chatbot conversation it originated from.

R15-9-1-9 The "webview" shall present the option for the user to open the webview content in their default web browser application or in an associated application, if installed on the device.

R15-9-1-10 When tasking away from the "webview" to open another application, then the "webview" shall still be displayed upon return to the Messaging application.

R15-9-1-11 When tasking away from the "webview" overlaid in one conversation to open another conversation (e.g. from a notification), then the "webview" may still be displayed upon return to the first conversation view in question.

R15-9-1-12 When a new message comes in while the user is a "webview" (from any user or Chatbot, including the currently open Chatbot), this message shall be notified to the user as the usual device notification behaviour for new incoming messages.

NOTE: Chatbots are expected to document details of any operation executed inside the "webview" (including but not limited to: the success, failure or cancellation of an operation) by sending an appropriate message within the originating Chatbot conversation with the user.

R15-9-2 When sending a Suggested Action button containing a URL, a Chatbot shall be able to control if the RCS client shall open the URL using the default web browser application or an integrated "webview". The default shall be integrated "webview".

R15-9-2-1 A Chatbot shall be able to control if the "webview" shall be represented on the RCS client by either a half screen overlay, a three-quarters screen overlay or a full screen overlay. The default overlay shall be full screen.

R15-9-2-2 A Chatbot shall be able to control if the RCS client shall open the URL in an associated application, if installed on the device.

Chatbot Controls		How RCS client shall open the URL of a suggested action	
Where to open the URL	Open in associated application	Application associated with URL and installed on device	No application associated with the URL
webview	Yes	Open in associated application	Open in integrated webview
	No	Open in integrated webview	
browser	Yes	Open in associated application	Open in default web browser
	No	Open in default web browser	Open in default web browser

**Table 25: Rules for RCS Client to Open the URL of a Suggested Action**

NOTE: A Chatbot cannot request an RCS client not supporting the "webview" feature to use an integrated "webview".

NOTE: Older RCS clients that do not support the "webview" feature will still open the URL of a Suggested Action with the default web browser or in an associated application, if installed on the device.

**US15-10 As a user, I would like to easily and quickly find messages in Chatbot conversations that are important to me.**

R15-10-1 All requirements specified under US5-29 shall be applicable for Chatbot conversations.

**US15-11 As a user, I would like to easily and quickly find Chatbot conversations that are important to me.**

R15-11-1 All requirements specified under US5-30 shall be applicable for Chatbot conversations as well.

**US15-12 As a User, I want to have a simple, interactive and guided service experience with the Chatbot.**

R15-12-1 It shall be possible to configure a Chatbot to enable or disable sending of a user-generated content by the RCS client (e.g. text message, file).

R15-12-1-1 When disabled, the user shall not be able to enter and send a user generated content to the Chatbot.

NOTE: When disabled, the user is still able to send messages to the Chatbot using Suggested Replies or Persistent Menu functions as offered by the Chatbot.

R15-12-1-2 The default setting for the user generated content entry shall be set to 'enabled', i.e. the user shall be able to send user-generated content to the Chatbot.

## 15.2.1 Technical Information for the realisation of Chatbots

### 15.2.1.1 Overview

The Chatbot functionality can be realised using 1-to-1 Chat as described in section 3.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The impact of Chatbots on addressing is defined in section 2.5.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

It is an MNO choice to define a list of Chatbots requiring specific management. In order to do so, the MNO shall provide a Specific Chatbots List Server and configure the RCS clients to access this server through the SPECIFIC CHATBOTS LIST client configuration parameter defined in section A.1.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

### 15.2.1.2 Configuration Parameters

To provide the required MNO control of the Chatbot UX, the following parameter is added to those that are available in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07], [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] and [GSMA PRD-RCC.15]:

Configuration parameter	Description	RCS usage
SPAM NOTIFICATION TEXT	This parameter controls the notification text shown to the user when they try to access a Chatbot that is considered as Spam. If not provided, the text shown will be a default text determined by the RCS client	Optional Parameter

Configuration parameter	Description	RCS usage
TOKEN LINK NOTIFICATION TEXT	This parameter controls the notification text shown to the user when they indicate that they want to make a Chatbot aware of the link between the anonymous token used for communication with that Chatbot and their actual identity. If not provided, the text shown will be a default text determined by the RCS client	Optional Parameter
UNAVAILABLE ENDPOINT TEXT	This parameter provides a message of type String that shall be displayed if an endpoint declines a conversation with a user as per section 3.6.8.2.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	Optional Parameter
ALLOW ENRICHED CHATBOT SEARCH DEFAULT	This parameter controls the default position (ON or OFF) of the user setting to enrich the Chatbot search. If not provided, the setting default position will be set to ON i.e. the user setting to enrich the Chatbot search is enabled.	Optional Parameter

**Table 26: Additional Configuration Parameters to control the Chatbot UX**

The SPAM NOTIFICATION TEXT parameter is added to the UX tree defined in section 5.3.4 with the following formal definition:

Node: /<x>/UX/spamNotificationText

Leaf node that provides the notification text shown to the user when they try to access a Chatbot that is considered as Spam.

If not instantiated, the text shown shall be determined by the RCS client implementation.

Status	Occurrence	Format	Min. Access Types
Required	ZeroOrOne	chr	Get, Replace

**Table 27: UX MO sub tree addition parameters (spamNotificationText)**

- Values: <string to be shown to the user>, minimum 10 characters long, maximum 200 Characters
- Post-reconfiguration actions: no specific actions.
- Associated HTTP XML characteristic type: “spamNotificationText”

Node: /<x>/UX/tokenLinkNotificationText

Leaf node that provides the notification text shown to the user when they indicate that they want to make a Chatbot aware of the link between the anonymous token used for communication with that Chatbot and their actual identity.

If not instantiated, the text shown shall be determined by the RCS client implementation.

Status	Occurrence	Format	Min. Access Types
Required	ZeroOrOne	chr	Get, Replace

**Table 28: UX MO sub tree addition parameters (tokenLinkNotificationText)**

- Values: <string to be shown to the user>, minimum 10 characters long, maximum 200 Characters
- Post-reconfiguration actions: no specific actions.
- Associated HTTP XML characteristic type: “tokenLinkNotificationText”

Node: /<x>/UX/unavailableEndpointText

Leaf node that provides the notification text shown to the user when an endpoint declines a conversation with a user as per section 3.6.8.2.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

If not instantiated, the text shown shall be determined by the RCS client implementation.

Status	Occurrence	Format	Min. Access Types
Required	ZeroOrOne	chr	Get, Replace

**Table 29: UX MO sub tree addition parameters (unavailableEndpointText)**

- Values: <string to be shown to the user>, minimum 10 characters long, maximum 200 Characters
- Post-reconfiguration actions: no specific actions.
- Associated HTTP XML characteristic type: “unavailableEndpointText”

Node: /<x>/UX/allowEnrichedChatbotSearchDefault

Leaf node that provides the default position (ON or OFF) of the user setting to enrich the Chatbot search.

If not instantiated, the setting default position will be set to ON i.e. the user setting to enrich the Chatbot search is enabled.

Status	Occurrence	Format	Min. Access Types
Required	ZeroOrOne	int	Get, Replace

**Table 30: UX MO sub tree addition parameters (allowEnrichedChatbotSearchDefault)**

- Values:
  - 0, user setting to enrich Chatbot search default position is set to OFF
  - 1, user setting to enrich Chatbot search default position is set to ON (default)
- Post-reconfiguration actions: no specific actions.
- Associated HTTP XML characteristic type: “allowEnrichedChatbotSearchDefault”

The representation of the parameters in the UX tree and the associated HTTP configuration XML structure with this parameter are shown in section 5.3.4.

### 15.2.1.3 Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service Requirements

R15-13-1 For the implementation of the requirements in user story US15-1 the following applies:

R15-13-1-1 For R15-1-1, refer to the RCS architecture in section 2.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] that allows for deployment of Chatbot Platforms.

R15-13-1-2 Requirement R15-1-1 shall be implemented locally on the device. The RCS client shall consider as a critical Chatbot any Chatbot whose URI matches an URI of the list of critical Chatbots URIs as defined in section 3.6.11 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-1-3 For R15-1-2 and R15-1-3 for a globally unique Service ID that can accommodate a potential growth of Chatbots and Chatbot Platforms, refer to section 2.5.4.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-1-4 For requirement R15-1-4 and its sub-requirements, the information shared shall be provided during the Chatbot onboarding process. This procedure is out of the scope of this specification. The information provided shall be mapped to a JSON format as defined in section 3.6.4.1.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-1-5 Requirement R15-1-5 shall be realised on the RCS client using the interface and procedure as described in section 3.6.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-1-6 For Requirement R15-1-6 shall be realised on the RCS client using the interface and procedure as described in section 3.6.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-1-7 Requirement R15-1-8 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R15-13-1-8 Requirement R15-1-9 shall be realised using the procedures in section 3.6.11 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-1-9 Requirement R15-1-9-1 shall be implemented locally on the device. The RCS client shall provide the indicator for Chatbots whose URI matches an URI of the list of critical Chatbots URIs as defined in section 3.6.11 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-1-10 Requirement R15-1-10 and its sub-requirement shall be implemented by the Chatbot Platform as per section 3.6.8.2.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-1-11 Requirement R15-1-11 shall be implemented on the RCS client using either

*R15-13-1-11-1* The Chatbot fallback procedure for rcs.me deep links defined by section 3.6.3.4.2.3.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07], or,

*R15-13-1-11-2* the procedure specified in section 3.6.8.2.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and the configuration parameter UNAVAILABLE ENDPOINT TEXT in section 15.2.1.2.

R15-13-2 For the implementation of the requirements in user story US15-2 the following applies:

- R15-13-2-1 R15-2-1 is realized by the procedures of the Anonymization Function (AF) described in section 3.6.5.1.5.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and by the fact that RCS clients are configured through the PRIVACY DISABLE parameter (as defined in section A.1.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]) to enable anonymization or not.
- R15-13-2-2 Requirement R15-2-1-1 is handled by the fact that [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] allows the Anonymization Function to be deployed in the RCS Service Provider's network or as part of the Chatbot Platform.
- R15-13-2-3 Section 2.5.4.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] mandates the uniqueness of the token, fulfilling R15-2-1-2.
- R15-13-2-4 R15-2-1-3 is managed by the RCS client in the following way: when the user agrees to share their MSISDN, the RCS client shall follow the procedures of section 3.6.5.1.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-2-5 R15-2-2 and its sub-requirements are managed locally on the device and propagated on the network via the procedures defined in sections 3.2.1.2 and 3.6.8.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]
- R15-13-2-6 R15-2-3 is managed locally on the device. The 'anonymous mode' is requested via the privacy header as defined in step 5 of section 3.6.8.3.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-2-7 R15-2-3-1 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R15-13-2-8 As in anonymous mode the token is the user's identifier given to the Chatbot platform, the Chatbot is able to reuse it, fulfilling requirement R15-2-3-2.
- R15-13-2-9 R15-2-3-3 is ensured by section 3.6.8.5.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] (see bullet 4).
- R15-13-2-10 R15-2-3-4 shall be implemented locally on the Chatbot Platform or the Chatbot.
- R15-13-2-11 R15-2-3-5 and its sub-requirement shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R15-13-2-12 R15-2-3-6 is fulfilled because Notifications are not managed differently for an anonymous conversation than from any Messaging conversation.
- R15-13-2-13 For the implementation of R15-2-3-7 refer to the technical implementation of US5-29 and US5-30 respectively.
- R15-13-2-14 R15-2-4 is fulfilled by the RCS client through the procedures defined in section 3.6.5.1.2.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-2-15 The deletion of a token results in closing any potential active session established with the old token. In addition, a Chatbot trying to reuse a deleted token will receive an error as per section 3.6.5.1.3.2 of [GSMA

PRD-RCC.07] for an MNO AF or via specific internal procedures for Chatbot Platform AF. Therefore, requirement R15-2-4-1 and R15-2-4-2 are fulfilled.

R15-13-2-16 Requirement R15-2-4-3 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R15-13-2-17 For R15-2-5 and its sub-requirements, the 'public mode' is requested when there is no use of the privacy header as defined in step 5 of section 3.6.8.3.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-2-18 Requirement R15-2-5-1 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R15-13-2-19 R15-2-5-2 is fulfilled because Notifications are not managed differently for a public conversation than from any Messaging conversation.

R15-13-2-20 Requirement R15-2-5-3 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R15-13-2-21 Requirements R15-2-5-5 and R15-2-5-6 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R15-13-2-22 For the implementation of R15-2-5-7 refer to the technical implementation of US5-29 and US5-30 respectively.

R15-13-2-23 Requirements R15-2-6 and R15-2-7 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R15-13-2-24 Requirement R15-2-8-1-1 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R15-13-2-25 Requirement R15-2-8-1-2 shall be realised through the TOKEN LINK NOTIFICATION TEXT client configuration parameter defined in section 15.2.1.2.

R15-13-2-26 Requirement R15-2-8-1-3 is covered in sections 3.6.5.1.3.1 and 3.6.5.1.4.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] as the AF invalidates the token.

R15-13-2-27 Requirement R15-2-9 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R15-13-2-28 When a user changes a conversation with a Chatbot from 'public mode' to 'anonymous mode', a new Chatbot session is established, using a token as the user's identity. Therefore, for the Chatbot there is no link between this new session and the one using the user's identity. R15-2-10-1 is then fulfilled.

R15-13-2-29 Requirement R15-2-10-2 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R15-13-2-30 Requirements R15-2-11-1, R15-2-11-2 and R15-2-11-3 shall be implemented locally on the device. It is a device implementation to interact with the user with respect with the settings of the privacy relevant information.

R15-13-2-31 R15-2-11-4 is managed by the Suggested Action defined in 3.6.10.6.1.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The device Status is requested by the Chatbot by sending the 'requestDeviceSpecifics' Suggested Action defined in 3.6.10.6.1.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. If the user agrees to the one-time share request, the RCS client shall follow the procedures described in

section 3.6.10.6.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The location information is requested by the Chatbot by sending the 'requestLocationPush' Suggested Action defined in 3.6.10.6.1.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. If the user agrees to the one-time share request, the RCS client shall send response to the Suggested Action including postback data as per section 3.6.10.6.2.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The RCS client shall send the user's location information following the 1-to-1 Geolocation Push service procedures described in section 3.2.6.2.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The sending of "Displayed" notification for received messages is requested by the Chatbot by sending the 'enableDisplayedNotifications' Suggested Action defined in 3.6.10.6.1.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The change of the setting is managed locally on the device based on the related setting required by R18-17-5-3.

- R15-13-2-32 Requirement R15-2-11-4-1 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R15-13-2-33 Requirement R15-2-12 and its sub-requirement shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R15-13-2-34 Requirement R15-2-13 is fulfilled thanks to the multi-device message support as requested by section 9 of this document.
- R15-13-2-35 Requirement R15-2-14 is fulfilled as the settings are managed locally on the device.
- R15-13-2-36 Requirement R15-2-15 and its sub-requirements shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R15-13-2-37 R15-2-16 shall be realised based on the procedures in section 3.6.4.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-2-38 R15-2-16-1 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R15-13-2-39 For R15-2-16-2, the identification of the Chatbot verification status shall be performed based on the procedures described in section 3.6.3.1, 3.6.3.2.1 and 3.6.4.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The visual differentiation shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R15-13-2-40 For R15-2-16-2-3 and R15-2-16-2-4, the Verification authority shall be retrieved based on the procedures described in section 3.6.4.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The display of the Verification Authority and its logo shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R15-13-2-41 R15-2-16-2-5 shall be implemented based on the procedures described in section 3.6.3.2.1 and 3.6.4.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-2-42 R15-2-16-2-6 is fulfilled by the complying with the procedures described in section 3.6.3.2.1 and 3.6.4.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-2-43 R15-2-16-2-7 is fulfilled by complying with steps 5 b) and c) of section 3.6.3.2.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and steps 5 b) and c) of section 3.6.4.2.3.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-2-44 R15-2-16-2-8 and R15-2-16-2-9 shall be implemented based on the procedures described in section 3.6.3.1, 3.6.3.2.1 and 3.6.4.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-2-45 R15-2-16-2-10 shall be implemented based on procedures described in [GSMA PRD-NG.131].

R15-13-2-46 R15-2-16-3 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R15-13-2-47 R15-2-16-3-1 shall be implemented based on the policies the Directory to Directory interface HTTPS GET request is sent. The Directory to Directory interface is defined in section 3.6.3.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The procedures for the Chatbot Information retrieval shall be based on section 3.6.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and they shall be based on client triggers.

R15-13-2-48 R15-2-16-3-2 shall be implemented based on the procedures described in section 3.6.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-2-49 For R15-2-16-3-3, the removal of the MNO trusted verification authorities is network internal. The retrieval of the Chatbot Verification Status shall be based on the procedures described in sections 3.6.3.1, 3.6.4.1 and section 3.6.4.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-2-50 R15-2-16-4-1 and R15-2-16-4-2 shall be implemented based on network internal procedures.

R15-13-2-51 Requirement R15-2-16-5 shall be implemented locally on the device. The RCS client shall provide the indicator for Chatbots whose URI matches an URI of the list of critical Chatbots URIs as defined in section 3.6.11 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-3 void

R15-13-4 For the implementation of the requirements in user story US15-4 the following applies:

R15-13-4-1 In order to support requirement R15-4-1, Chatbot developer/owner shall limit its own availability by specifying the MCC/MNC code(s) and the language(s) with which the Chatbot can be discovered. This can be done during the Chatbot onboarding process by the Chatbot Platform. The onboarding process procedure is out of the scope of this specification.

R15-13-4-2 For requirement R15-4-2, the Chatbot platform shall limit the Chatbot availability by specifying the MCC/MNC code(s) and language (s) with which the Chatbot can be discovered. This is based on the Chatbot Platform available interconnections and internal policies.

R15-13-4-3 Requirement R15-4-3 and its sub-requirements shall be implemented based on the procedures described in section 3.6.3.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-4-4 Requirement R15-4-4 shall be fulfilled based on the procedures described in section 3.6.3.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

- R15-13-4-5 Requirement R15-4-5 shall be implemented based on the procedures described in section 3.6.3.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-4-6 Requirements R15-4-6 and R15-4-7 shall be realised by the CHATBOT DIRECTORY parameter defined in Annex A.1.3 and A.2.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-4-7 For requirement R15-4-8, the RCS client shall generate the query based on the procedures described in section 3.6.3.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The query entries are specified in the “q” query parameter. If the entry is a Chatbot identifier, the RCS client does not need to trigger query against the Service Provider Chatbot Directory to acquire the Chatbot Service ID because it already has the Chatbot Service ID.
- R15-13-4-8 For requirement R15-4-9, the RCS client shall retrieve the Chatbot list by following the query procedures specified in section 3.6.3.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. If the service logo is unavailable, a default service logo shall be displayed based on the RCS client implementation.
- R15-13-4-9 For R15-4-10 for a user initiating a conversation with a Chatbot, the procedures in sections 3.2.1.2 and 3.6.8.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] apply.
- R15-13-4-10 Requirement R15-4-11-1 and R15-4-12 shall be implemented locally on the device using the procedures for creating a new conversation or continuing an existing one as defined in R15-13-1, R15-13-2, R15-13-4 and their sub-requirements.
- R15-13-4-11 The supported deep link formats are specified in section 3.6.3.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-4-11-1* For rcs.me deep link requirements in R15-4-11-1-1 and R15-4-11-1-2, the deep link format supported by the RCS client shall use the format section 3.6.3.4.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-4-11-2* For rcs.me deep link requirements R15-4-11-1-3, R15-4-11-1-4 and R15-4-11-1-5 are fulfilled using the OS-specific frameworks and rcs.me domain services described in section 3.6.3.4.2.1, rcs.me Domain Owner Procedures, and section 3.6.3.4.2.3 rcs.me Client Procedures of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-4-11-3* For requirement R15-4-11-2 and its sub-requirements, the RCS client shall use the procedures defined in section 3.6.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-4-11-4* For requirement R15-4-11-3 and its sub-requirements, and in the event the RCS client is not enabled, the RCS client shall use the Chatbot Information Fallback parameter defined in section 3.6.4.1.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] if available.
- R15-13-4-11-5* For requirements R15-4-11-3-3 and R15-4-11-4-1, the RCS client shall implement the Chatbot Welcome Message procedures in section 3.6.4.1.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-4-11-6* Requirements R15-4-11-4-2 and R15-4-11-5 shall be realised locally on the device.

- R15-13-4-12 For requirement R15-4-13, the RCS client shall determine the address type and the corresponding 1-to-1 messaging service technology for a contact address provided by the user as per RCS addressing model defined in section 2.5.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-4-13 For requirement R15-4-13-1 for the case where the user enters a contact address in the "to" field of the Chat Composer that does not match the RCS addressing scheme defined in section 2.5.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and a messaging service technology supported by the device, then the RCS client shall do a directory lookup as specified in section 3.6.3.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] using the provided string as value for the "q" parameter.
- R15-13-4-14 Requirement R15-4-14 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R15-13-4-15 Requirement R15-4-15 shall be realised locally on the device and may be based on the Chatbot Information retrieved according to the procedure in section 3.6.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-4-16 Requirement R15-4-15-2 shall be realised through the RCS client offering in the introduction screen a UI element with a fixed label text that is implementation specific. When this UI element is tapped the RCS client shall open the Messaging conversation thread with the Chatbot, set up a session with the Chatbot as defined in sections 3.2.1.2 and 3.6.8.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and send a Client Response for Suggested Replies content to the Chatbot (i.e. as defined in section 3.6.10 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]). In this response, the RCS client shall provide a display text and set the displayText field to the text displayed in the tapped button. Therefore, it shall show the message in the Messaging conversation thread. The RCS client shall set the data field of the postback object to the fixed string *"new\_bot\_user\_initiation"\_hl* where hl is the value of the parameter defined in section 3.6.4.1.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-4-17 For R15-4-17 for a Chatbot initiating a conversation with a user, the procedures in section 3.6.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] apply.
- R15-13-4-18 Requirement R15-4-21 and its sub-requirements shall be realised locally on the device. The device shall display within the RCS client the content accessible via the URL contained in the CHATBOT GALLERY parameter as defined in section A.1.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-5 For the implementation of the requirements in user story US15-5 the following applies:
- R15-13-5-1 Requirement R15-5-1 shall be realised through anonymization described for the realisation of US15-2. Requests addressed to the user's MSISDN will be considered as authorised and when addressing an anonymised identity, a mapping will have to exist to the user's IMPU before the user can be reached. Such a mapping would be created if the user contacted the Chatbot first.
- R15-13-5-2 Requirement R15-5-2 shall be realised on the RCS client as described in section 3.6.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-5-3 Requirements R15-5-2-1 and R15-5-2-2 shall be implemented locally on the device. The RCS client shall not provide the blocking feature for

Chatbots whose URI matches an URI of the list of critical Chatbots URIs as defined in section 3.6.11 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-5-4 For Requirement R15-5-3 and its sub-requirements shall be realised through the Spam Report and reporting of other inappropriate behaviour functionality described in section 3.6.6.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-5-5 Requirement R15-5-4 shall be realised

*R15-13-5-5-1* in the network as described in section 3.6.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] whereby the means to provide this functionality are out of scope of this document and/or

*R15-13-5-5-2* on the RCS client based on an entry in the Blacklist provided by the MNO or RCS Service Provider as described in section 3.6.6.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-5-6 Requirement R15-5-5 shall be realised

*R15-13-5-6-1* in the network, as described in section 3.6.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] whereby the means to provide this functionality are out of scope of this document and/or

*R15-13-5-6-2* on the RCS client, based on an entry using regular expressions in the blacklist provided by the MNO or RCS Service Provider as described in section 3.6.6.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-5-7 Requirement R15-5-6 shall be realised through

*R15-13-5-7-1* the MNO or RCS Service Provider not including the Chatbot in the Chatbot Directory described in section 3.6.3.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and/or

*R15-13-5-7-2* the RCS client removing the entry for the blocked Chatbot from the discovery result based on the Chatbot's address matching an entry in the list of Chatbots to which access must be prevented that is provided by the MNO or RCS Service Provider as described in section 3.6.6.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-5-8 Requirement R15-5-7 shall be realised locally on the device based on the Chatbot's address matching an entry in the list of Chatbots to which access must be prevented that is provided by the MNO or RCS Service Provider as described in section 3.6.6.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] or based on a SIP 403 Forbidden response that includes a Warning header including the warning text set to "206 Spam Sender" when setting up a session to the Chatbot as described in section 3.6.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The message displayed to the user shall be determined by the SPAM NOTIFICATION TEXT client configuration parameter defined in section 15.2.1.2.

R15-13-5-9 For R15-5-8, the format defined in section 3.6.6.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] shall be used.

R15-13-5-10 For R15-5-9, blocking a Chatbot shall not lead to the retrieval of the Chatbot Info being blocked as specified in section 3.6.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-5-11 For R15-5-10, users will be able to unsubscribe and (re)subscribe from a Chatbot using the Subscription Message procedures specified in section 3.6.6.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

*R15-13-5-11-1* Unsubscribe exemptions defined by R15-5-10-4-1, R15-5-10-4-2 and R15-5-10-4-3 shall apply to messages with traffic-type values: "authentication", "servicerequest" and "acknowledgement" respectively, defined in section 3.6.7.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-6 For the implementation of the requirements in user story US15-6 the following applies:

R15-13-6-1 Requirement R15-6-1 can be realised through a Suggested Chip List as defined for R15-8-8 to R15-8-12 including the available payment methods as Suggested Reply (see R15-8-10-1). This Suggested Chip List can be associated to a message asking for the user's preferred payment method.

R15-13-6-2 For R15-6-2, if the Chatbot or Chatbot Platform have an agreement with the MNO serving the user to provide Carrier Billing, the Suggested Chip List may include Carrier Billing as a Suggested Reply.

R15-13-6-3 For R15-6-3, the use of a Suggested Chip List and regular messages allows completing the payment within the conversation thread and it is up to the Chatbot to determine whether it can make use of those methods.

R15-13-6-4 For R15-6-4, the RCS communication between Chatbot and User is secured according to what is described in section 2.12.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] for the path between Chatbot Platform and User in combination with what is described for the interface between Chatbot and Chatbot Platform which is out of scope of this document. It is up to the Chatbot to determine whether that allows to exchange the information required from the user for payment in a sufficiently secure manner.

R15-13-6-5 Requirement R15-6-5 on labelling traffic associated with payments is provided via the setting of the CPIM header described in section 3.6.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-7 For the implementation of the requirements in user story US15-7 the following applies:

R15-13-7-1 Requirement R15-7-1 on measuring all RCS-based events exchanged in each direction per Chatbot on a per user basis is supported as per RCS Service Provider charging requirements, and by RCS service identification as described in [GSMA PRD-IR.90] for RCS services.

R15-13-7-2 Requirement R15-7-2 and its sub-requirements are supported by the new CPIM header as defined in section 3.6.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-8 For the implementation of the requirements in user story US15-8 the following applies:

R15-13-8-1 Requirement R15-8-1 shall be realised through the MNO removing the capabilities corresponding to services that are not available to the Chatbot Platform from the capabilities provided to the RCS client and the Chatbot Platform as part of the Capability Exchange (i.e. removal in both directions). The way in which this removal is done is out of scope of this document.

NOTE: An MNO may also restrict access to these services as part of a commercial agreement with the Chatbot Platform. In which case the Chatbot Platform should not announce the corresponding capabilities as part of the capability exchange, should not include Suggested Actions related to services that are unavailable and should make the Chatbots that it hosts aware that those services are not available and cannot be used. Such commercial agreements are out of scope of this document.

R15-13-8-2 Requirement R15-8-1-1 shall be realised on

*R15-13-8-2-1* the Chatbot Platform based on the absence of the corresponding capabilities towards the RCS user and

*R15-13-8-2-2* locally on the RCS client where, as towards regular users, services for which no capability is available should not be offered to the user and where Suggested Actions corresponding to capabilities that are not available should not be shown to the user. This would apply to

- Sending a Geolocation Push as specified in R15-8-4-6-7 if the Geolocation Push capability is not available

R15-13-8-3 For messages originating from the RCS client requirement R15-8-2 shall be realised using the messaging technology selection defined in section 3.2.1.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. For messages originating from the Chatbot, they can be sent if their content type can be mapped to xMS and the Chatbot is aware of the user's MSISDN.

R15-13-8-4 The requirements as specified in R15-8-3 to R15-8-6 as well as R15-8-8, R15-8-9, R15-8-9-3 and R15-8-10 to R15-8-11 shall be realised through section 3.6.10 in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

*R15-13-8-4-1* Requirement R15-8-4-7 and its sub-requirements shall be implemented locally on the device.

*R15-13-8-4-2* The RCS client shall rely on operating system specific application deep linking directives and procedures to implement requirement R15-8-4-7-2.

R15-13-8-5 For requirement R15-8-7, for the download of media objects of Rich Cards, the RCS client shall consider the user settings for auto acceptance as defined in US18-8. See also R15-8-36.

*R15-13-8-5-1* For the determination of the mode of acceptance of a media object received in a Rich Card depending on the user's setting, the size of the media file, the service provider configuration and the type of access network refer to the definitions of US18-8.

- R15-13-8-5-2* If the mode of acceptance for a media object depends on the file size, then the RCS client shall use the value of the `mediaFileSize` property of the media object, defined in section 3.6.10.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-8-6 The requirements as specified in R15-8-9-1, R15-8-9-2 and R15-8-12 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R15-13-8-7 For R15-8-13 a Chatbot can provide a Persistent Menu as defined in section 3.6.4.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. This menu shall follow the format defined in section 3.6.12 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07], realising R15-8-13-2 and R15-8-13-3.
- R15-13-8-8 R15-8-13-1, R15-8-13-2-1, R15-8-13-4 and R15-8-13-5 shall be realised locally on the device based on the menu provided by the Chatbot in the Chatbot Information.
- R15-13-8-9 R15-8-13-6 and R15-8-13-7 shall be realised by providing the menu as part of the Chatbot Information as defined in section 3.6.4.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-8-10 For the message transfer states of requirement R15-8-14, the technical realization described for messaging in R5-49-27 and for File Transfer in R7-37-17 applies, with the status of "Error" being equivalent to the status of "Failed".
- R15-13-8-11 Notifications on delivery status information as defined in R15-8-15 shall be stored and forwarded in the Store and Forward server shall be realised as specified in sections 3.2.3.3 and 3.6.9 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-8-12 The requirement R15-8-16-3 and R15-8-16-4 for a Chatbot to be able to remove an event before it is delivered through the procedures in section 3.2.3.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and the requirement R15-8-16-5 for no fall-back to xMS shall be realised as specified in section 3.6.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] for messages sent by the Chatbot and locally on the device for replies from the user.
- R15-13-8-13 Requirements R15-8-17, R15-8-18, and R15-8-19 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R15-13-8-14 For R15-8-24, R15-8-25 and R15-8-26, the realisation of the general purpose Rich Card is defined in section 3.6.10 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. This version of the Universal Profile does not define domain-specific Rich Cards yet.
- R15-13-8-15 R15-8-27 shall be realised locally on the device for a received Rich Card.
- R15-13-8-16 R15-8-28 and R15-8-28-1 shall be realised through the definition of the General Purpose Card in section 3.6.10.4 and 3.6.10.5.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] whereby the layout shall be handled locally on the device.
- R15-13-8-17 R15-8-29, R15-8-29-1 and R15-8-31 shall be realised through the definition of the General Purpose Card Carrousel in sections 3.6.10.4 and 3.6.10.5.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

- R15-13-8-18 R15-8-30, R15-8-32 to R15-8-38, R15-8-41, R15-8-41-2, R15-8-41-3, R15-8-42, R15-8-42-2 and R15-8-42-3 with its sub-requirements shall be realised locally on the device. For the requirement in the note in R15-8-36, refer to the definitions for media download handling in requirement R15-8-7.
- R15-13-8-19 R15-8-39 and R15-8-40 shall be realised through the definition of the cardMedia message fragment in section 3.6.10.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-8-20 R15-8-41-1 shall be realised through the `titleFontStyle` element provided in the definition of the General Purpose Card and General Purpose Card Carousel in section 3.6.10.4 and 3.6.10.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. If a value of "italics" is included the title shall be rendered in italics. If a value of "bold" is included the title shall be rendered in a bold font and if a value of "underline" is included the title shall be rendered underlined. When a CSS as defined in R15-8-50 and its sub-requirements is provided and CSS is supported by the RCS client, any additional rendering properties provided in that CSS shall be taken into account for the rendering of the title.
- R15-13-8-21 R15-8-42-1 shall be realised through the `descriptionFontStyle` element provided in the definition of the General Purpose Card and General Purpose Card Carousel in section 3.6.10.4 and 3.6.10.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. If a value of "italics" is included the description shall be rendered in italics. If a value of "bold" is included the description shall be rendered in a bold font and if a value of "underline" is included the description shall be rendered underlined. When a CSS as defined in R15-8-50 and its sub-requirements is provided and CSS is supported by the RCS client, any additional rendering properties provided in that CSS shall be taken into account for the rendering of the description.
- R15-13-8-22 The 25 character limit defined in R15-8-43 shall be realised through the definition of a suggestion in section 3.6.10.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The stacking of the provided Suggested Replies and Suggested Actions shall be realised locally on the device.
- R15-13-8-23 R15-8-43-1 shall be realised through the definition of the General Purpose Card and General Purpose Card Carousel in section 3.6.10.4 and 3.6.10.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-8-24 R15-8-43-2 shall be realised locally on the device
- R15-13-8-25 R15-8-44, R15-8-44-1 and its subrequirements shall be realised through the definition of the General Purpose Card in section 3.6.10.4 and 3.6.10.5.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] whereby the layout shall be handled locally on the device.
- R15-13-8-26 R15-8-44-2 and its sub-requirements shall be realised locally on the device.
- R15-13-8-27 R15-8-44-3 and its sub-requirements shall be realised locally on the device.

- R15-13-8-28 R15-8-45 shall be realised through the definition of the General Purpose Card Carousel in section 3.6.10.4 and 3.6.10.5.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-8-29 For R15-8-45-1-1, the RCS client shall assume that the media height provided for the first card of the Carousel applies to the media in all cards (i.e. the media height indicated in the further cards shall be ignored).
- R15-13-8-30 R15-8-45-1, R15-8-45-1-2 and R15-8-45-1-3 and R15-8-46 to R15-8-49-1 shall be realised locally on the device.
- R15-13-8-31 R15-8-50 shall be realised as described in section 3.6.10.5.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R15-13-8-32 R15-8-50-1 shall be realised as described in section 3.6.10.5.4.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]
- R15-13-8-33 For requirement R15-8-50-2, the generic CSS template shall be realised through JSON defined in section 3.6.4.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]) as the Chatbot specified style, the CSS attached to a single Rich Card shall be realised through the JSON defined in section 3.6.10.4 and 3.6.10.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]) as the Rich Card specified style.
- R15-13-8-34 R15-8-50-3 shall be realised as described in section 3.6.10.5.4.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]
- R15-13-8-35 R15-8-50-4 shall be realised through the JSON defined in section 3.6.10.4 and 3.6.10.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07])
- R15-13-8-36 R15-8-50-5 shall be realised locally on the device.
- R15-13-9 For the implementation of the requirements in user story US15-9 the following applies:
- R15-13-9-1 R15-9-1 shall be realised locally on the device. The requirement for the RCS client to open a webview is received via the Chatbot service protocol. As defined in section 3.6.10.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07], a Suggested Action to open an URL with an “application” element with a value of “webview” is the indication for the RCS client to open the resource URL in a webview.
- R15-13-9-2 R15-9-1-1 shall be realised locally on the device. As defined in section 3.6.10.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07], the “viewMode” element of a Suggested Action to open an URL provides the indication of how the webview shall be rendered; a value of “full” requires a full screen overlay with the Chatbot conversation labelled within the status bar, a value of “tall” requires a three-quarters screen overlay and a value of “half” requires a half screen overlay.
- R15-13-9-3 R15-9-1-2, R15-9-1-3 and R15-9-1-4 shall be realised locally on the device.
- R15-13-9-4 For requirement R15-9-1-5, parameters can be passed from the Chatbot conversation at the opening of the webview via the “parameters” element of a Suggested Action as defined in section 3.6.10.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-9-5 R15-9-1-6 to R15-9-1-12 shall be realised locally on the device.

R15-13-9-6 For requirement R15-9-2, the Chatbot shall use a Suggested Action to open an URL as defined in section 3.6.10.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. If the Chatbot wants the RCS client to open the URL using the default web browser application or in another application via deep linking then the Suggested Action to be sent shall contain an “application” element with a value set to “browser”. If the Chatbot wants the RCS client to open the URL using a webview or in another application via deep linking then the Suggested Action shall contain an “application” element with a value set to “webview”.

*R15-13-9-6-1* The RCS client shall rely on operating system specific application deep linking directives and procedures to implement requirement R15-9-2-2. If the Chatbot wants the RCS client to ignore the device operating system’s application deep linking directives, then the suggested action shall contain an “ignore\_app\_deep\_link” element with a value set to “true”.

R15-13-9-7 For requirement R15-9-2-1, the Chatbot shall use a Suggested Action to open an URL as defined in section 3.6.10.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] with an “application” element with a value set to “webview”. A “viewMode” element in the Suggested Action shall be set to “half” to require a half screen overlay, or “tall” to require a three-quarters screen overlay. For a full screen overlay, the Chatbot can either set the “viewMode” to “full” or don’t put a “viewMode” element at all.

NOTE: A Chatbot or Chatbot platform is able to know if an RCS client supports the webview feature based on the Chatbot application version defined in section 3.6.2.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. A Chatbot application version including a value of ‘2’ indicates support of the webview feature.

R15-13-10 For the implementation of US15-10 refer to the technical implementation of US5-29.

R15-13-11 For the implementation of US15-11 refer to the technical implementation of US5-30.

R15-13-12 For the implementation of the requirements in user story US15-12 the following applies:

R15-13-12-1 For requirement R15-12-1, in the Chatbot information a Chatbot may include a parameter “Disable\_User\_feedback” to disable user feedback as defined in section 3.6.4.1.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R15-13-12-2 If the value of the “Disable\_User\_feedback” parameter value is set to “true”, then a user should be allowed only to make use of the persistent menu or Suggested Replies (or both) when available. The implementation is done locally on the device.

## 15.3 Void

# 16 Security against Malware and Privacy Protection

## 16.1 Description

Authentication in RCS services on an individual device is currently done with a solution based on username / password combination. There is a risk that these credentials are hijacked by a malware application and used for spoofing identities. There is a need to offer an enhanced security function at least temporarily until a long-term solution is available.

User privacy is an essential responsibility of RCS services, and it is important that user activity from messaging activities must not be cross tracked with other user internet activities, based on user or client identifiable information, such as device's IP addresses. RCS services are to be built ensuring the protection of a user's online privacy at all times.

## 16.2 User Stories and Feature Requirements

**US16-1 As a user, I want to use my MNO communication services safely and securely.**

- R16-1-1 RCS services shall use an authentication mechanism that is safe and secure, not allowing 3<sup>rd</sup> party applications to retrieve any user data including data that is relevant for authentication against networks.
- R16-1-2 Authentication mechanism(s) shall be defined for a user on devices with a SIM. When SIM available on the device, (a) SIM based authentication mechanism(s) shall be used.
- R16-1-3 Authentication mechanism(s) which prevent spoofing and other attacks shall be defined for a user on devices without a SIM.
- R16-1-4 The Authentication mechanism(s) for devices with or without SIM shall be defined in such a manner that even if the user data is intercepted by the network or any 3<sup>rd</sup> party applications, the intercepted user data cannot be misused.
- R16-1-5 Devices containing a SIM which is associated with the user's RCS identity shall use any available SIM-based authentication mechanism in preference of a non-SIM based authentication mechanism.
- R16-1-6 User interaction to ensure security solutions shall be minimized.
- R16-1-7 If manual user interaction is required, this interaction shall be limited to a single one-time experience and not be repeated, in case – but not limited to – device re-provisioning.
- R16-1-8 If manual user interaction is required, for native implementations any user interaction shall be performed on one single screen (or an intuitive flow of screens).

**US16-2 As an MNO, I want to customize the enhanced security function.**

R16-2-1 The security solution shall offer the option for the MNO to enable or disable the function with appropriate security control.

R16-2-1-1 Enable or disable over the air.

R16-2-1-2 Enable or disable for selected devices.

R16-2-2 If user interaction is required, the user shall be guided to accomplish the interaction in a way that RCS use of the identity is enabled in a secure way after the set-up process.

**US16-3 As an MNO, I want to ensure that traffic and content generated by an RCS identity is generated by that identity's true user.**

R16-3-1 Second Party and Third Party applications shall inherit the identity of the stack therefore whilst API access may be controlled (not addressed here) no additional RCS authentication shall be required from second and third party applications.

R16-3-2 All traffic generated by an identity shall be identifiable as such.

**US16-4 As a user, I want to make sure that I am sending/receiving messages to/from the intended recipient/sender.**

R16-4-1 The RCS client shall provide the user the ability to validate the identity of the recipient(s), for example by manual or automatic User Encryption Identifier comparison.

R16-4-2 The RCS client shall provide the user a way to see when the User Encryption Identifier has changed unexpectedly.

**US16-5 As a user, I want to ensure that traffic generated by me is not used for data collection and tracking with my other internet traffic.**

R16-5-1 The RCS client should provide IP address privacy protection when the RCS client initiates connections to the RCS Service Provider.

NOTE: The IP address privacy protection can be RCS client implementation specific, and in that case transparent to the RCS Service Provider.

## 16.3 Technical Information

The technical implementation of RCS involves a number of technologies to secure the user network interface. Methods for encryption, client verification, user authentication and access authorisation are applied by the RCS client and the network on a per interface and protocol basis. The level of security for the individual technologies depends on the selection of the security measure applied.

### 16.3.1 Client authenticity verification

Section 2.11 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] describes generic procedures to allow a HTTP Configuration Server to verify the authenticity of the RCS client requesting to be configured. This document defines the use of those procedures for verifying the RCS client authenticity and the general trustworthiness of the platform on which the RCS client is running for the following OS platforms:

- The Android™ OS using the procedures defined in section B.2.

RCS clients running on a platform for which these procedures have been defined shall support them. Networks receiving configuration requests from RCS clients that support the procedures to verify the RCS client authenticity should invoke them provided that they have sufficient information on the RCS client to verify the results that are provided.

### 16.3.2 User Authentication

The following main user authentication and methods are used in RCS.

- R16-6-1 User Authentication via the SIM based Authentication and Key Agreement protocol (AKA). This authentication protocol comes with a high level of security based on shared secrets exchanged between the SIM and the network authentication centre. As a result of the initial authentication, the RCS client and network agree keys which are used to encrypt the UNI signalling flow. As an extension to the SIM based authentication the key material received from the AKA authentication can be used by the RCS client to create additional security associations with network services based on the Generic Bootstrap Architecture (GBA) as defined in [3GPP TS 33.220].
- R16-6-2 User Authentication via the basic or digest access authentication based on credentials (user name and password) exchanged between the application and the peer network application. Since the RCS user stories aim to prevent that the user is involved in the exchange of the access credentials, an automatic provisioning of the credentials is applied via device provisioning. The digest procedure in itself is secure and robust against attacks. It is vulnerable to attacks to discover the credentials via access to the application's key store or spoofing attacks based on the credential management procedure (e.g. malware pretending to be an RCS application where RCS client authenticity is not verified as defined in section 16.3.1).
- R16-6-3 Network based user identification (e.g. via "header enrichment") **which is in fact a single-sign-on (SSO) prolonging the authentication** of the user at the time of bearer set-up for the usage of services within the bearer session. The bearer set-up in a 3GPP network is typically based on the SIM based Authentication and Key Agreement protocol. The IP address assigned at the time of bearer set-up is used as the criteria to identify the user within the existing bearer session. RCS Service Providers need to take precautions in securing the trusted network access to prevent fraudulent IP address claims. The mechanism is insecure since attackers are able to gain unauthorized access to the network services once they got the permission to use a bearer session on behalf of the user.
- R16-6-4 User based Authentication via one time password (OTP), whereby the user or the device claims an identity which is challenged via a signalling transaction over a channel with an authentication context for this identity, e.g. the short message service to another device or an external secure token service. Based on the one time authentication a long-term authentication context can be generated (SSO) to prevent the need for subsequent authentication transactions. This security measure may be used as an additional measure for another authentication mechanism, e.g. based on the principle of the two-factor authentication, which comes in most cases with user impact.

The single token exchange via OTP is secure in itself. However, it is vulnerable to spoofing attacks to gain access to the token used to authenticate the access.

- R16-6-5 Requirement R16-5-1 shall be implemented locally on the device and by service provider.

### **16.3.3 Encryption**

The User Network Interface transactions should be always encrypted to prevent eavesdropping of the user's personal communication in the various access and transit networks. RCS makes use of the common encryption protocols, i.e. Transport Layer Security and IPsec. RCS clients conforming to the profile defined in this document shall support the encryption for all signalling and media traffic technologies described in this document.

### **16.3.4 Storage of Authentication and Identification Data**

The RCS client needs to store for active RCS users authentication and identification data (user identification data, password, token) used for network access. The RCS client shall store this data in a secure manner to prevent access from users and invaders.

### **16.3.5 SIM State Handling**

If the SIM of a device is used to provide the identity of the user for RCS services and the device leaves the SIM ready state, then the RCS client shall take actions to disable RCS services for the user based on procedures defined in this section. This is caused by the fact that the basis of the user identification and authentication is no longer available to the RCS client if the SIM is not available.

If the RCS client detects that the device is about to leave or left the SIM Ready State (e.g. power off, physical removal of SIM), then the RCS client shall instantly de-register from IMS if the connectivity and security settings allow it. In addition, any other ongoing RCS client session or transaction based on the SIM identity (e.g. a connection with the HTTP Content Server) shall be aborted.

If the device is not in SIM Ready State, a RCS client configuration stored in the RCS client remains valid (in accordance with its validity) but it is in dormant state, i.e. the RCS client does not invoke RCS services, e.g. it does not register in the IMS Network.

If the RCS client recovers the SIM Ready State (e.g. user enters PIN, re-insert the SIM Card in the device), then the RCS client shall check whether the configuration stored in the RCS client corresponds to the inserted SIM (comparing the IMSI from client configuration with IMSI from SIM).

If the RCS client detects that the IMSI has been changed, then the procedures for SIM change apply as defined in section 2 of this document. Otherwise, the device uses the valid client configuration related to the IMSI of the SIM to enable RCS services again, e.g. to register in the IMS network.

The procedures apply regardless of the access technology used to access RCS services.

### 16.3.6 Applicability of Authentication Methods

This section gives an overview of the applicability and support requirements of user authentication methods defined in section 16.3.1 of this document for the types of RCS clients defined in this specification and its interfaces to the network.

In addition to interface specific authentication methods, the RCS Service Provider may extend a security context that has been generated by a common authentication endpoint to interfaces using HTTP as access protocol using the single-sign on procedures of Open ID Connect, (OIDC) see section 2.12.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

User Network Interface	Primary Device	
	Single Registration Configuration (see NOTE)	Dual Registration Configuration (see NOTE)
Service Provider Client Configuration Configuration Over Cellular Networks	Support of network-based authentication is mandatory. Support of fallback to OTP based authentication is mandatory. Support of security configuration mechanism over PS and support of SMS port zero policy is mandatory. Support of GBA authentication is mandatory. Support of OIDC single-sign-on is mandatory.	
Service Provider Client Configuration Configuration Over non 3GPP networks	Support of OTP based authentication is mandatory. Support of GBA authentication is mandatory. Support of OIDC single-sign-on is mandatory.	
IMS Access Authentication	Support AKA based authentication is mandatory in accordance with [GSMA PRD-NG.102] and [GSMA PRD-NG.114]	Support AKA based authentication is mandatory in accordance with [GSMA PRD-NG.102] and [GSMA PRD-NG.114] Support of SIP digest with the credentials from client configuration is mandatory in accordance with [GSMA PRD-NG.102] and [GSMA PRD-NG.114]
HTTP File Transfer Content Server Authentication	Support of HTTP digest and basic authentication with the credentials from client configuration is mandatory Support of GBA based authentication is mandatory. Support of OIDC single-sign-on is mandatory.	
Message Store Server Authentication	Support of plain password authentication is mandatory. Support of GBA based authentication is mandatory. Support of OIDC single-sign-on is mandatory	

**Table 31: Authentication Mechanisms for embedded RCS clients on primary device**

NOTE: The configuration of whether to support a single registration or two separate registrations is dependent on the RCS VOLTE SINGLE REGISTRATION parameter in the IMS MO as defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07], see section 2.1.3 of [GSMA PRD-NG.102] and section 2.2.1 of [GSMA PRD-NG.114].

User Network Interface	Primary Device	
	Applications Using terminal API	Applications Not using terminal API
Service Provider Client Configuration Configuration Over Cellular Networks	Same as device that provides the terminal API	Support of network-based authentication is mandatory. Support of fallback to OTP based authentication is mandatory. Support of security configuration mechanism over PS and support of SMS port zero policy is mandatory. Support of OIDC single-sign-on is mandatory. The authentication mechanism is negotiated between the RCS client and server in accordance with [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]
Service Provider Client Configuration Configuration Over non 3GPP networks	Same as device that provides the terminal API	Support of OTP based authentication is mandatory. Support of OIDC single-sign-on is mandatory.
IMS Access Authentication	Same as device that provides the terminal API	Support of SIP digest with the credentials from client configuration is mandatory
HTTP File Transfer Content Server Authentication	Same as device that provides the terminal API	Support of HTTP digest and basic authentication with the credentials from client configuration is mandatory. Support of OIDC single-sign-on is mandatory.
Message Store Server Authentication	Same as device that provides the terminal API	Support of plain password authentication is mandatory. Support of OIDC single-sign-on is mandatory.

**Table 32: Authentication Mechanisms for non-embedded RCS clients on primary device**

### 16.3.7 Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service requirements

R16-6-6 For the requirements in user story US16-1 the following applies:

- R16-6-6-1 RCS makes use of a number of authentication mechanisms with some of them being vulnerable to attacks as summarised on a high level in section 16.3.1. Thus the risk that 3rd party applications are able to retrieve user data or to make use of communication services on behalf of the user persists. The main RCS vulnerability comes from the fact that user identification and authentication data is made available to consumers via a device management technology with weak security measures.

The following authentication mechanisms and encryption methods are used on a UNI technology basis.

- R16-6-6-2 HTTP(s) based client configuration in 3GPP access makes use of either the GBA (see R16-4-1) or network based user identification (see R-16-4-3) as defined in section 2.7 and 2.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] respectively. The network based user authentication may be replaced or extended on RCS Service Provider request by the OTP based user authentication (see R16-4-4) as defined in section 2.5 and 2.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]. The authentication mechanism is negotiated between RCS client and server as defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]. In addition, single sign-on using the procedures of Open ID Connect is supported as defined in section 2.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14].
- R16-6-6-3 As defined in section 2.5.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] the RCS Service Provider may decide to further secure the identification via invocation of the SMS based procedure which adds additional authentication (see R16-4-4). The SMS based procedure may be further secured by the RCS Service Provider by enforcing user input of the OTP as defined in section 2.6.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] or in section 2.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14].  
A RCS client on a device with a SIM not being in SIM Ready State shall not invoke client configuration procedure if the identity associated SIM is used for RCS, see section 16.3.4.
- R16-6-6-4 Client configuration transactions carrying user data are encrypted via Transport Layer Security (TLS)/Secure Socket Layer (SSL) as defined in sections 2.5.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14].
- R16-6-6-5 HTTP(s) based client configuration on non 3GPP access for primary and for additional devices makes use of either based on the GBA for a primary device (see R16-4-1) or via the OTP based authentication method (see R16-4-4) as defined in sections 2.6, 2.7, 2.8, 2.9 and 2.10 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14].  
A RCS client on a device with a SIM not being in SIM Ready State shall not invoke client configuration procedure if the identity associated SIM is used for RCS, see section 16.3.4).
- R16-6-6-6 Client configuration transactions are encrypted via TLS/SSL as defined in 2.5.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14].
- R16-6-6-7 The authentication method for IMS access depends on the mode and capability of the RCS device, the type of access and the device configuration. The RCS client shall apply the authentication in IMS as defined in section 2.12.1.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].  
A RCS client on a device with a SIM not being in SIM Ready State shall not register in IMS if the identity associated SIM is used for RCS, see section 16.3.4.
- R16-6-6-8 The encryption of SIP signalling is determined by client configuration as defined in section 2.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and 2.2.2.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.15].

- R16-6-6-9 The authentication method for HTTP transaction of File Transfer over HTTP shall be based on digest authentication (see R16-4-2) based on the credentials received by the RCS client via device configuration or via GBA/AKA based authentication on a primary device (see R16-4-4) as defined in sections 3.2.5.4.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. In addition, single sign-on using the procedures of Open ID Connect is supported as defined in section 2.12.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

A RCS client on a device with a SIM not being in SIM Ready State shall not invoke file transfer transactions if the identity associated SIM is used for RCS, see section 16.3.4.

- R16-6-6-10 HTTP File Transfer transactions carrying user data are encrypted via TLS/SSL as defined in 3.2.5.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

- R16-6-6-11 The authentication methods for the Common Message Store are described in section 2.12.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. In addition, single-sign on using the procedures of Open ID connect is supported as defined in section 2.12.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

A RCS client on a device with a SIM which is not in SIM Ready State shall not login to the Common Message Store if the identity associated SIM is used for RCS, see section 16.3.4.

- R16-6-6-12 RESTful sessions are encrypted over HTTPS as defined in section 2.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

- R16-6-6-13 For MSRP transactions, no additional user identification is applied. The MSRP transactions rely on the user identity that has been authenticated in the related SIP registration of session.  
The encryption of MSRP signalling is determined by client configuration as defined in section 2.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and 2.2.2.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.15].

- R16-6-6-14 For RTP media streams, no additional user identification is applied. The RTP transactions rely on the user identity that has been authenticated in the related SIP registration of session.

- R16-6-6-15 The encryption of RTP streams is determined by client configuration as defined in section 2.7 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and 2.2.2.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.15]. It is mandatory for RCS clients supporting the profile defined in this document to support encryption of RTP.

- R16-6-7 For the requirements in user story US16-1 to minimise the user interaction for security solutions a case-by-case analysis of user interaction flows for device configuration and personalisation is done below. User interactions can be characterised with regard to their user experience as “in-band” or “out-of-band”. In-band refers to user interactions that can be smoothly integrated in the user interface based on well-defined RCS signalling flows. Out-of-band refers to user interaction flows that come not with RCS signalling flows but with another media channel, e.g. a user readable short message or an external secure token service. There is no security and authentication related user interaction flows in RCS for services other than device configuration and personalization.

R16-6-7-1 “HTTP(s) based client configuration mechanism over 3GPP access” as defined in section 2.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] is transparent for the user if the RCS Service Provider supports SIM or network based user identification. If the MNO does not support network based user authentication, then it may invoke the procedures for the client configuration over non-3GPP access. The corresponding user interactions apply as described below.

R16-6-7-2 “HTTP(s) based client configuration mechanism over non 3GPP access” as defined in section 2.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] may require a user prompt for MSISDN and OTP password which is “in-band”. The OTP password in itself is received in between the two prompts is “out-of-band”. The exact flow depends of the device capabilities to determine the user identity (IMSI) of the SIM or to receive short messages on UDH ports or the RCS Service Provider policy to enforce user prompts for OTP as defined in section 2.6.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14].

R16-6-7-3 For the configuration of additional devices sharing an identity there are a number of user interactions involved.

The primary device holding the user’s identity to be federated with the additional device may support a procedure to enable the user consent based on the external EUCR as defined in section 2.1.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.15]. The user dialogue associated with this action is “in-band”.

The procedure to request the federation of the user identity of a primary device via the “HTTP(s) based client configuration mechanism for alternative devices sharing a user identify” as defined in section 2.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] requires user prompt for MSISDN and RCS Service Provider indication on the additional device. In addition, the user may need to enter an OTP or a PIN as defined in section 2.9.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] and 2.1.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.15]. This full user interaction flow is “in-band”.

The reception of the OTP on the primary device via SMS as defined in section 2.9.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] is “out-of-band”.

The user interaction for the federation consent on a primary device via the external EUCR as defined in section 2.1.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.15] is “in-band”.

The user interaction for the input of a PIN on the primary device as defined in section 2.1.2.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.15] is “in-band”.

R16-6-8 For the requirements in user story US16-2 the following applies.

R16-6-8-1 The enhanced security function can be enabled or disabled by the RCS Service Provider as defined in section 2.5.3 and 2.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14].

R16-6-9 For the requirements in user story US16-3 the following applies.

R16-6-9-1 The RCS implementation assumes one common user identity managed across all involved technologies (e.g. SIM, Device Configuration, IMS, Messaging Server, Common Message store, Voice and Video services). It is the RCS Service Provider responsibility to maintain this user identity and

the related authentication, permission and preference data in synchronisation across all technologies and network services. The RCS client shall use for RCS access only the user data retrieved from the SIM or via the user profile received from Device Configuration.

This allows the network to assign all traffic and service usage events to this single user identity.

R16-6-10 The requirements in user story US16-4 shall be realised locally on the device, using procedures defined in Section 5.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16].

## 17 Data Off

### 17.1 Description

Users in many cases switch cellular data usage off locally on their device. To allow the MNO to offer IR 92 / IR 94 and RCS services to their users even in these use cases, the data off switch shall have an MNO configurable impact on the device connectivity. It shall be up to the individual MNO to ensure a good Operator service experience by the end user in cases that allow IP service usage even if the data switch was set to 'off' by the end user.

### 17.2 User Stories and Feature Requirements

**US17-1 As an MNO, I want to be able to configure the device to use various technologies for the production of MNO communication services even when the cellular data switch on the device is set to 'off'.**

R17-1-1 For the configuration of MNO voice, video and messaging services, the following technologies / bearers shall be considered in scope:

- R17-1-1-1 CS call over 2G and 3G network.
- R17-1-1-2 Multimedia Telephony voice call over 4G or 5G network.
- R17-1-1-3 SMS over 2G and 3G network (including services enabled by SMS).
- R17-1-1-4 MMS over 2G, 3G, 4G, 5G network.
- R17-1-1-5 IP SMS over 4G or 5G network (including services enabled by SMS).
- R17-1-1-6 RCS Messaging over 2G, 3G, 4G, 5G network (including services enabled by RCS Messaging) inside and outside of a call.
- R17-1-1-7 RCS File Transfer over 2G, 3G, 4G, 5G network including services enabled by RCS File Transfer) inside and outside of a call.
- R17-1-1-8 RCS Enriched Calling Pre-Call and Post-Call services over 3G 4G and 5G networks.
- R17-1-1-9 Interactive In-call services inside an ongoing call over 2G, 3G, 4G and 5G networks.
- R17-1-1-10 Multimedia Telephony video call over 4G or 5G networks.

R17-1-1-11 Operator Provisioning over 2G, 3G, 4G and 5G networks.

R17-1-1-12 MIVCs

R17-1-2 The availability of the services listed in requirement R17-1-1 (with the exception of services listed under R17-1-1-1 and R17-1-1-3) shall be independently configurable on a per-MNO and per customer basis for roaming and on-net as described in Table 33.

R17-1-3 When an MNO has configured services which require a cellular network as “Available”, these services shall be available even if the user sets the cellular data switch to ‘off’.

R17-1-4 When an MNO has configured services which require a cellular network as “On User Selection”, these services shall be available only if the user’s cellular data setting is ‘on’.

R17-1-5 Availability of technologies / bearers shall be configured by the RCS Service Provider independently whether the conversation is with another person / group of persons or a Chatbot.

NOTE: It is at sole MNO discretion to decide on the services that shall be offered to their users. The MNO might decide to offer none of the configurable services, a selection of these services or all of the above listed services.

	Service Behaviour on-net	Service Behaviour in Roaming
CS Voice	Always on	Always on
xMS over CS	Always on	Always on
Multimedia Telephony voice call	Configurable	Configurable
SMS over IP	Configurable	Configurable
MMS	Configurable	Configurable
RCS Messaging	Configurable	Configurable
RCS File Transfer	Configurable	Configurable
RCS Enriched Calling (Pre-call and Post-call services)	Configurable	Configurable
Interactive In-Call services	Configurable	Configurable
Multimedia Telephony video call	Configurable	Configurable
MIVC	Configurable	Configurable
Provisioning	Configurable	Configurable
PS data/Internet Access	Always off	Always off

**Table 33: Summary of the availability of PS services over cellular networks when cellular DATA is set to OFF**

## 17.3 Technical Information

### 17.3.1 Overview

The technical realisation of data off behaviour is applicable to devices in the following way:

- For embedded RCS clients on primary devices using the IMS APN or Home Operator Services (HOS) APN as defined in sections 2.2 and 2.8.1.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] the complete behaviour is applicable via the Data Off functionality defined in section 2.8.1.5 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. In accordance with the definitions of section 2.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07], this includes downloadable RCS clients that use terminal APIs to access the RCS functionality.
- For downloadable RCS clients on primary devices, as defined in section 2.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] the level of support of the behaviour depends on the level of integration with the native applications, which is limited by the permissions offered by the mobile OS or the OS platform API.
- Secondary devices: Those are access agnostic and as a result, the behaviour described is not applicable to such RCS clients. When the cellular data switch is switched off, they would have no data connectivity on cellular networks and as a result, in those circumstances they shall not be able to offer any MNO services on such networks.

### 17.3.2 Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service requirements

For the implementation of the requirements in user story US17-1 the following applies:

- R17-2-1 Communication services implemented on primary devices require an IP data connection. In accordance with the definitions in [GSMA PRD-NG.102] and [GSMA PRD-NG.114] for IP communication devices and in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] for RCS devices the data connection is provided in cellular access networks by bearers using the IMS and the HOS APN, both being independently available from the cellular data connection for generic use via the internet APN. Therefore, the implementation of the requirements in US17-1 focus on the ability of the MNO to disable the service based on RCS Service Provider policy, although a bearer is available.
- R17-2-2 CS call over 2G network and CS call over 3G network refer to the circuit switched telephony service. In accordance with the requirement for CS voice in Table 33, this service will be available regardless of the cellular data switch (covering R17-1-1-1).
- R17-2-3 Multimedia Telephony voice call over 4G or 5G networks refers to the Multimedia Telephony service over EPC and 5GC defined in [GSMA PRD-IR.92] and [GSMA PRD-NG.114]. The MNO capability to disable/enable this as required in Table 33 is implemented by the configuration parameters MMTEL\_voice\_exempt, MMTEL\_voice\_exempt\_roaming, SS\_XCAP\_config\_exempt and SS\_XCAP\_config\_exempt\_roaming as defined in [GSMA PRD-IR.92] and [GSMA PRD-NG.114] (covering R17-1-1-2).
- R17-2-4 SMS over 2G and 3G networks refers to the SMS service over circuit switched networks, SMS over General Packet Radio Service (GPRS), SMS over SGs and SMS over NAS (on a 5GS). In accordance with the requirement for SMS

in Table 33, this service will be available regardless of the cellular data switch (covering R17-1-1-3).

R17-2-5 IP SMS over 4G or 5G networks refers to the SMS over IP service defined in [GSMA PRD-IR.92] and [GSMA PRD-NG.114]. In accordance with the requirement for SMS over IP in Table 33, the MNO capability to disable/enable SMS over IP is implemented by the configuration parameters SMSoIP\_exempt and SMSoIP\_roaming\_exempt as defined [GSMA PRD-IR.92] and [GSMA PRD-NG.114] (covering R17-1-1-5).

R17-2-6 MMS over 2G, 3G, 4G and 5G networks refers to the MMS service being access network agnostic, only requiring SMS to carry push notifications. In accordance with the requirement for MMS in Table 33, the MNO capability to disable/enable MMS is implemented by the configuration parameter MMS DATA OFF defined in section A.1.14 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] (covering R17-1-1-4).

R17-2-7 RCS Messaging over 2G, 3G, 4G and 5G networks refers to the RCS messaging services 1-to-1 Chat, Group Chat and Standalone Messaging. The MNO capability to disable/enable RCS Messaging as required in Table 33 is implemented by the configuration parameter RCS MESSAGING DATA OFF defined in section A.1.14 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] (covering R17-1-1-6).

NOTE: This configuration parameter when set to 0 or 2 will disable the File Transfer service. An MNO is thus not able to disable chat or standalone messaging but enable File Transfer.

R17-2-8 File Transfer over 2G, 3G, 4G and 5G networks refer to the RCS messaging services refers to the File Transfer service. The MNO capability to disable/enable File Transfer as required in Table 33 is implemented by the configuration parameter FILE TRANSFER DATA OFF defined in section A.1.14 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] (covering R17-1-1-7).

R17-2-9 RCS Enriched Calling Pre-Call and Post-Call services over 3G, 4G and 5G networks refer to Content Sharing Call Composer and Post-Call services. The MNO capability to disable/enable RCS Enriched Calling as required in Table 33 is implemented by the configuration parameter PRE AND POST CALL DATA OFF defined in section A.1.15 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] (covering R17-1-1-8).

R17-2-10 Interactive In-Call services over 3G, 4G and 5G networks refer to Shared Map and Sketch services. The MNO capability to disable/enable Interactive In-Call services as required in Table 33 is implemented by the configuration parameter CONTENT SHARE DATA OFF defined in section A.1.14 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

R17-2-11 Multimedia Telephony video call over 4G and 5G networks refers to conversational video over LTE and NR as defined in [GSMA PRD-IR.94] and [GSMA PRD-NG.114]. The MNO capability to disable/enable this as required in Table 33 is implemented by the configuration parameters MMTEL\_video\_exempt and MMTEL\_video\_exempt\_roaming as defined in [GSMA PRD-IR.94] and [GSMA PRD-NG.114] (covering R17-1-1-10).

R17-2-12 Operator Provisioning over 2G, 3G, 4G and 5G networks refers to the configuration procedures as defined in section 2.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and the configuration for Chatbots requiring specific management as defined in

section 3.6.3.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The MNO capability to disable/enable Operator Provisioning as required in Table 33 is implemented by the configuration parameters "Device Management over PS data off exemption" and "Device Management over PS data off roaming exemption" as defined in section 6.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] and section A.1.14 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] (covering R17-1-1-11).

- R17-2-13 To enable Messaging for Multi Device the RCS client needs to synchronize conversation history data for RCS messaging, File Transfer, SMS and MMS with the Common Message Store, consuming IP data. To complete the requirements in US17-1 the MNO should have the capability to disable/enable Conversation history synchronization via the configuration parameter SYNC DATA OFF defined in section A.1.14 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R17-2-14 MIVC, when implemented over ViLTE on 4G and 5G networks, refers to conversational video over LTE and NR as defined in [GSMA PRD-IR.94] and [GSMA PRD-NG.114]. The MNO capability to disable/enable this as required in Table 33 is implemented by the configuration parameters MMTEL\_video\_exempt and MMTEL\_video\_exempt\_roaming as defined in [GSMA PRD-IR.94] and [GSMA PRD-NG.114] (covering R17-1-1-12).
- R17-2-15 MIVC, when implemented over RCS Video Chat, is defined in section 3.7.5 in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The MNO capability to disable/enable RCS Messaging as required in Table 33 is implemented by the configuration parameter RCS MESSAGING DATA OFF defined in section A.1.14 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] (covering R17-1-1-12).
- R17-2-16 For R17-1-2, this shall be realised through the use of the client configuration parameters defined in section A.1.14 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and section 6.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] that provide separate settings to control the roaming and the on-net behaviour.
- R17-2-17 For R17-1-3 and R17-1-4, this shall be realised locally on the device based on the configured values of the client configuration parameters defined in section A.1.14 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and section 6.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14].

## 18 RCS Settings

### 18.1 Description

To allow users to manage their RCS services appropriately, a "Settings" function needs to be implemented into devices / RCS clients.

Each setting shall only be applicable if the individual RCS Service Provider has deployed the correspondent service.

### 18.2 User Stories and Feature Requirements

**US18-1 As a user, I want to switch between RCS instances on one device to ensure smooth operation.**

NOTE: 'An RCS "Master Switch" shall be available to activate / deactivate the native RCS functionality on the device.

- R18-1-1 Switching the master switch off shall disable all associated RCS services on that device.
- R18-1-2 There shall be various entry points on the device for the Master Switch, for example:
- Wireless and Networks settings on the device (if available)
  - “Messaging” -> “Settings” (if implemented)
  - “Messaging” -> “Settings” -> “Chat Service” (if implemented)
- R18-1-3 If the Master Switch is visible from more than one location on the device, then the implementation shall be consistent (i.e. if the Master Switch is changed in one location, the change shall be consistent for all locations).
- R18-1-4 Any downloaded applications that have been installed on a device shall have its own means to activate / deactivate the application (this may be provided by the application or the operating system of the device).
- NOTE: The Master Switch is marked accordingly to inform the user what the effect of enabling / disabling RCS services is, e.g. enhanced messaging and call services, but other services such as Multimedia Telephony are not affected by the Master Switch.

**US18-2 As a user, I want to be able to set and change a Group Chat Alias.**

- R18-2-1 The user shall have the option to customise the name label which is presented during RCS Group Chats to participants for whom the user is not in the contact list.
- R18-2-2 The support of RCS Alias shall be configurable for the RCS Service Provider.

**US18-3 As a user, I want to enable or disable Wi-Fi Voice Calling and Wi-Fi Video Calling.**

- R18-3-1 Users shall be allowed to turn on or turn off Wi-Fi Voice Calling and Wi-Fi Video Calling using one single switch.
- R18-3-2 This user setting shall be visible only when Wi-Fi Voice Calling and/or Wi-Fi Video Calling is activated by the MNO.

**US18-4 As an Integrated Messaging user, I want to switch on/off SMS Delivery Notification.**

- R18-4-1 The user shall have the option to select or deselect automatically sending a Delivery Notification for SMS they receive in an Integrated Messaging scenario.
- R18-4-2 The default setting shall be based on individual RCS Service Provider configuration.

**US18-5 As a user, I want to enable or disable automatic MMS download.**

- R18-5-1 The user shall have the option to enable or disable automatic MMS download in Integrated Messaging.
- R18-5-1-1 The default setting shall be “enabled”.

R18-5-2 The user shall have the option to enable or disable the automatic download of MMS whilst they are roaming.

R18-5-2-1 The default setting shall be “disabled”.

**US18-6 As a user, I want to personalise my device and need access to settings that allow me to do so.**

R18-6-1 The user shall have the option to enable or disable the device Light Emitting Diode (LED) for incoming message or File Transfer notification, both in the case of native or downloadable RCS client.

R18-6-1-1 The default setting shall be “enabled”.

R18-6-2 The user shall have the option to enable or disable the device vibration for incoming message or File Transfer notification, both in the case of native or downloadable RCS client.

R18-6-2-1 The default setting shall be “enabled”.

R18-6-3 The user should have the option to personalise other features of the native or downloadable RCS client. Specifically, the following features should be covered:

- Notification sounds for incoming messages (e.g. xMS, 1-to -1 Messaging Group Chat Messages, File Transfers)
- Notification sounds for incoming Chatbot events (that can be distinguished from Notifications in a P2P communication context)
- Notification preferences
- Customised ringtones (for Voice calls or IP Video)
- Visual customisation for chat (for example fonts, bubble styles, backgrounds etc.). NOTE: For Chatbot conversations, customization may be limited depending on the implementation.

R18-6-4 The user shall be able to mute selected conversations with Chatbot services so that these do not trigger notification sounds irrespectively of the settings in R18-6-3.

**US18-7 As a user, I want to enable or disable the sending of the notification that tells the sender the message was displayed.**

R18-7-1 The user shall have the option to enable or disable the sending of a notification to the sender that tells the sender the message was displayed, if supported by the RCS Service Provider.

R18-7-2 The default for this setting shall be configurable by the operator.

R18-7-3 The user shall be able to change this setting on a per-conversation basis in a conversation specific setting. This shall be possible for any conversation, including conversations with persons and conversations with Chatbot services.

**US18-8 As a user, I want to enable or disable automatic acceptance for File Transfer.**

R18-8-1 The user shall have the option to enable or disable auto-acceptance for incoming File Transfer:

R18-8-1-1 FT Auto Accept: I/O (default value set to I)

R18-8-1-2 FT Auto Accept while roaming: I/O (default value set to O)

**US18-9 As a user, I want to be able to control the image resizing options in RCS File Transfer.**

R18-9-1 The user shall have to option to set one of the following selections:

R18-9-1-1 always resize a selected option which is then stored as default value

R18-9-1-2 always ask

R18-9-1-3 never resize

R18-9-2 The default setting shall be “always ask”.

R18-9-3 For downscaling pictures, the following requirements shall apply:

R18-9-3-1 The size of the image shall be reduced using following algorithm: Scale both dimensions by the same factor  $F$  (same for width and height so the aspect ratio is maintained). Compress as JPEG with  $q=75\%$ . Compare the new image size with the original, and only offer the possibility to resize if the resulting file is smaller than the original one.

R18-9-3-2 The default scale factor  $F$  for the image shall be,  $F = \min(1280/w, 1280/h, 1.0)$ . It shall be noted the  $w$  (width) and the  $h$  (height) shall be used in pixels for the calculation.

R18-9-3-3 If the factor ( $F$ ) is 1, the original image shall be transferred.

**US18-10 As a user, I want to be able to control the video resizing options in RCS File Transfer.**

R18-10-1 The user shall have to option to set one of the following selections:

R18-10-1-1 Always resize to a selected option which is then stored as default value

R18-10-1-2 Always ask

R18-10-1-3 Never resize

R18-10-2 The default setting shall be “always ask”.

R18-10-3 The resizing options shall be based on OEM / developer choices including the default value of 480p @ 1200kbps.

R18-10-4 When the set of resizing options are presented to the user, the default one highlighted or selected shall be 480p encoded at a rate of 1200 kbps.

R18-10-5 The video resizing shall be accomplished in the background and the user shall be able to take control of their device instantly (to e.g., but not limited to, answer incoming calls, make a call, etc.).

**US18-11 As a software developer, I want to display on request an ‘about’ page that explains details of the RCS client.**

R18-11-1 The device shall provide the user with an ‘about’ page that indicated the version of the device and the RCS implementation to allow efficient identification of the RCS client / device details.

**US18-12 As an Integrated Messaging user, I want to influence the proposed service for messages and transferring files.**

R18-12-1 If the MNO configured the device for Integrated Messaging, a setting shall allow the user to select the default sending method to be used when the user sends a message or file. The user is able to select:

- ‘Proposed Messaging Service’ (follow Integrated Messaging behaviour as defined in Integrated Messaging requirements), or
- ‘SMS’ and ‘MMS’ (if MMS is disabled, the option will be SMS and SMS with link) or
- ‘RCS chat’ and ‘RCS File Transfer’.

**US18-13 As an Integrated Messaging user, I want to be able to change my preference for whether undelivered RCS messages will follow the Client Fallback SMS (CFS) mechanism or not. The user shall be able to set one of the following options, applicable in the situations in which CFS takes place (see R5-2-4-4:**

R18-13-1 Always resend undelivered RCS messages as SMS (and don’t ask),

R18-13-2 Always ask,

R18-13-3 Never resend undelivered RCS messages as SMS (and don’t ask).

R18-13-4 The default for this setting shall be configurable by the MNO.

**US18-14 As an Integrated Messaging user, I want to be able to change my preference for whether undelivered RCS files are automatically sent again by SMS link or not.**

R18-14-1 The user shall be able to set one of the following options:

R18-14-1-1 Always resend undelivered RCS Files as SMS link (and don’t ask),

R18-14-1-2 Always ask,

R18-14-1-3 Never resend undelivered RCS Files as SMS link (and don’t ask).

R18-14-1-4 The default for this setting shall be configurable by the MNO.

**US18-15 As a user, I want to be able to block specific contacts**

R18-15-1 It shall be possible to block specific contacts.

R18-15-2 All incoming communications from an identified blocked contact shall be blocked by the device.

- R18-15-3 The user shall not be notified about any incoming communications from a contact on their local device blacklist.
- R18-15-4 The blocked sender shall not be notified about the status of being blocked. Operator Messages and file transfers shall indicate the “sent” and “delivered” states as appropriate and shall not indicate “displayed”.
- R18-15-5 In the case that a blocked contact makes a voice or video call, they will hear a ringtone or busy tone. Any further call treatment is determined by the MNO.
- R18-15-6 Exception: In the case where a blocked contact is participating in a Group Chat, the requirements above shall not apply.
- R18-15-7 Exception: In case of any Critical Chatbots, the UI shall not offer the option to block this Chatbot.

**US18-16 As a user, I want to select the active RCS SIM on a Dual SIM Device.**

- R18-16-1 The user shall be able to change the selection to another RCS SIM at any time. (See section 2.2.9 which applies in their entirety).
- R18-16-2 The switch between SIMs shall only be visible in the case that both SIMs are RCS capable.

**US18-17 As a user, I want to control settings for Chatbots.**

- R18-17-1 void
- R18-17-2 void
- R18-17-3 void
- R18-17-4 void
- R18-17-5 The user shall be able to control the sharing or withholding (i.e. ‘share’ vs. ‘do not share’) of their personal information as detailed below on a per Chatbot basis. The user’s personal information shall include:
  - R18-17-5-1 The user’s MSISDN as the identifier for a conversation with a Chatbot. If the user does not share the MSISDN, then the conversation is anonymous. This setting shall be available per each Chatbot conversation. (Default setting: ‘do not share’)
  - R18-17-5-2 void
  - R18-17-5-3 The sending of “Displayed” Message Status Notification in response to received Chatbot messages. This setting shall be available per each Chatbot conversation. (Default setting: as set in the related setting, see US18-7 and related requirements).
- R18-17-6 void
- R18-17-7 The user shall be able to block/unblock Chatbots from a Chatbot blacklist setting.
- R18-17-8 void

R18-17-9 void

R18-17-10 The user shall be able to allow “Enriched Chatbot search”. The default setting for this shall be operator configurable. This setting shall impact the features described in R15-4-3-1 and R15-4-3-2.

**US18-18 As a user, I want to set the option on how to transfer a file to multiple RCS capable users at one time from the gallery or a file browser.**

R18-18-1 The user shall have the option to set one of the following selections:

R18-18-1-1 The file is sent in a Group Chat.

R18-18-1-2 The file is sent in multiple 1-to-1 File Transfers.

R18-18-2 The default setting shall be to send the file in a Group Chat.

**US18-19 As a user, I want to be able to change my preference for whether messages will be sent unencrypted or not, when the recipient loses encryption/decryption.**

R18-19-1 The RCS client may provide the user the ability to save their choice for the action to be taken, in the event of loss of encryption/decryption before the user sends a message. The RCS client may provide at least the following selections:

R18-19-1-1 Always ask,

R18-19-1-2 Always send unencrypted (and don't ask)

R18-19-2 The default setting shall be “Always ask”.

NOTE: This setting does not apply to fallback messages.

**US18-20 As a user, I want to change my preference for being informed about user encryption identifier changes.**

R18-20-1 The RCS client may provide the user the ability to save their choice for the action to be taken in the event of unexpected User Encryption Identifier change. The RCS client may provide at least the following options to the user:

R18-20-1-1 Do not inform me

R18-20-1-2 Inform me

R18-20-2 The default setting shall be “Do not inform me”.

**US18-21 As a user, I want to control whether videos and GIFs in my conversations start playing without action on my side.**

R18-21-1 The RCS client shall provide the user with the option to enable or disable automatic playing of videos and GIFs content providing following options:

R18-21-1-1 Play videos and GIFs in conversation threads automatically without sound.

R18-21-1-2 Play GIFs in conversation threads automatically and provide an entry point to start playing videos.

R18-21-1-3 Do not play videos and GIFs automatically but provide an entry point to start playing videos and GIFs.

R18-21-2 The default setting shall be "Play GIFs in conversation threads automatically and provide an entry point to start playing videos".

#### **US18-22 As a user, I want to be able to limit data used for IP Video Calls.**

R18-22-1 The RCS client shall provide the user the ability to limit the quality of IP Video Calls.

R18-22-2 The RCS client shall provide the user the ability to limit the quality of IP Video Calls while roaming.

### **18.3 Technical Information**

A number of requirements for service configuration parameters on the RCS client are provided.

#### **18.3.1 Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service Requirements**

R18-23-1 The technical implementation of the requirements for user story US18-1 to switch between multiple RCS instances on a device are provided in Device Provisioning, see section 2.2.

R18-23-2 The technical implementation of the requirements of US18-1 regarding Master Switch shall be provided by RCS client via the following procedures:

- If the user changes the value of the "Master Switch" from "ON" to "OFF", the RCS client shall send a HTTP client configuration request with the "vers" parameter defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] set to the value stored for the local client configuration and the "rcs\_state" parameter defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] to "-4". The RCS client shall expect configuration server responses as defined for client configuration requests with positive integer values in the "vers" request parameter as defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] and process is accordingly. The RCS client shall keep the last client configuration data locally stored.
- If the validity of the configuration XML document expires or it receives a network request for client configuration as defined in section 3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] and the "Master Switch" is set to "OFF", then the RCS clients shall send a HTTP client configuration request only if the current configuration XML document includes settings for services that are not affected by the "Master Switch" (e.g. VoLTE). In such a HTTP client configuration request the RCS client shall set the "rcs\_state" parameter defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] to "-4". If all services included in the current configuration XML document are affected by the "Master Switch", the RCS client shall not send a HTTP client configuration request. In all cases, the RCS client shall keep the configuration data for services affected by the "Master Switch" locally stored.

- If the user changes the value of the "Master Switch" from "OFF" to "ON" then the RCS client shall send a HTTP client configuration request with the "vers" parameter defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.14] and the "rcs\_state" parameter defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] to the version of the configuration XML document corresponding to the locally stored client configuration.
- If the user changes the value of the "Master Switch" from "ON" to "OFF" and the RCS client is not registered for Multimedia Telephony over LTE, NR or EPC-integrated Wi-Fi then it shall terminate existing sessions and cancel existing requests for RCS services. Otherwise, the RCS client shall terminate existing sessions and cancel existing requests only for services other than IP Voice Calls and IP Video Call and SMS over IP (see also section 2.8.1.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]).
- If the user changes the value of the "Master Switch" from "ON" to "OFF" and the RCS client is registered for Multimedia Telephony over LTE, NR or EPC-integrated Wi-Fi and the RCS client is configured to share a registration between RCS and Multimedia Telephony, then the client shall re-register in IMS with only the relevant ICSI and feature tags of [GSMA PRD-IR.92], [GSMA PRD-IR.94] respectively. Otherwise, the RCS client shall de-register from the IMS for the registration related to the RCS services.
- If the user changes the value of the "Master Switch" from "OFF" to "ON" and the RCS client is not registered for any of the IP Voice Call, IP Video Call or SMS over IP, then the RCS client shall register in IMS for any supported and active RCS services.
- If the user changes the value of the "Master Switch" from "OFF" to "ON", and the client is registered for any of the IP Voice Call, IP Video Call or SMS over IP, then it shall re-register in IMS according to section 2.4.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] to add the feature tags of any supported and active RCS services according to configuration.
- If the "Master Switch" is set to "OFF" and the client is registered in IMS for any of the IP Voice Call, IP Video Call or SMS over IP and
  - it receives an OPTIONS request it shall respond with 200 OK but no RCS feature tags in the contact header
  - it receives an INVITE or MESSAGE request with RCS feature tags in the accept-contact header, it shall respond with 480 Temporarily Unavailable.
- If the "Master Switch" is set to "OFF", and Backup & Restore as defined in section 9 is enabled then the RCS client shall not synchronise with the common message store if a trigger as defined in section 4.1.11.8 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] applies.
- If the user changes the value of the "Master Switch" from "ON" to "OFF", the RCS client shall log-out from a session with the Common Message Store.
- If the user changes the value of the "Master Switch" from "OFF" to "ON" and Backup & Restore as defined in section 9 is enabled then the

RCS client shall take this as a trigger for synchronization with the Common Message Store.

- R18-23-3 The requirements for user story US18-2 shall be implemented locally on the device. The value of the parameter is used by the RCS client to populate the User Alias as defined in 2.5.3.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R18-23-4 The term 'IP Voice Call' is interpreted as IR.51 Voice over Wi-Fi in this context. The requirements for user story US18-3 shall be implemented locally on the device. The client configuration is only relevant if the RCS Service Provider has activated the IP Voice Call on the device via the configuration parameter Media\_type\_restriction\_policy defined in section B.3 of [GSMA PRD-IR.51] to enable Voice over EPC-integrated Wi-Fi and the RCS Service Provider has determined that the switch to enable or disable IP voice calls is displayed to the user via the configuration parameter IR51 SWITCH UX as defined in section 10. If IP Voice Call is disabled by the user the device shall behave as if it has been disabled by the RCS Service Provider see section 10.3.
- R18-23-5 As a clarification to the requirements for user story US18-4, if SMS is provided by means of the Short Message Service as defined in [3GPP TS 23.040] or the Short Messaging Service over IP as defined in IR.92 (see section 5.3.1) and [GSMA PRD-NG.114] it shall be noted that the SMS STATUS REPORT to notify the sender of a successful delivery is sent by the Service Centre and not by the receiving device. Therefore, it is not the recipient controlling sending of a Delivery Notification. Instead, the sender has the ability to request delivery report for sent short messages to prevent the SC to send SMS STATUS report the originating client shall not request an SMS STATUS REPORT when submitting a short message.
- R18-23-6 The configuration parameter defined in the requirements for user stories US18-5, controls the retrieval behaviour (immediate or deferred retrieval) of the MMS user agent of the Integrated Messaging client if MMS is provided by the RCS client via Multimedia Messaging Service as defined in section 7.3 of IR.92.
- R18-23-6-1 If the device detects a roaming situation and the user has disabled MMS download in roaming case, then the MMS user agent should apply deferred retrieval behaviour. The user should be notified of a received MMS at the time of reception of the MMS notification.
- R18-23-6-2 If the device detects a roaming situation and the user has enabled MMS download in roaming case, then the MMS user agent should apply the retrieval behaviour as determined by the "MMS automatic download" setting of US18-5.
- R18-23-7 The requirements for user story US18-6 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R18-23-8 Requirement R18-7-1 shall be implemented in accordance with the DISPLAY NOTIFICATION SWITCH client configuration parameter defined in section 5.3.4.1. When display notification is supported by the RCS Service Provider, the DISPLAY NOTIFICATION SWITCH parameter shall be set to 0. If sending notifications about messages being displayed is disabled by the user, then an RCS client receiving a message or file shall ignore the disposition notification header with value "display" and not generate a notification for "displayed".

R18-23-9 When display notification is not supported by the RCS Service Provider, the DISPLAY NOTIFICATION SWITCH parameter shall be set to 1. In this case, the user is not able to enable/disable the Display Notification setting

R18-23-10 The user settings for automatic acceptance of File Transfer of US18-8 shall be implemented locally on the device as follows:

R18-23-10-1 The RCS settings for auto-acceptance apply for files received via the File Transfer service and media objects received in Rich Cards, as per requirements in US7-15 and the requirements R9-3-9, R15-8-7 and R15-8-36.

R18-23-10-2 The RCS Service Provider shall be able to provide the initial default value for the FT Auto Accept defined in R18-8-1-1 via the configuration parameter FT AUT ACCEPT defined in section A.1.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. Once the user has altered the settings, the value of FT AUT ACCEPT from the device configuration becomes irrelevant.

R18-23-10-3 The RCS Service Provider is able to provide a file size limit via the configuration parameter FT WARN SIZE defined in section A.1.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] to control the auto acceptance for files in File Transfer and media objects in Rich Cards based on their size.

R18-23-10-4 A file contained in a File Transfer or a media object in an Rich Card shall be downloaded depending on its file size, the access network, the user settings defined in R18-8-1 and the value of the configuration parameter FT WARN SIZE defined in section A.1.4 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] as per Table 34.

<b>Auto Accept</b>	<b>I</b>	<b>I</b>	<b>I</b>	<b>I</b>	<b>O</b>
<b>Auto Accept when roaming</b>	<b>O</b>	<b>O</b>	<b>I</b>	<b>I</b>	<b>O</b>
<b>Warn Size</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>&gt;0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>&gt;0</b>	<b>any</b>
<b>Cellular Access in the HPLMN</b>	auto acceptance	auto acceptance if "file size < warn size", otherwise manual acceptance	auto acceptance	auto acceptance if "file size < warn size", otherwise manual acceptance	manual acceptance
<b>Cellular Access in a VPLMN</b>	manual acceptance	manual acceptance	auto acceptance	auto acceptance if "file size < warn size", otherwise manual acceptance	manual acceptance
<b>Non Cellular Access</b>	auto acceptance	auto acceptance	auto acceptance	auto acceptance	manual acceptance

**Table 34: Auto Acceptance behaviour for files and Rich Card media**

- R18-23-11 The requirements for user stories US18-9 to US18-12 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R18-23-12 Requirements R18-13-1 to R18-13-3 shall be implemented locally on the device. For requirement R18-13-4, the MESSAGING FALLBACK DEFAULT client configuration parameter defined in section 5.3.4.1 shall be set.
- R18-23-13 Requirements R18-14-1 to R18-14-1-3 shall be implemented locally on the device. For requirement R18-14-1-4, the FT FALLBACK DEFAULT client configuration parameter defined in section 7.3.2.1 shall be set.
- R18-23-14 The technical implementation of the requirements of user story US18-15 shall be implemented as follows:
- R18-23-14-1 The RCS client shall manage a client local list of originator addresses being subject to blacklisting. If the user adds a Chatbot to the client local list of originator addresses, then the Chatbot service identifier as defined in section 2.5.4.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] shall be used. The user shall only add a Chatbot whose URI does not match an URI of the list of critical Chatbots URIs as defined in section 3.6.11 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] (fulfilling R18-15-7).
  - R18-23-14-2 The client procedures for capability discovery are not impacted by blacklisting.
  - R18-23-14-3 The client shall reject an incoming SIP INVITE request with a SIP 486 Busy Here response, if the originator address matches a Chatbot service identifier contained in the client local blacklist. The user shall not be notified.
  - R18-23-14-4 Otherwise, for sessions and messages related to Standalone Messages as per section 3.2.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] or 1-to-1 Chat as per section 3.2.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07], the RCS client shall accept an incoming session request, if the originator address is contained in the client local blacklist. The RCS client shall perform the procedures for reception of the message as defined for the corresponding service, including the procedures for delivery reporting. The RCS client shall not notify the user and discard the incoming message. As a consequence, the client procedures for the processing display notification is not applicable for the relevant incoming messages.  
For File Transfer, Audio Messaging and Geolocation Push received in a 1-to-1 Chat session or via Standalone Messaging, the RCS client shall apply the procedure for the transport message as defined in R18-23-14-3. For File Transfer or Audio Messaging the RCS client shall not invoke the file download procedure, i.e. not attempt to download the thumbnail or the file from the File Transfer content server.
  - R18-23-14-5 To satisfy the requirement R18-15-6 the RCS client shall not screen received session invitations for Group Chat or Chat Messages received in a Group Chat session for originator addresses contained in the local client blacklist.
  - R18-23-14-6 To satisfy the requirements of R18-15-5, if the client receives an incoming call request for a voice or video call from an originator address contained

in the client local blacklist, then the client shall, based on a client implementation option,

- accept the incoming call request without notifying the user and without answering the call,
- reject the incoming call request based the procedures defined for user-determined user busy.

R18-23-14-7 For Enriched Pre-Call and Post call services; if the RCS client receives a session invitation for an RCS Enriched Calling session from an originator address contained in the client local blacklist, the RCS client shall accept the session request and all received Pre-call and Post-call elements as defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.20] but not notify the user and discard the received elements.

R18-23-14-8 For a short message received from an originator address contained in the client local blacklist, the RCS client shall confirm the delivery, shall not notify the user and shall discard the short message.

R18-23-14-9 For MMS messages, if the RCS client receives a MMS Notification from an originator address contained in the client local blacklist, the RCS client shall confirm the MMS Notification, shall stop processing of the MMS transaction and shall not notify the user.

R18-23-14-10 The processing of client originated messaging and call handling is not impacted by the client local blacklist of originator addresses.

R18-23-15 The technical implementation of the user story US18-16 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R18-23-16 For requirement R18-17-5, this shall be realised locally on the device

R18-23-17 For requirement R18-17-5-1, this shall be the setting to control the sharing of the MSISDN which shall trigger the sending of the Privacy Management commands described in section 3.6.5.1.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] as defined in section 15.2.1.

R18-23-18 Requirement R18-17-5-3 shall be realised locally on the device.

R18-23-19 Requirement R18-17-7 shall be realised through the client local blacklist as defined in section 3.6.6 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]

R18-23-20 Requirement R18-17-10 shall be implemented based on the procedures described in section 3.6.3.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. The default setting shall be configured based on the ALLOW ENRICHED CHATBOT SEARCH DEFAULT parameter defined in section 15.2.1.2.

R18-23-21 The requirements for user story US18-18 shall be implemented locally on the device.

R18-23-22 Requirements R18-19-1 and R18-19-2 shall be realised locally on the device, aided by procedures defined in section 11 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16]

R18-23-23 Requirements R18-20-1 and R18-20-2 shall be realised locally on the device, aided by the definitions and identity model defined in section 3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.16].

R18-23-24 Requirements in US18-21 shall be realised locally on the device.

R18-23-25 Requirements in US18-22 shall be realised locally on the device aided by procedures in section 3.7.5.4.8.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] for RCS Video Chat and section 3.3 of [GSMA PRD-NG.114] for ViLTE.

## 19 Multi Device Voice and Video

### 19.1 Description

Multi device Voice and Video (MDV<sup>2</sup>) allows the user to make and receive telephone calls on a variety of devices and interfaces other than the mobile device containing the primary SIM. Examples of devices include but are not limited to non-native interfaces on smartphones containing a SIM other than the primary SIM, tablets, laptops and connected watches. The devices may connect using any kind of data connection (e.g. mobile data, Wi-Fi).

### 19.2 User Stories and Feature Requirements

**US19-1 As a user, I would like to use various connected devices for my preferred MNO voice and video calling service.**

R19-1-1 All devices I use shall use one identity for any incoming or outgoing calls.

R19-1-2 The used identity shall be the MSISDN of the primary device.

NOTE: Any devices which are not the primary device are called secondary device(s).

R19-1-3 A secondary device is linked to the identity of the primary device using the MDV2 federation process.

NOTE: One single secondary device may carry multiple secondary instances which are federated with different identities.

R19-1-4 If an MNO has deployed an RCS Multi Device Messaging (MDM) service, the federation process shall span both MDM and MDV2 processes (from the user perspective).

R19-1-5 Secondary devices may use a SIM to authenticate to the network (not to the MDV2 service!) or use a SIM-less data connection.

R19-1-6 SIM based secondary devices may or may not be linked to the primary identity as part of a Multi-SIM implementation of the MNO.

NOTE 1: If the SIM based device has the capability to make and / or receive telephone calls under its own identity, this capability may or may not be affected by the federation with a primary device, depending on the individual operator implementation (using the native telephone capability or a pre-installed / download app as the secondary interface on that device).

NOTE 2: Multi-SIM is not in scope of the proposed MDV<sup>2</sup> solution.

R19-1-7 A connected device shall fulfil certain pre-requisites to be used as a primary or secondary device for MDV<sup>2</sup>:

R19-1-7-1 The device shall support connectivity to the MNO voice service (details tbd in technical implementation).

R19-1-7-2 The device shall support speaker and microphone.

R19-1-7-3 To allow Video services, the device shall support a video camera and capable display. If these requirements are not met, the device will not support Multi Device Video services.

R19-1-7-4 The device shall support a voice call application compatible with MNO voice calling, incl. a dialler. If Multi Device Video Calling is supported, an MNO video calling application shall be supported.

R19-1-7-5 The device shall support an application that supports the federation process.

R19-1-7-6 The device may support a call log.

R19-1-7-7 The device shall be capable to alert the user.

R19-1-8 There shall be an overview over all federated devices and key settings of these on the primary device.

R19-1-9 The federation process shall be initiated from the primary device. This process shall be secure to prevent abuse.

R19-1-10 The following device types shall be supported (non-exhaustive list) and may be deployed by a Service Provider:

R19-1-10-1 Primary device: SIM- based (smart) phone

R19-1-10-2 Secondary device: SIM-based Smartphone, feature phone or basic phone (in a Multi-SIM configuration or stand-alone).

R19-1-10-3 Secondary device: tablet computer (SIM based or non-SIM based).

R19-1-10-4 Secondary device: Laptop or PC.

R19-1-10-5 Secondary device: browser-based on any connected device.

R19-1-10-6 Secondary device: fixed line phone (not all MDV features may be supported). (Fixed line phone shall keep their fixed line identity in parallel.)

R19-1-11 All MDV<sup>2</sup> calling services and features shall be available (unless stated differently) on any of the federated devices irrespective of the status of any other federated device (including primary device).

**US19-2 As a user, I want to receive calls on any of my MNO voice and/or video capable devices.**

- R19-2-1 For incoming calls, the user shall be able to configure a ringing pattern across all federated devices:
- R19-2-1-1 Parallel ringing, or
  - R19-2-1-2 Sequential ringing in the sequence defined by the user, or
  - R19-2-1-3 Selected devices ringing in a pre-defined sequence (e.g. device 1 first, 15 seconds, then devices 2, 3 and 4 in parallel, then 5).
  - R19-2-1-4 It shall be at RCS Service Provider discretion to offer this configuration or not.
- R19-2-2 Viewing / changing settings for ringing pattern at incoming calls shall be supported on the primary device and the secondary device(s).
- R19-2-3 An incoming call shall alert the user on any of the federated devices (regardless of the ongoing activity) to allow the user to accept the call.
- R19-2-4 The call can be accepted on any of the devices which are actually alerting the user of an incoming call.
- R19-2-5 When the call is answered on one device all other federated devices shall stop alerting the user of an incoming call.
- R19-2-6 If the call has been answered by the called party, there shall not be any notification of a missed call on any of the federated devices.
- R19-2-7 If the call has not been answered by the called party, all devices shall notify a missed call.
- R19-2-8 If a missed call notification has been cleared on one device (e.g. because the user has seen the missed call notification), then the missed call notification shall be immediately cleared on all reachable federated devices.
- R19-2-9 If a device is not reachable, then updates on that device are not performed. When a device comes online again, all previous notifications shall be updated.
- R19-2-10 Ring tones should be user configurable across the federated devices, e.g. all ring tones identical across all federated devices or differentiated ringtones across federated devices.
- R19-2-11 The set of IR.92 supplementary services shall be available across all devices for incoming calls.
- R19-2-12 RCS Enriched Calling services shall be available across all devices that are Enriched Calling capable for incoming calls if supported by the MNO.
- R19-2-13 If one device is active in a call, one of the federated devices should still be available for another outgoing call.
- R19-2-14 If one device is active in a call, one of the federated devices should still be available for another incoming call.
- R19-2-15 The MNO should be able to restrict the number of parallel lines available.

NOTE: This restriction shall not affect the ability of making an emergency call from any device.

R19-2-16 Federated devices can receive incoming MDV<sup>2</sup> calls via MNO managed voice and video services, such as CS or Multimedia Telephony.

**US19-3 As a user, I want to initiate calls from any of my MNO voice and / or video capable devices.**

R19-3-1 Any device shall be able to initiate a call from different service entry points:

R19-3-1-1 The dialler application.

R19-3-1-2 The contact list application (if available).

R19-3-1-3 The call logs application (if available).

R19-3-2 The minimum set of IR.92 supplementary services shall be available across all devices for outgoing calls

NOTE: Calling Line ID Presentation of outgoing call initiated from secondary device will adopt the MSISDN of the primary device, notwithstanding if secondary device has its own SIM.

R19-3-3 RCS Enriched calling services shall be available across all devices that are Enriched Calling capable for outgoing calls.

R19-3-4 Federated devices can make MDV<sup>2</sup> calls via MNO managed voice and video services, such as CS or Multimedia Telephony.

**US19-4 As a user, I want to use consistent call logs on all of my federated devices.**

NOTE: Call Log requirements in this section only apply if a device has call logs implemented.

R19-4-1 Each calling event (incoming or outgoing) shall be logged in the call log of the device.

R19-4-2 Call log applications on the device shall support administrative functions such as deleting a selected call log entry.

R19-4-3 Call logs shall support RCS Enriched Calling features if Enriched Calling is supported on that particular device.

R19-4-4 Call logs shall be available across all devices in a consistent way, upon configuration of the user.

R19-4-5 Call logs shall provide the following:

R19-4-5-1 Other party involved in call.

R19-4-5-2 Incoming or outgoing call.

R19-4-5-3 Date and timestamp when the call was established.

R19-4-5-4 Duration.

- R19-4-5-5 Enriched Calling media according to Enriched Calling requirements.
- R19-4-5-6 Some of the call log information may be available in a “Detailed View” only.
- R19-4-5-7 Filter options for display of incoming / outgoing / missed calls / accepted calls / rejected calls.
- R19-4-5-8 Voice call / video call differentiator.
- R19-4-6 Call logs shall highlight missed call events to guide the user’s attention. Once seen, the highlight shall disappear without dedicated user interaction (i.e. manually clearing notifications).
- R19-4-7 Updates of call logs shall be available for the user in real time. The user shall be able to configure the device to balance between real time updates and battery power saving.
- R19-4-8 Call logs may offer inclusion from other events (e.g. messaging events) but shall offer the possibility to display pure call related logs.

**US19-5 As a user, I want to be able to administrate my MDV<sup>2</sup> settings.**

- NOTE: Any potential suspension of MDV<sup>2</sup> calling service does not affect any other calling service on a particular device
- R19-5-1 It shall be possible to suspend the MDV<sup>2</sup> services on a secondary device for that particular secondary device.
  - R19-5-2 It shall be possible to remotely suspend MDV<sup>2</sup> services on any federated devices from the (online) primary device.
  - R19-5-3 There shall not be a dedicated ‘call suspension function’ on a primary device (it is accepted that power off effectively suspends calling services on the primary device).
  - R19-5-4 It shall be possible to administrate the settings for incoming calls from any of the federated devices.
  - R19-5-5 All federated devices have access to the same set of settings if stored in online database (not applicable to local device settings).
  - R19-5-6 As a user, I want to transfer calls from one device to another federated device.
  - R19-5-7 The user shall be able to transfer an ongoing voice or video call (either user initiated or incoming call) from one device to another federated device.
  - NOTE: To initiate the call transfer, the user shall be able to either ‘push’ the call from the device currently active in the call to another federated device or ‘pull’ the call from another federated device which is at that very moment not active in the call.
  - R19-5-8 In-Call sharing content shall be accessible on the device that carries the call.
  - R19-5-9 This call transfer shall be virtually unlimited, i.e. a transferred call be handed over to the next federated device or handed back to the original device at any time.

**US19-6 As an MNO, I want my MDV2 service to be in line with local regulations.**

- R19-6-1 All federated device shall support emergency calls (including actual calling device location).
- R19-6-2 Legal interception shall be possible for any made or received calls on primary or secondary device, for both incoming and outgoing calls.

## 19.3 Technical Information

### 19.3.1 Overview

The technical realisation of Multi Device Voice and Video is based on the following enablers:

- On-Device Service Activation (ODSA) Entitlement and Configuration as defined in [GSMA PRD TS.43]
- Configuration of devices sharing identities as defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]
- IMS profile for voice and video as defined in [GSMA PRD-IR.51], [GSMA PRD-IR.92], [GSMA PRD-IR.94] and [GSMA PRD-NG.114]
- Multi Device for voice and video as defined in [GSMA PRD-NG.110]. The technical procedures for the support of multi-identity are not applicable, since there are no such requirements in section 19.2.

Call log synchronisation shall be applied by the device, if the configuration parameter CallLogUri as described in section 2.7 of [GSMA PRD-NG.110] is provided with a value. If the value of the configuration parameter MESSAGE STORE AUTH defined in section A.1.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] is set to "1" or "2" and the values of the configuration parameters

- CallLogUri as described in section 2.7 of [GSMA PRD-NG.110], and
- MESSAGE STORE URL as defined in section A.1.3 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]

are the same, then the RCS client shall apply the procedures defined for the Common Message Store as defined in section 4.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] for call log and message synchronisation. When comparing the values of the message store URL, the RCS client shall consider the default value for the case where the configuration parameter MESSAGE STORE URL is absent.

There may be limitations in the provisioning of MDV<sup>2</sup> services for calls handled in the CS domain, e.g. for the recording of the call log information in the network. The level of support of MDV<sup>2</sup> in the CS domain is left to the discretion of the service provider.

### 19.3.2 Technical Implementation of User Stories and Service requirements

- R19-7-1 The requirements of US19-1 are implemented as follows:
- R19-7-1-1 Pre-condition for applicability of MDV<sup>2</sup> is the subscription to mobile communication services with a public user identity and availability of a primary device as per R19-1-2.
- R19-7-1-2 The MDV<sup>2</sup> federation process described in R19-1-3 can be provided

- R19-7-1-2-1* for SIM devices via the procedures of On-Device Service Activation (ODSA) Entitlement and Configuration as defined in [GSMA PRD TS.43].
- R19-7-1-2-2* for SIM-less devices via the procedures for device configuration using OpenID Connect or the procedures for configuration of additional devices sharing the same identity as defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.14].
- R19-7-1-3* The technical pre-requisites for devices to support MDV<sup>2</sup> are
- R19-7-1-3-1* for SIM-less devices the support of the procedures for voice and video services as defined in [GSMA PRD-NG.110]
- R19-7-1-3-2* for SIM devices the support of the procedures for voice and video services as defined in [GSMA PRD-IR.51], [GSMA PRD-IR.92], [GSMA PRD-IR.94] and [GSMA PRD-NG.114].
- R19-7-1-3-3* Devices supporting multi device call log management shall support the procedures described in section 2.7 of [GSMA PRD-NG.110] and section 4.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R19-7-1-3-4* The implementation of browser based MDV<sup>2</sup> services as per R19-1-10-5 is left to the discretion of the service provider.
- R19-7-1-3-5* Management of secondary devices from the primary devices described in R19-1-8 can be implemented based on procedures defined in [GSMA PRD TS.43] for the handling of companion devices.
- R19-7-1-4* There are no technical implementations for requirement R19-1-10-6 in this version of the document.
- R19-7-2* The requirements R19-2-1, R19-2-5, R19-2-12, R19-2-13, R19-2-14, R19-2-15 and R19-2-16 shall be implemented by the service provider network.
- R19-7-3* There are no technical implementations for requirements R19-2-2 and R19-2-10 in this version of the document.
- R19-7-4* The requirements R19-2-3 and R19-2-4 shall be implemented locally on the device
- R19-7-5* The requirements R19-2-6, R19-2-7 and R19-2-8 shall be implemented locally on the device considering the procedures defined in section 2.7 of [GSMA PRD-NG.110] and section 4.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07]. For cancelled calls while using a CS network, the determination of the call log status via the Reason header as described in section 2.7 of [GSMA PRD-NG.110] is not applicable. However, the device may receive updated information at the next call log synchronisation. Therefore, the handling of the user notifications may be delayed.
- R19-7-6* The requirement R19-2-11 shall be implemented as per [GSMA PRD-IR.92].
- R19-7-7* The requirements of US19-3 shall be implemented locally on the device.

- R19-7-8 The requirements of US19-4 shall be implemented via procedures described in section 2.7 of [GSMA PRD-NG.110] and in section 4.1 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].
- R19-7-9 For requirement R19-5-1, if the device is registered in IMS for voice and video services at the time of service suspension, then the device shall perform a Deregistration or a Re-Registration without feature tags related to voice and video services. If the device has a subscription to the Common Message Store for call logs, then the device shall delete it.
- R19-7-10 The requirement R19-5-2 can be implemented based on procedures defined in [GSMA PRD TS.43] for the handling of companion devices.
- R19-7-11 The requirement R19-5-3 shall be implemented locally on the device.
- R19-7-12 There are no technical implementations for requirements R19-5-4, R19-5-5, R19-5-6, R19-5-7 and R19-5-9 in this version of the document.
- R19-7-13 The requirement R19-5-8 shall be implemented as per procedures described in section 12.
- R19-7-14 The implementation of requirements US19-6 through R19-6-2 is left to the discretion of the service provider.

## Annex A Supporting requirements

### A.1 Emoticon conversion table

#### Standard Emoticons

Emoticons	Character sequences	Examples describing graphical renditions
Happy, smile	☺ or :)	A happy or smiling face
Sad	:( or :(	A sad face
Wink	;-) or ;) or ;o) or ;O)	A winking face
Big grin	:-D or :D or :oD or :-d or :d or :od or :Od or :OD	A big grin face
Confused	:-/ or :\	A confused face
Blushing, embarrassed	:-) and :-") or :') or :> or :-\$ or :\$	A blushing, embarrassed face
Stick-out tongue	:-P or :P or :oP or :-p or :p or :op or :OP or :Op	A stick-out tongue face
Kiss, red lips	:-* or :*	A kissing face or red lips
Shocked, surprised	:-O or :-o or :o or :O	A shocked, surprised face
Angry	:-@ or :@ or X-( or X(or x-( or x( or xo( or XO(	An angry face
Cool, sunglasses	B) or B-) or (H) or (h) or Bo) or BO)	A face with sunglasses
Worried	:-S or :S or :-s or :s or :oS	A worried face

Emoticons	Character sequences	Examples describing graphical renditions
Devilish	>:-) or >:) or >:o) or >:O)	A devilish face
Crying	:-,( or :,( or :'-( or :'( or :;o( or :'o( or :;O( or :'O(	A crying face
Laughing	:~) or :) or :o)) or :O))	A laughing face
Straight face, disappointed	:-  or :  or :o  or :O	A straight face
Angel, innocent	O:-) or O:) or o:-) or o:)	An innocent face
Nerd	:-B or :B	A nerdish face
Sleepy	~O or  O or  ~o or  o	A sleepy face
Rolling eyes	8-) or 8) or 8o) or 8O)	A rolling eyes face
Sick, ill	:-& or :& or ;o& or :O&	A sick/ill face
Shhh! No speak, lips sealed	:-SS or :SS or :ss or :-ss	A face with sealed lips
Thinking, pensive	:-? or :?	A pensive face
Raised eyebrow, sarcastic look	/:-) or /:) or /:o) or /:O)	A raised eyebrow face or a face with a sarcastic look
Rose, flower	@):-	A rose
Cup of coffee	~o)	A cup of coffee
Drink, cocktail	)-	A cocktail glass
Idea (light bulb)	*:-) or *:-)	A light bulb
Love struck, heart	(L) or <3	A heart
Beer	(b) or (B)	A pint of beer
Broken Heart	(u) or (U) or \Z/	A heart broken in two
rock on!	\m/	A smiling face with rock star fingers
pirate	:ar!	A face with eye patch
silly	8-}	A face with wobbly mouth and spinning eyes
applause	=D>	A face with clapping hands
Penguin	<(')	A small penguin
Music Note	-8	A semi quaver
Star	(*)	A gold star
Clock	(o) or (O)	A clock face
Pizza	(pi) or (PI)	A slice of pizza or a whole pizza
Money	(mo) or (MO)	Coins or notes or coins and notes
Sheep	(bah) or (BAH)	A sheep
Pig	:8)	A pig's face
Sun	(#)	A shining sun

Emoticons	Character sequences	Examples describing graphical renditions
Rain Cloud	(st) or (ST)	A cloud with rain or cloud with rain drop
Umbrella	(um) or (UM)	An open umbrella
Aeroplane	(pl) or (PL)	A plane
Birthday Cake	(^)	A cake with candles
Party!	<:o)	A face wearing a party hat and blowing a party blower
Film	(~)	A roll of film or strip of film
Gift	(g) or (G)	A gift wrapped present with bow
Phone	(t) or (T)	A hand receiver with cable
Wave	:-h	A face with hand waving
Big hug	>:D<	A face with hands hugging itself

**Table 35: Standard Emoticons**

## A.2 Unicode Standard “Emoji” Emoticons

The list of required Emoji that must be graphically rendered and offered to the user, and the mapping to relevant Unicode blocks complies the latest Unicode Standard, available from

<http://www.unicode.org>.

## A.3 Panoramic photo view

RCS devices shall be able to record, display and share panoramic pictures in a user-convenient way. The requirements in this Annex A.4 shall be considered as guidelines for the implementations; screen examples are provided to illustrate these requirements but shall by no means mandate any design or UI principles. If a recorded panoramic view covers less than 360 degree full circle pictures, the requirements shall be applied accordingly.

### Recording Panoramic photos

- The device shall offer the ability to record cylindrical photos.



**Figure 21: Panoramic Photo example**

- Panoramic Photos shall be stored in a compressed mode to limit memory requirements.
- Panoramic Photos shall be recorded in a way that a full 360 degree ‘cylinder’ is recorded or a fraction of the complete 360 degree view.

- Resolution and quality shall allow zoom in to see details.
- Panoramic Photos shall be stored in a location on the device that is easy to find and to select for further operation (e.g. sharing).
- Recording a Panoramic Photo shall be limited to approximately 360 degree circle. If the user stops recording of the panoramic photo before the 360 degree circle is complete, requirements for recording, viewing and sharing shall be valid accordingly.

### Viewing Panoramic Photos

- The device shall display Panoramic Photos in a user convenient way.
  - The picture shall be displayed in full display size view of a fraction of the full picture, i.e. the picture is always displayed in full height, areas left and right of the displayed areas can be selected. Black barred areas of the screen shall be avoided.



**Figure 22: Maximum zoom out (device in portrait mode)**



**Figure 23: Maximum zoom out (device in landscape mode)**

- Portrait and landscape mode shall be supported without distortion of the picture.
- The user shall have the option to select from different navigation methods inside a Panoramic Photo:
  - The user shall be able to select the default navigation method for navigating the picture.
  - Automatic navigation: the display cylinder rotates automatically at a user definable speed. The default speed shall be convenient for most user applications.
  - Finger navigation: the user can navigate the picture by shifting a finger on the screen left and right.
  - Gyro navigation: The cylinder section that is on display is selected by moving the device physically. The sensitivity of the navigation shall be customizable:

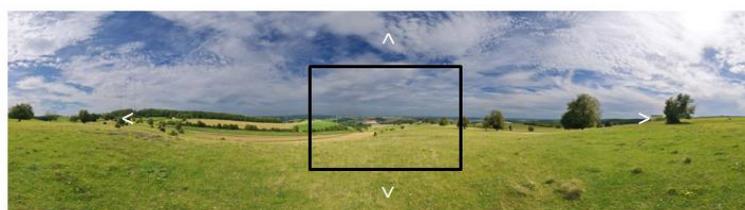
over-sensitive (i.e. by moving the device e.g. 90 degrees left or right, the cylinder shall be scrolled by 360 degrees (or proportions of this movement)) or regular (to turn the picture for 180 degrees the device needs to be turned by 180 degrees).

NOTE: The setting may be user accessible or fixed by the application, e.g. to allow for 'close to real' navigation with 360 degree glasses.

- For large device use (e.g. PC, Laptop, TV), the application shall offer navigation based on the available input devices (e.g. keyboard or mouse).



**Figure 24: Navigation options when fully zoomed out**



**Figure 25: Navigation options when zoomed in**

- The user shall be able to zoom in and out again on the Panoramic Photo to focus on details.
- The Panoramic Photo application shall contain a few pre-loaded 360 Degree Photos to allow the user to get used to UI and value of this technology.

### Sharing 360 Degree Panoramic photos

- Sharing Panoramic Photos shall be possible using the RCS File Transfer mechanisms.
- Service entry points for Panoramic Photo sharing shall be in 1- to-1 Messaging, Group Chat, the device gallery and other locations.
- Panoramic Photos shall not be compressed when shared via RCS file transfer, even when "always compress" is a default setting for picture sharing.
- The user shall be made aware of the impact on data transfer volume and time.
- When receiving a Panoramic Photo, the preview icon shall show the centre of the picture whenever the preview icon appears on the display.
- Navigation inside the pre-view picture shall be enabled.
- The application may automatically scroll through the panoramic picture in the preview.
- Zoom in / out shall not be available.

- Before download, the file size of the Panoramic Photo shall be visible to the end user (if manual file transfer confirmation is required).

## Annex B OS/Platform Specific Functionality

### B.1 Multiple Client handling on Android™ OS

On Android™ devices, multiple client handling depends on the Android™ OS version running on that device.

NOTE: Android™ embedded RCS devices implementing the Universal Profile are assumed to be running and Android™ OS version superior or equal to 7.0. RCS downloadable clients cannot follow this rule as they can be downloaded and installed on any Android™ OS version.

#### B.1.1 Multiple Client handling on Android™ OS version superior or equal to 7.0

For embedded RCS devices or downloadable applications running on Android™ OS version superior or equal to 7.0:

- On a non RCS device or an embedded RCS device where the stack cannot be used by other applications than the native RCS client, the required behaviour is:
  - Any RCS client (embedded or downloadable application) shall only activate its own RCS stack when it is set as the Default SMS app.
  - Enriched Calling services shall only be enabled when the Default Dialler supports RCS Enriched Calling services and can use the RCS stack of the messaging application set as the Default SMS app to implement Enriched Calling services.
  - Pre-Call, Shared Sketch, Shared Maps and Post-Call services shall be disabled:
    - either when the dialler set as Default Dialler does not support Enriched Calling.
    - or when the dialler that supports Enriched Calling is set as Default Dialler but cannot use the RCS stack of the messaging application set as Default SMS app.

NOTE: When the default messaging application is a downloadable application, it is up to the application to provide RCS Enriched calling services even if this downloadable application is not set as default dialler.

- On an embedded RCS device where the RCS stack is opened to other applications than the native RCS clients, the required behaviour is:
  - Any RCS messaging application becoming the Default SMS app should rely on the native RCS stack to implement RCS messaging services.
  - Any Enriched Calling application becoming the Default Dialler should rely on the native RCS stack to implement RCS Enriched Calling services.
  - The embedded RCS stack shall not register the RCS messaging features to the IMS when the messaging application set as the default SMS app does not support RCS messaging features.

- The embedded RCS stack shall not register the Pre-Call, Shared Sketch, Shared Maps and Post-Call features tags to IMS when the Default Dialler does not support Enriched Calling features.

NOTE 1: As a consequence, In-Call Chat and In-Call File Transfer as defined in section 12.4.3 and 12.4.4 are not available when the default SMS app does not support RCS messaging services.

NOTE 2: Once devices using embedded stack with open access to other messaging and dialler applications than the native RCS clients are available in the market, a downloadable RCS application with its own stack should only activate its stack when either installed on a non RCS device or on an embedded RCS device where the RCS stack is not opened to other applications and when set as default SMS app.

On Android™ OS version superior or equal to 7.0, in order for the RCS client or RCS stack to be notified of Default SMS app changes and Default Dialler change, the RCS client shall listen for the broadcast of the Android™ Intents:

- “ACTION\_DEFAULT\_SMS\_PACKAGE\_CHANGED”.
- “ACTION\_DEFAULT\_DIALER\_CHANGED”

### **B.1.2 Multiple Client handling on Android™ OS version prior to 7.0**

For downloadable applications running on Android™ version strictly inferior to 7.0 and because the Intent “ACTION\_DEFAULT\_SMS\_PACKAGE\_CHANGED” is not available in that case, multiple instance handling shall be implemented locally on the device following one of the two options described below:

**Option 1-** Retrieve the client list and if another client is active ask the user to disable it

- Identifying Android™ applications as RCS clients using a Manifest.xml meta-data property
- Identifying if a RCS client is enabled by accessing its Shared Preferences and reading a property from it.
- Accessing a RCS client settings screen by sending an intent using the action defined as a Manifest.xml meta-data property.

Android™ RCS downloadable clients installed on Android™ OS version prior to 7.0 shall define the following meta-data properties in their Manifest.xml file<sup>1</sup>.

---

<sup>1</sup> The naming of the parameters includes “joyn” for historic reasons to ensure compatibility with legacy joyn clients implementing the same mechanism for similar purposes. It is required to be provided regardless of whether the RCS client implements a joyn profile.

Name	Value	Description
gsma.joyn.client	true	Used to identify the application as an RCS client
gsma.joyn.settings.activity	<String>	Equals to the intent action that be used to start the RCS client settings screen

**Table 36: Android™ RCS client Manifest meta-data properties**

Android™ RCS downloadable clients installed on Android™ OS version prior to 7.0 shall define a settings screen activity that can be open by third party applications by using a simple intent which action string is equal to the value of the "*gsma.joyn.settings.activity*" meta-data property. Sending that intent to open the settings screen shall require no permission. Thus, the user decides or not to deactivate the third party application.

The following example illustrates the meta-data that shall be added to the Manifest.xml file, as well as a sample settings screen activity.

```

<application
  android:icon="@drawable/icon"
  android:label="@string/app_name">

  <!-- the following meta-data is used to identify the application as an RCS client -->
  <meta-data android:name="gsma.joyn.client" android:value="true" />

  <!-- the following meta-data is used to provide the value of the intent action that can be
  used by other applications to start the RCS client settings screen -->
  <meta-data
    android:name="gsma.joyn.settings.activity"
    android:value="com.vendor.product.MyRCSSettingsActivity" />

  <!-- RCS client shall define a settings property such that it can be open by third party
  applications using an intent which action string corresponds to the meta-data value
  defined above -->
  <activity android:name=".MyRCSSettingsActivity">
    <intent-filter>
      <action android:name="com.vendor.product.MyRCSSettingsActivity" />
      <category android:name="android.intent.category.DEFAULT" />
    </intent-filter>
  </activity>

```

**Table 37: Android meta-data usage**

Android™ RCS downloadable clients installed on Android™ OS version prior to 7.0 shall define a publicly readable Shared Preferences using the name "*pckgname.gsma.joyn.preferences*", where '*pckgname*' parameter shall be replaced with client's unique package name of the application (no two applications can have the same package name on the Android market). An RCS client shall add this to the manifest as a meta-data:

```

<meta-data android:name="gsma.joyn.preferences"
  android:value="pckgname.gsma.joyn.preferences" />.

```

The shared preferences shall be created using the RCS client application context, using the mode `MODE_WORLD_READABLE`.

The shared preferences shall contain a Boolean property named "*gsma.joyn.enabled*".

This property can have two values:

- True: It will mean that the RCS client is enabled (user switch in settings set to ON) and the application has been provisioned successfully.
- False (default value): It will mean that the RCS client is disabled (user switch in settings set to OFF) or the RCS client has never been provisioned yet.

The RCS client will modify the value of these properties according to the rules defined in the following section.

### **Client start-up behaviour**

For the RCS client implementations that choose to implement this option when started for the first time on a device working on Android™ OS whose version is inferior to 7.0 shall:

- Retrieve the list of installed applications from the Package Manager, and identify existing RCS clients by looking for the Boolean meta-data property named "*gsma.joyn.client*", as defined in the previous section.
- For every RCS client that is found, the RCS client shall open their shared preferences named "*pckgname.gsma.joyn.preferences*" and retrieve the Boolean property "*gsma.joyn.enabled*", as defined in the previous section.
- If an existing RCS client is found with the Boolean property "*gsma.joyn.enabled*" set to "*True*", it means that an RCS client is already active on the device. The new RCS client shall inform to the user that there is another RCS client already configured in the device and that as a pre-requisite to use this one, it is necessary to disable it. In the same pop-up the possibility to access the RCS settings of the active RCS application (via intent mechanism) shall be offered. The intent action used to open the active RCS client settings screen shall be retrieved by reading its Manifest meta-data property named "*gsma.joyn.settings.activity*".

On Android™ OS whose version is strictly inferior to 7.0, an RCS client shall indicate

- that it is active by opening its own "*pckgname.gsma.joyn.preferences*" shared preferences and set its own "*gsma.joyn.enabled*" property to "*True*".
- that it has become inactive by opening its own "*pckgname.gsma.joyn.preferences*" shared preferences and set its own "*gsma.joyn.enabled*" property to "*False*".

**Option 2-** Retrieve the client list and if another client is installed not attempt provisioning or registration.

For the RCS client implementations that choose to implement this option when the RCS client becomes the Default SMS app or when it is already set as the Default SMS app but there is an application update on a device working on Android™ OS whose version is inferior to 7.0 shall:

- Retrieve the list of installed applications from the Package Manager, and identify existing RCS clients by looking for the Boolean meta-data property named "*gsma.joyn.client*", as defined in the first section of the previous option.

- If an RCS client is found (i.e. their shared preferences with the respective properties described for option 1 are present), the client shall not attempt provisioning or registration.
- If no RCS client is found, the client shall activate its own stack.
  - If the RCS client loses its' Default SMS app status it shall de-register.

## **B.2 Android™ Client Authenticity Verification Procedure**

NOTE: The procedure for Android™ is for further study.

## Annex C RCS Configuration

### C.1 Configuration Parameters (Normative)

This Annex provides an overview of all configuration parameters that are applicable for the profile defined in this document with indications on whether client configurability is expected or whether RCS clients can assume the parameter to always have a fixed value. Next to that, it indicates for parameters whether there is an aligned value for this profile even if for that parameter client configurability is still expected to allow for future evolution. If this is the case for a parameter configured a numeric range, an RCS client shall, where applicable, allow both higher and lower values than what is provided.

Parameter	Functional Definition	Syntax Definition for transport using [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	RCS Client Configurability	Aligned Value for this profile
<b>IMS Parameters</b>				
ConRef	[3GPP TS 24.167]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	Fixed dummy value: <i>dummy.apn</i>	
PDP_ContextOperPref	[3GPP TS 24.167]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	Fixed value: 0	
P-CSCF_Address	[3GPP TS 24.167]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	Not instantiated	
Timer_T1	[3GPP TS 24.167]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider configurable	
Timer_T2	[3GPP TS 24.167]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider configurable	
Timer_T4	[3GPP TS 24.167]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider configurable	
Private_user_identity	[3GPP TS 24.167]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider configurable	
Public_user_identity	[3GPP TS 24.167]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider configurable	

Parameter	Functional Definition	Syntax Definition for transport using [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	RCS Client Configurability	Aligned Value for this profile
Home_network_domain_name	[3GPP TS 24.167]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider configurable Recommended to use ims.mnc<MNC>.mcc<MCC>.pub.3gppnetwork.org whereby <MNC> and <MCC> shall be replaced by the respective values of the home network in decimal format and with a 2-digit Mobile Network Code (MNC) padded out to 3 digits by inserting a 0 at the beginning (as defined in [GSMA PRD-IR.67]).	
ICSI_List	[3GPP TS 24.167]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	Tree is instantiated, but no leafs shall be provided.	
LBO_P-CSCF_Address	[3GPP TS 24.167]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	Tree is instantiated	
Address (LBO_P-CSCF_Address)	[3GPP TS 24.167]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider configurable	
AddressType (LBO_P-CSCF_Address)	[3GPP TS 24.167]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider configurable	
Resource_Allocation_Mode	[3GPP TS 24.167]	N/A	Not instantiated	
Voice_Domain_Preference_E_UTRAN	[3GPP TS 24.167]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
SMS_Over_IP_Networks_Indication	[3GPP TS 24.167]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
Keep_Alive_Enabled	[3GPP TS 24.167]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	1
Voice_Domain_Preference_UTRAN	[3GPP TS 24.167]	N/A	Not instantiated	
Mobility_Management_IMS_Voice_Termination	[3GPP TS 24.167]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	

Parameter	Functional Definition	Syntax Definition for transport using [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	RCS Client Configurability	Aligned Value for this profile
RegRetryBaseTime	[3GPP TS 24.167]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
RegRetryMaxTime	[3GPP TS 24.167]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
PhoneContext_List	[3GPP TS 24.167]	N/A	Tree not instantiated	
SS_domain_setting	[3GPP TS 24.167]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
PS_domain_IMS_SS_control_preference	[3GPP TS 24.167]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
Media_type_restriction_policy	[3GPP TS 24.167]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
IMS Mode Authentication Type	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
Realm	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
Realm User Name	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
Realm User Password	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
Transport Protocols: Signalling Cellular	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable Recommended Value: SIPoTCP or SIPoTLS (to avoid constant switchover to TCP)	
Transport Protocols: Signalling Roaming	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable Recommended Value: SIPoTCP or SIPoTLS (to avoid constant switchover to TCP)	

Parameter	Functional Definition	Syntax Definition for transport using [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	RCS Client Configurability	Aligned Value for this profile
Transport Protocols: Signalling Wi-Fi	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	Not instantiated , if authentication different from IMS AKA is used and thus IPsec is not enabled
Transport Protocols: Real Time Media Cellular	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable Recommended Value: Not instantiated	
Transport Protocols: Real Time Media Roaming	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable Recommended Value: Not instantiated	
Transport Protocols: Real Time Media Wi-Fi	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	Not instantiated
Transport Protocols: Discrete Media Cellular	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable Recommended Value: Not instantiated	
Transport Protocols: Discrete Media Roaming	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable Recommended Value: Not instantiated	
Transport Protocols: Discrete Media Wi-Fi	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	Not instantiated

Parameter	Functional Definition	Syntax Definition for transport using [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	RCS Client Configurability	Aligned Value for this profile
RCS VOLTE SINGLE REGISTRATION	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07] NOTE: Multimedia Telephony would register immediately on first boot up if relevant. If after autoconfiguration the device is configured to do single registration, the RCS client should send a REGISTER request (re-registration) to add the additional feature tags for RCS.	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
PUSH NOTIFICATION	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
CAPABILITYRE FRESH	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
<b>RCS State Parameters</b>				
RCS DISABLED STATE	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
SUPPORTED RCS PROFILE VERSIONS	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	Fixed Value: UP_2.0,UP_2.2,UP_2.3,UP_2.4,UP_2.5,UP_2.6,UP_2.7,UP_3.0,UP_3.1,UP_4.0	
<b>Presence Parameters</b>				
CLIENT-OBJ-DATA-LIMIT	[PRESENCE2MO ]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	524288 (i.e. 512KB) if CAPABILITY DISCOVERY MECHANISM is set to 1. Not instantiated otherwise.	
CONTENT-SERVER-URI	[PRESENCE2MO ]	N/A	Not instantiated	

Parameter	Functional Definition	Syntax Definition for transport using [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	RCS Client Configurability	Aligned Value for this profile
SOURCE-THROTTLE-PUBLISH	[PRESENCE2MO ]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable if CAPABILITY DISCOVERY MECHANISM is set to 1. Not instantiated otherwise.	
MAX-NUMBER-OF-SUBSCRIPTIONS-IN-PRESENCE-LIST	[PRESENCE2MO ]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable if CAPABILITY DISCOVERY MECHANISM is set to 1. Not instantiated otherwise.	
SERVICE-URI-TEMPLATE	[PRESENCE2MO ]	N/A	Not instantiated	
RLS-URI	[PRESENCE2MO ]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable if CAPABILITY DISCOVERY MECHANISM is set to 1. Not instantiated otherwise. Recommended Value: Not instantiated	
<b>Messaging parameters</b>				
MAX_AD-HOC_GROUP_SIZE	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	100
CONF-FCTY-URI	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable Recommended value: Not instantiated	
EXPLODER-URI	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	Fixed dummy value: <i>sip:foo@bar</i> if STANDALONE MSG AUTH is set to 0, RCS Service Provider Configurable otherwise. Recommended Value: Not instantiated	

Parameter	Functional Definition	Syntax Definition for transport using [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	RCS Client Configurability	Aligned Value for this profile
CHAT AUTH	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
GROUP CHAT AUTH	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
STANDALONE MSG AUTH	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
IM SESSION AUTO ACCEPT GROUP CHAT	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
IM SESSION TIMER	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
MAX SIZE IM	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	8192 (bytes as defined in [GSMA PRD-RCC.07] section A.2.5)
MAX SIZE STANDALONE	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	1048576 (i.e. 1MB)
MESSAGE STORE URL	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
MESSAGE STORE NOTIFICATION URL	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
MESSAGE STORE USERNAME	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
MESSAGE STORE PASSWORD	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
MESSAGE STORE AUTH	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
MESSAGE STORE EVENT REPORTING	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
MESSAGE STORE ARCHIVE AUTH	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	

Parameter	Functional Definition	Syntax Definition for transport using [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	RCS Client Configurability	Aligned Value for this profile
SMS MESSAGE STORE	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
MMS MESSAGE STORE	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
CHAT REVOKE TIMER	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	300
MESSAGING UX	Section 5.3.4	Implemented in the profile defined in this document based on the definitions in section 5.3.4	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
MSG TECH DISP SWITCH	Section 5.3.4	Implemented in the profile defined in this document based on the definitions in section 5.3.4	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
USER ALIAS AUTH	Section 5.3.4	Implemented in the profile defined in this document based on the definitions in section 5.3.4	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
MESSAGING FALLBACK DEFAULT	Section 5.3.4	Implemented in the profile defined in this document based on the definitions in section 5.3.4	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
RECONNECT GUARD TIMER	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
CFS TRIGGER	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
IM SPAM REPORTING URI	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
IM SPAM REPORTING FILE CONTENT	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	

Parameter	Functional Definition	Syntax Definition for transport using [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	RCS Client Configurability	Aligned Value for this profile
MAX 1 TO MANY RECIPIENTS	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
1 TO MANY SELECTED TECHNOLOGY	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
DISPLAY NOTIFICATION SWITCH	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
SPAM NOTIFICATION TEXT	Section 15.2.1.2	Section 5.3.4.1	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
TOKEN LINK NOTIFICATION TEXT	Section 15.2.1.2	Section 5.3.4.1	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
UNAVAILABLE ENDPOINT TEXT	Section 15.2.1.2	Section 5.3.4.1	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
ALLOW ENRICHED CHATBOT SEARCH DEFAULT	Section 15.2.1.2	Section 5.3.4.1	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
CHATBOT DIRECTORY	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
CHATBOT GALLERY	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
BOTINFO FQDN ROOT	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
SPECIFIC CHATBOTS LIST	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
IDENTITY IN ENRICHED SEARCH	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
PRIVACY DISABLE	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
CHATBOT MSG TECH	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	

Parameter	Functional Definition	Syntax Definition for transport using [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	RCS Client Configurability	Aligned Value for this profile
<b>File Transfer Parameters</b>				
FT AUTH	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
FT MAX SIZE	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	102400 (i.e. 100MB)
FT WARN SIZE	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
FT AUT ACCEPT	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	1
FT HTTP CS URI	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable Recommended value: Not instantiated	
FT HTTP DL URI	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable Recommended value: dl.rcs.mnc<MNC>.mcc<MCC>.pub.3gppnetwork.org whereby <MNC> and <MCC> shall be replaced by the respective values of the home network in decimal format and with a 2-digit MNC padded out to 3 digits by inserting a 0 at the beginning (as defined in [GSMA PRD-IR.67]).	
FT HTTP CS USER	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
FT HTTP CS PWD	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
FT HTTP FALLBACK	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service provider configurable	
FT MAX 1 TO MANY RECIPIENTS	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service provider configurable	

Parameter	Functional Definition	Syntax Definition for transport using [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	RCS Client Configurability	Aligned Value for this profile
FT FALLBACK DEFAULT	Section 7.3.2	Implemented in the profile defined in this document based on the definitions in section 7.3.2	RCS Service provider configurable	
<b>Enriched Calling Related Parameters</b>				
COMPOSER AUTH	[GSMA PRD-RCC.20]	Implemented in the profile defined in this document based on definitions in [GSMA PRD-RCC.20]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
SHARED MAP AUTH	[GSMA PRD-RCC.20]	Implemented in the profile defined in this document based on definitions in [GSMA PRD-RCC.20]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
SHARED SKETCH AUTH	[GSMA PRD-RCC.20]	Implemented in the profile defined in this document based on definitions in [GSMA PRD-RCC.20]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
POST CALL AUTH	[GSMA PRD-RCC.20]	Implemented in the profile defined in this document based on definitions in [GSMA PRD-RCC.20]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
<b>Geolocation Parameters</b>				
PROVIDE GEOLOC PUSH	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	1

Parameter	Functional Definition	Syntax Definition for transport using [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	RCS Client Configurability	Aligned Value for this profile
<b>Capability Discovery parameters</b>				
DISABLE INITIAL ADDRESS BOOK SCAN	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
CAPABILITY INFO EXPIRY	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
SERVICE AVAILABILITY INFO EXPIRY	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
NON RCS CAPABILITY INFO EXPIRY	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
CAPABILITY DISCOVERY MECHANISM	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
CAPABILITY DISCOVERY ALLOWED PREFIXES	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
<b>End User Confirmation parameters</b>				
END USER CONF REQ ID	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
<b>Multidevice configuration parameters</b>				
uuid_Value	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable and device dependent	
CallLogUri	[3GPP TS 24.175]	Annex A of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
<b>IP Voice and Video Call configuration</b>				
PROVIDE SECONDARY IP VOICE CALL	Section 10.3.2	Section 10.3.2	Fixed Value: 0 for primary devices, RCS Service Provider Configurable for secondary devices	
PROVIDE SECONDARY IP VIDEO CALL	Section 11.3.2	Section 11.3.2	RCS Service Provider Configurable	

Parameter	Functional Definition	Syntax Definition for transport using [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	RCS Client Configurability	Aligned Value for this profile
VIDEO AND ENCALL UX	Section 3.3.2.1	Implemented in the profile defined in this document based on the definitions in Section 3.3.2.1	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
IR51 SWITCH UX	Section 10.3	Implemented in the profile defined in this document based on the definitions in Section 10.3	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
CALL LOGS BEARER DIFFERENTIATION	Section 10.3	Implemented in the profile defined in this document based on the definitions in Section 10.3	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
<b>DATA OFF parameters</b>				
RCS MESSAGING DATA OFF	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
FILE TRANSFER DATA OFF	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
SMSolP_exempt	[GSMA PRD-IR.92] / [GSMA PRD-NG.114]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
SMSolP_exempt_roaming	[GSMA PRD-IR.92] / [GSMA PRD-NG.114]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.15]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
MMS DATA OFF	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
CONTENT SHARE DATA OFF	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
PRE AND POST CALL DATA OFF	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
MMTEL_voice_exempt	[GSMA PRD-IR.92] / [GSMA PRD-NG.114]	Annex A of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	

Parameter	Functional Definition	Syntax Definition for transport using [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	RCS Client Configurability	Aligned Value for this profile
MMTEL_voice_exempt_rog	[GSMA PRD-IR.92] / [GSMA PRD-NG.114]	Annex A of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
SS_XCAP_config_exempt	[GSMA PRD-IR.92] / [GSMA PRD-NG.114]	Annex A of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
SS_XCAP_config_exempt_rog	[GSMA PRD-IR.92] / [GSMA PRD-NG.114]	Annex A of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
MMTEL_video_exempt	[GSMA PRD-IR.94] / [GSMA PRD-NG.114]	Annex A of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
MMTEL_video_exempt_rog	[GSMA PRD-IR.94] / [GSMA PRD-NG.114]	Annex A of [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
Device Management over PS data off exemption	[3GPP TS 24.368]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
Device Management over PS data off roaming exemption	[3GPP TS 24.368]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07] and [GSMA PRD-RCC.14]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	
SYNC DATA OFF	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	[GSMA PRD-RCC.07]	RCS Service Provider Configurable	

**Table 38: Overview of the applicable configuration parameters**

## C.2 Void

## Annex D Features supported per Chatbot application version

The Chatbot application version is defined in section 3.6.2.2 of [GSMA PRD-RCC.07].

version	Features
1	<p>Single Rich Card</p> <p>Carousel of Rich Cards</p> <p>Suggested Chip Lists and responses</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Suggested Replies</li> <li>• Suggested Action <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ opens a web site in the default browser or app via deep linking</li> <li>○ calls a telephone number via the user's dialler app</li> <li>○ start an Enriched Call via the user's dialler app</li> <li>○ start a video call via the user's dialler app</li> <li>○ show location(s) on a map for given coordinates or search query</li> <li>○ request for a one-time geo location push</li> <li>○ creates a new event on the user's calendar</li> <li>○ compose a draft text message</li> <li>○ compose a draft message and start recording audio or video</li> <li>○ request for a one-time share of device specifics</li> <li>○ ask the user to disable the anonymization setting</li> <li>○ ask the user to enable sending displayed notifications</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
2	<p><b>All features from version 1 are supported with the following:</b></p> <p><b>Added features:</b></p> <p>Rich Card can have specific CSS [R15-8-50]</p> <p>Suggested Chip Lists and responses</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Suggested Action <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ opens a web site in an integrated webview [US15-9]</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Persistent menu [R15-8-13]</li> </ul> <p><b>Modified features:</b></p> <p>The maximum number of Cards in a Carousel is increased from 10 to 12 [R15-8-44]</p> <p>Rich Card enhancements (option to view truncated fields / Media aspect ratio improvements / bold, italic or underlined text support) [R15-8-35-1, R15-8-39, R15-8-41-1 to R15-8-41-3, R15-8-42-1 to R15-8-42-3, R15-8-43-2, R15-8-44-2 and R15-8-44-3]</p>
3	<p><b>All features from version 1 and 2 with the following additions / modifications:</b></p> <p><b>Added features:</b></p> <p>Chatbot copy action [R15-8-4-6-13]</p> <p>Chatbot Unsubscribe [R15-5-10]</p>

**Table 39: Description of the features supported per Chatbot application version**

## Annex E Document Management

### E.1 Document History

Version	Date	Brief Description of Change	Approval Authority	Editor / Company
1.0	16 November 2016	Initial version approved by PSMC.	PSMC	Catherine Maguire / GSMA
2.0	28 June 2017	Universal Profile 2.0: includes approved CR1002	TG	Tom Van Pelt / GSMA
2.1	21 December 2017	Add modularisation of Universal Profile 2.0 as Annex D, Approved as CR1004	TG	Tom Van Pelt / GSMA
2.2	16 May 2018	Universal Profile 2.2: includes approved CR1003	TG	Tom Van Pelt / GSMA
2.3	06 December 2018	Universal Profile 2.3: includes approved CR1004	TG	Tom Van Pelt / GSMA
2.4	16 October 2019	Universal Profile 2.4: includes approved CR1005	NG	Tom Van Pelt / GSMA
2.5	16 October 2020	Universal Profile 2.5: includes approved CR1006	NG	Tom Van Pelt / GSMA
2.6	19 December 2022	Universal Profile 2.6: includes approved CR1007	ISAG	Tom Van Pelt / GSMA
2.7	04 June 2024	Universal Profile 2.7: includes approved CR1008	ISAG	Tom Van Pelt / GSMA
3.0	28 February 2025	Universal Profile 3.0: includes approved CR1009	ISAG	Tom Van Pelt / GSMA
3.1	21 July 2025	Universal Profile 3.1: includes approved CR1010	ISAG	Tom Van Pelt / GSMA
4.0	19 February 2026	Universal Profile 4.0: includes approved CR1011	ISAG	Tom Van Pelt / GSMA

### E.2 Other Information

Type	Description
Document Owner	RCS Group
Editor / Company	Tom Van Pelt / GSMA

It is our intention to provide a quality product for your use. If you find any errors or omissions, please contact us with your comments. You may notify us at [prd@gsma.com](mailto:prd@gsma.com)

Your comments or suggestions & questions are always welcome.